Christ and community : a socio-historical study of the christology of Revelation.

Slater, Thomas Bowie

The copyright of this thesis rests with the author and no quotation from it or information derived from it may be published without proper acknowledgement.

END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT

Unless another licence is stated on the immediately following page this work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International licence. https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/

You are free to copy, distribute and transmit the work

Under the following conditions:

• Attribution: You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work).
• Non Commercial: You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
• No Derivative Works - You may not alter, transform, or build upon this work.

Any of these conditions can be waived if you receive permission from the author. Your fair dealings and other rights are in no way affected by the above.

Take down policy

If you believe that this document breaches copyright please contact librarypure@kcl.ac.uk providing details, and we will remove access to the work immediately and investigate your claim.
CHRIST AND COMMUNITY:
A SOCIO-HISTORICAL STUDY
OF THE CHRISTOLOGY OF REVELATION

A thesis submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy
by
Thomas Bowie Slater

King's College London
1996
This study of the christology of Revelation examines the major christological images in the book, the “one like a son of man,” the Lamb and the Divine Warrior, by employing the methods of historical criticism and aspects of sociology of knowledge in order to ascertain the ways in which these christological images enabled the original recipients to identify with their Lord, maintain and remain within Revelation’s sacred cosmos.

The Introduction describes the social setting of Revelation as one of Jewish and pagan oppression of Christians, discusses previous studies of Revelation’s christology and outlines the methods employed in the study.

In Part I, Chapter 2 examines the “one like a son of man” tradition in the Hebrew Bible and second temple Judaism, demonstrating its origins in Ezekiel and its use in Daniel, 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra, the Apocalypse of Abraham and the Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah. Chapter 3 discusses the presentation of the messiah in Rev 1 and relates that presentation to the findings of Chapter 2. Chapter 4 demonstrates in detail the pastoral relationship between the “one like a son of man” and the seven Asian Christian communities.

Part II examines the Lamb (Chapter 5) and the Divine Warrior (Chapter 6). Chapter 5 shows that the messianic functions of the Lamb are primarily intended to ensure the welfare of the Christian community. Chapter 6 argues that the symbolic names in Rev 19.11-21 represent the messianic Divine Warrior as God Almighty’s co-regent. The imagery associated with the Divine Warrior gives him the power to judge and to execute judgment in God Almighty’s stead as a means of vindicating the elect community.

A final chapter summarizes the study and states its results.

A brief appendix surveys the history of the exegesis of Revelation.
In Loving Memory Of

My Parents
Thomas Jefferson & Thelma Bowie Slater

My Grand-parents
Eugene & Amanda King Bowie
and
Rachel Matthews Slater Kimbell

My Great-Aunt
Naomi King Donato

My Great-Uncle
The Revd. Ezelle Charles

And My Dear Cousins
Doris Dean Hayes Green
my second mother

Van Edward Slater
my role-model

Sylvester Williams
whose life inspired mine

With Sincere Appreciation to My Dearest Relatives

Cheryl Annetta Bowie
Amanda Vinnetta Cole
Joyce Delores Slater
Lisa Y. Williams

and

My great-aunt
Mrs. Juanita King Charles

As "Lady" often said,
"I just want to thank you."
Rarely is a journey of this type a solitary one. Along the way, many persons have played key roles in the pursuit of this degree. This journey started when Dr. William Farmer and Dr. William Babcock at SMU, Dallas, TX, USA, separately encouraged me to consider studying for a PhD. Others who have encouraged me are SMU Professors Bert Affleck, Victor Furnish, Virgil Howard, Joseph Tyson and James Ward.

However, the genesis of this thesis began in a Revelation seminar with Prof. Harold W. Attridge in the summer of 1978. His expertise gave me an appreciation for apocalyptic literature which has grown over the years. Since that time, Prof. Attridge has continued to provide guidance and critical assistance. Concurrently, Revelation has been at the center of my interests as a student of the New Testament and a preacher of the gospel.

Many have asked why this literature appeals to me. Apocalypses employ imagery to communicate. My own culture in the Afro-American south has used and continues to use imagery as a major part of public and private discourse. In addition, Revelation speaks to persons who suffer public and private ridicule for no reason but the prejudices of an unjust society, something with which I can identify fully.

Much of the contents of this study has been influenced by other forums and settings. My initial understanding of the function of the Lamb I owe to Dr. M. Francis Christie, professor emeritus, Hendrix College, Conway, AR, USA. St. James A. M. E. Temple, Greater Garth Chapel A. M. E. Church, both of Dallas, TX, USA (with a special thanks to the Revd. and Mrs. Merrill Johnson); Conner Chapel A. M. E. Church, Mark’s Chapel and Hunter United Methodist Churches, all of Little Rock, AR, USA, have heard series of sermons on passages from Revelation. The Adult Learning Center, First Baptist Church, Athens, GA, USA; the East Anglia District, British Methodist Conference; the New Testament Seminars and the Centre for Advanced Biblical Studies Conference, both at King’s, have heard papers. All have contributed substantially to the growth and development of this thesis. Chapter 2 continues and goes beyond work that I have published previously.

I cannot omit reference to my colleagues at the University of Georgia, Athens, GA, USA, from 1988-92, 95-96. Each of them heard and/or read several parts of this thesis and made countless helpful comments. A special thanks goes to Associate Dean of Arts &

Sciences John Morrow; Prof. R. Baxter Miller, African American Studies; Prof. George Howard, Religion; Dr. Sandy Martin, Religion, for their material and emotional support; my cousin, Zinetta McDonald, office manager for the Department of Religion, who typed the first draft of the bibliography and several first drafts of different sections; and Ange Colson, all of the University of Georgia, who proofread the entire thesis. Thanks also to Christine Bainbridge, my big sister, who proofread the bibliography.

I am indebted to the following librarians and libraries: John Campbell, Claire Colombo and Donna Darcy and the libraries of the University of Georgia; Evelyn Cornell and the King’s College London libraries; Laura Randall and the Bridwell Library, Perkins School of Theology, SMU; the Heythrop College Library; The University of London Library; the Pitts Theological Library, Candler School of Theology, Emory University and the University of Arkansas at Monticello Library.

Moreover, I am deeply appreciative to King’s College London for nominating me for an Overseas Research Students award and to the Committee of Vice-Chancellors and Principals of the Universities of the United Kingdom for granting me an ORS award for the duration of my studies here. Without it, the task would have been much more difficult.

Special thanks go to my supervisor, Professor Graham N. Stanton. He has been patient and unrelenting, supportive and challenging, abreast and open to new perspectives, all one would want in a supervisor. He has made this the most pleasurable stressful experience of my life. I will be eternally grateful for his supervision and his friendship. I am also deeply indebted to Professor J. Leslie Houlden of King’s, my internal examiner, and Canon John Sweet of Cambridge, my external examiner, for their detailed reading and many helpful comments which have added much to this final product. This thesis owes much to their insightfulness, probing questions and many helpful suggestions.

Friends make every experience more pleasant. Naheed Ali, Tessie Baquitan, Malcolm and Sylvia Braddy, Lynette Cawthra, Josephine Daniels, Peter and Nenita Duff, Crispin Hay, Tundé Johnson, Sandra LaVenia, Mark and Linda Olson, Marcy Orr, Mary Pascoe, Jerry Ray, Lyvia Rodriguez, Joan and Pete Rufe, Ernie Teague, Lolita Wakti and Ruth Young have been such friends. Gladys (Gigi) Brown, however, and her family (all four generations!) have become my family in London. They have meant more than they will ever know.

Thanks also to Chelsea and Victoria Methodist Churches of London for their support; my many friends at Athens First United Methodist Church, especially the Cornerstone Sunday School Class, for their cards and letters; Dee and Lynn Morey; Cal and Maryjo Logue; Bill and Joe Bremer; Andy, Jenny and Ansley Richardson for housing.
me during different research periods; to Peter and Hannah Williams of Kirriemuir, Scotland; to Vance, Kathy and Lacy Williams of the US Army; to “my children,” Joe and Julie Pecenka of McDonough, GA, USA; and to Tony and Lisa Parker of St. Andrews, Scotland and Athens, GA, USA.

I also want to thank my extended family for its support through the years. Without their love and encouragement, this task would not have been possible. I especially want to thank the descendants of Green Hunt; James King; Stephen Chappel, Sr.; Emp and Effie Slater; David, Sr., and Charlotte Hays; Sam Dunn, Sr., and my god-parents, Hal, Sr., and Millie Kimbell.

Finally, a word of remembrance for those to whom this work is dedicated. Their love has warmed my soul on many cold evenings. As someone often said, “That’s cute enough!”
A NOTE ON TRANSLATIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

The widely used abbreviations of *Biblica*, *Catholic Biblical Quarterly*, *Journal of Biblical Literature* and *New Testament Studies* are used with one small exception: biblical references to book and chapter but without verse (e.g., Rev 7) will also be abbreviated. All abbreviations not used by these journals will be noted in the appropriate places.


Throughout this study, I shall refer to "John" as the author of the book of Revelation as a matter of convenience without implying apostolic authorship.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

TITLE PAGE 1
ABSTRACT 2
DEDICATION 3
FOREWORD 4
A NOTE ON TRANSLATIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS 7

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION 9
   A. Literary Genre 9
   B. The Social Setting of the Book of Revelation 12
   C. Symbolic Language and Sociological Interpretation 33
   D. Previous Studies: An historical overview 42

PART I: ONE LIKE A SON OF MAN 48
CHAPTER 2: THE JEWISH BACKGROUND 48
   A. The Scholarly Interpretation of Daniel 7.13 49
   B. Descriptive Comparisons in Jewish and
      Christian Pseudepigraphy 57
   C. Summation 61

CHAPTER 3: THE PRESENTATION OF THE MESSIAH IN
   REVELATION 1 62
   A. Rev 1.1-8: The Introduction of the Author 63
   B. Rev 1.9-20: The Call and Commission of John 68
   C. Summation 78

CHAPTER 4: ONE LIKE A SON OF MAN IN REV 2-3
   AND 14.14-16 80
   A. The Nature and Purpose of the Letters 80
   B. The Letters 86
   C. Rev 14.14-16 114
   D. Conclusion to Part I 117

PART II: THE LAMB AND THE DIVINE WARRIOR 121
CHAPTER 5: THE CHRIST AS LAMB 121
   A. The Lamb as a Symbol 121
   B. The Jewish Background 122
   C. The Lamb in Revelation 125
   D. Conclusion 152

CHAPTER 6: THE IMAGE OF THE DIVINE WARRIOR IN
   REVEL 19.11-21 160
   A. An Overview of Rev 19.11-21 162
   B. The Symbolic Names 162
   C. The Images 171
   D. Concluding Comments: Observations on
      Christ and Community 177

CHAPTER 7: CONCLUSION 182

An Appended Note: Methods of Study 188

BIBLIOGRAPHY 192
CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

This study of the christology of the Book of Revelation examines the major christological images in the book, the "one like a son of man," the Lamb, and the Divine Warrior, in order to ascertain how these images functioned in the life of the community. It will demonstrate that for the first readers of this evocative writing the "one like a son of man" functioned primarily in a pastoral role; the Lamb performed various functions (e.g., pastor, role-model, liberator); the Divine Warrior functioned primarily as an eschatological judge. The first two images related directly to the churches by promising fellowship with God Almighty and Christ in the New Jerusalem. The Divine Warrior, conversely, judges the worldly institutions which John believed had oppressed the church, thereby vindicating the community and assuring it of its righteousness. While these christological images varied in function to some degree, this study will demonstrate that they are also interrelated. This study employs historical criticism and insights from the sociology of knowledge.

A. Literary Genre

Before broaching the christology of Revelation, a few fundamental matters need to be discussed. The book of Revelation is an apocalypse. Currently, no consensus exists as to what constitutes an apocalypse or how to define apocalypticism.¹ No single definition is all-encompassing or suitable for every apocalypse. In this thesis, a definition which has gained a measure of international acceptance is used. However, this definition is adopted with the understanding that it is provisional even for those who have employed it for over a decade.² It is derived from the Society of Biblical Literature (SBL) Genre Project's Apocalypse Group: an apocalypse is "a genre of revelatory literature with a narrative framework, in which a revelation is mediated by an otherworldly being to a human


²See n. 1 above and the definitions presented in those works.
recipient, disclosing a transcendent reality which is both temporal, insofar as it envisages eschatological salvation, and spatial insofar as it involves another, supernatural world.\textsuperscript{3}

Hellholm expands this definition by including social function. It is not enough to visualize apocalypticism and apocalypses in the abstract. Apocalypticism always reflects "a group in crisis" undergoing persecution or impending doom. Those involved are not interested simply in receiving revelations from the supernatural world about transcendent reality and eschatological salvation. They are looking for "exhortation and/or consolation" for a present emergency.\textsuperscript{4}

Hellholm's point has value since so many apocalypses written between the return from Babylon and the Bar Kochba War appear on the surface to reflect a social crisis of some kind. For example, Daniel reflects the tensions between Antiochus Epiphanes and the Maccabean-led revolt; 4 Ezra, the destruction of Jerusalem and its theological implications for international Jewry. Nevertheless, caution is required in expanding the basic definition given above. Yarbro Collins, for example, modifies Hellholm and argues that the apocalyptic worldview may not necessarily involve anything more than a perception of reality. She argues that not all apocalypses were written to and for communities. Some might have been produced by individuals for their own unique purposes. In particular, she argues that the author of Revelation might have only perceived an empire-wide crisis that did not actually exist.\textsuperscript{5}

Larkin, espousing a similar position, argues that exegetes must prove that apocalypses reflect a group's social setting and not merely take it for granted. She also insists that some apocalyptic literature may come from lone individuals and may not reflect communal perspectives.\textsuperscript{6}

The points which Yarbro Collins and Larkin make are important and must be taken into consideration, but in regard to Revelation, it does not seem that John wrote simply for himself. If the witness of the book is to be given due consideration, the letters to the seven churches of Asia, recorded in Rev 2-3, demonstrate a familiarity with the social context of each church and require a community audience. Each letter has a distinctive message, often mentioning specific persons (e.g., 2.13, 20) or details (e.g., 2.6, 14) in order to convince the recipients that the Lord of the cosmos knows their individual situations and also knows what they must do to improve them.

\textsuperscript{4}Hellholm, \textit{Semeia} 36 (1986) 27; see also 18-26.
\textsuperscript{6}K. J. A. Larkin, \textit{The Eschatology of Second Zechariah} (Contributions to Biblical Exegesis & Theology 6; Kampen: Kok Pharos, 1993) 9-52.
If John's perception had been vastly different from his audience/readers, it is doubtful whether the book would have survived. Bauckham correctly notes that Revelation is a unique apocalypse in that it is also a "circular letter." By this, Bauckham means that the letters function both individually and collectively as introduction to the entire book: each of the seven letters provides a different introduction to the entire book, probably arranged according to the travel itinerary, i.e., "circuit," John took when he travelled to the churches, while simultaneously collectively providing an introduction to the broader social setting of Asian Christianity. "The special character of a letter ... is that it enables the writer to specify those to whom he or she is writing and to address their situation as specifically as he or she may wish."7 I agree with Bauckham on this general point concerning the function of the letters in Revelation.

The purpose of each letter was to show each church what it must do in order to enter the New Jerusalem. Further, the letters conveyed to the churches "how the issues in their local context belong to, and must be understood in the light of, God's cosmic battle against evil and his eschatological purpose of establishing his kingdom."8 I agree and shall argue in Part I of this study that, in general, each letter tells each congregation what it needs to do in order to survive the eschatological events described in Rev 4-19. Specifically, the promises to the conquerors at the end of each letter (2.7, 11, 17, 26-28; 3.5, 12, 21) are fulfilled in Rev 20-22. References to conquering recur throughout the apocalyptic sections (e.g., 5.5; 6.2; 12.11; 15.2; 17.14; 21.7). In this manner, Revelation is a circular letter which speaks to both the specific and the general; the present situation and the future salvation.

Ancient Jewish and Christian apocalypses exhibited some or all of the following five general characteristics. First, they reflected crisis situations, either perceived or real, in which an oppressed group looks to God for liberation. Secondly, they were pseudonymous. The writer composed his work under the name of an outstanding figure from the past, such as Noah or Enoch, giving the writing a measure of prestige and also "enabling" the writing to "predict" the future. Such prophecy-after-the-fact is called ex eventu prophecy or vaticinia ex eventu. The aim of ex eventu prophecy was to assure the reader/hearer that the book's other predictions would come true, also. Hopefully, this assurance would give the reader/hearer the courage to remain true to his/her religious

---


8 Bauckham, Theology, 15. While I agree in general with Bauckham on the function of the letters, I disagree with him on how the letters relate to the apocalyptic visions. See my review in Journal of the Interdenominational Theological Center (JITC) 21 (1993-94) 172-74.
convictions. Thirdly, these books were often apocryphal: supposedly they had been hidden and had only been found immediately prior to the fulfilment of their prophecies. This characteristic often gave apocalyptic literature a sense of urgency. Fourthly, they divided time into two epochs. The first period was ruled by evil forces, the second by God. The second era sometimes included a new creation and/or a purification of the first creation. The second period often had a final judgment which selected some persons to enter a glorious new age while casting others into eternal torment. This selection often contained deterministic elements in order to assure the chosen/oppressed of their ultimate salvation. Fifthly, most apocalypses contained either an otherworldly journey (e.g., 1 Enoch 1-36; 1QS 3-4; Sib. Or. 2.34-55, 149-347) or a survey of history (1 Enoch 85-90; 2 Baruch; The Shepherd of Hermas). The Apocalypse of Abraham (ApAb) is the only known apocalypse which contained both the heavenly journey and the survey of history. Most apocalypses do not have all these characteristics.

It is important to note that the book of Revelation, though an apocalypse, lacks some of these distinctive apocalyptic characteristics, too. Unlike most apocalypses, it is not pseudonymous. The author does not appeal to the authority of an ancient worthy but is an authority figure in his own right who speaks as a contemporary to his readers/hearers in the Asian churches. The author sees himself as a prophet in the tradition of Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Enoch and others (1.3; 22.7-10). He also believes in past prophecies that will be fulfilled at a future date. Furthermore, Revelation contains little ex eventu prophecy. It does not predict major events that appear to have occurred already. Finally, as we have noted briefly above, Revelation is a circular letter. To the best of our knowledge, it is the only letter in the apocalyptic genre from early Jewish/early Christian times. As a result, although other Jewish and Christian apocalypses can enhance our understanding of the apocalyptic genre, the book of Revelation must be studied on its own terms. Comparisons with other apocalypses can assist our investigation, but none must be used as determinative for an interpretation of Revelation.

B. The Social Setting of the Book of Revelation

i. Christianity in the first-century CE Roman Empire

First-century CE Christian writers described the relations between Christians and pagans, on one front, and Jews, on another, in several early Christian writings. While these writings show that Christians in different contexts and times had different experiences, they also report that many of these experiences were negative and that in many places Christians were held in low esteem (e.g., Acts 5.17-31; 8.1-3; 1 Thess 2.14-16; Gal 1.13-14; cf. Acts 9.1-2; Heb 10.32-39).
First and foremost, several writers record that Christians suffered simply because they were Christians, i.e., because of the name 'Christ' which they confessed and not because of any criminal act. For example, Matt 10.17-23 describes pagan and Jewish repression of Christians διὰ τὸ διψαθά (see also Luke 21.12). Matt 24.9, John 15.21, Acts 5.41 and 1 Pet 4.14, to identify but a few, do likewise. While the scholarly consensus is that Matthew and Luke use common sources, most scholars would argue that this is not the case with the other writings. This suggests that in first-century Roman society many Christians lived in an environment which was generally unfriendly, a context where the very name 'Christ' itself aroused ill feelings among their neighbors.

Moreover, pagan and Jewish harassment was felt so deeply by some Christians that some developed a rationale for Christian suffering (e.g., Phil 1.12-14; Jas 1.2-3; Heb 12.3; 1 Pet 1.6-7; 4.12; Rev 7.14). Others went further and related Christ's suffering to their own experiences (e.g., John 15.18; 1 Pet 4.13; Rev 5.9-10). In some instances, Christians felt ostracized by the general society and frequently placed their local problems on a cosmic scale (e.g., John 1.9-10; Acts 24.5; 28.22; Eph 6.12; 1 Pet 5.9; 1 John 3.13; 5.1-5). Some Christians sought and expected an imminent end to their trials which would vindicate them (e.g., Matt 10.23 and 24.9-35; 2 Cor 4.17; 1 Pet 1.6-12; 4.7, 17; 5.10). In this regard, the writings of Paul (1 Thess 2.14-16; 2 Cor 4.17; cf. Gal 1.13-14) are particularly important for they give evidence of the repression of Christians at a time when many first-generation Christians were still alive. The other writings, usually dated between 65-100, show that some Christians continued to experience harassment, suppression and ridicule throughout the century.9

Revelation dealt with some of the same issues in very similar ways. Asian Christians addressed in Revelation suffered because they confessed the name 'Christ' (e.g., 2.17; 3.5, 10, 12). The book related their sufferings to those of Christ (e.g., 1.5-6; 5.9-10; 7.14-17), thereby developing a rationale for Christian distress. Revelation also expected the oppression to end soon (e.g., 1.3; 3.10; 22.10, 12, 20). Finally, Revelation placed the plight of Asian Christians on a cosmic scale (chaps. 4-19).

For our purposes, the most helpful parallels are between 1 Peter and Revelation. Both books were written to Christians in the same general area of the Roman Empire (1 Pet 1.1; Rev 1.4, 11) and reveal something of the social status of Christians in that region.

---

Recent scholarly opinions variously date 1 Peter between 50-100 CE. While we have yet to establish a date for Revelation, a brief examination of 1 Peter might enable us to understand better the social milieu to which both books spoke.

Moule has identified some helpful parallels between 1 Peter and Revelation. Both books exhort their readers to remain steadfast (e.g., 1 Pet 2.20; Rev 2.2; 3.10). Both refer to the Christian community as a royal priesthood (1 Pet 2.9; Rev 1.6). Both works speak of witnesses who have suffered for the kingdom (1 Pet 5.1.2; Rev 1.9) and promise the faithful a αὐτόκρατος (1 Pet 5.4; Rev 2.10; 3.11). In both books, some have definitely experienced oppression (1 Pet 4.12-5.11; Rev 2.13), while others are under threat (1 Pet 2.11-4.11; Rev 2.10). At the very least, Moule has shown that 1 Peter and Revelation share a concern for the fidelity of the Christian community as well as the need by that community to remain true to its religious beliefs under duress. While fidelity describes the group's self-image, the appeal to remain faithful under social pressure says something about the general public's perception of the group, whatever other factors might be involved.

Most scholars now believe that 1 Peter provides no evidence of an official Roman general persecution of Christian but much evidence of harassment by local Asian community leaders, especially adherents of the imperial cult, as well as harassment by Jewish groups. They argue that this mis-treatment of Christians was spasmodic and periodically escalated into very serious regional pogroms. For example, Elliott writes that the novelty of Christianity, coupled with its exclusive attitude, was at the foundation of the social denigration of 1 Peter's original readership. Because Christians kept to themselves, pagans knew little about their religion (1 Pet 2.15-16), creating pagan suspicions and contempt for Christians. Eventually suspicion and contempt led to slander and reproach (1 Pet 4.4, 14). As a result, Christians became sorrowful and fearful due to the public ridicule which they had to endure (2.19-20; 3.14, 17; 5.9-10). Some Christians


13Elliott, Home, 78-84.
considered taking a more accommodating, less exclusive stance toward pagan society because of their duress (1.14, 18; 2.11; 4.1-4). Elliott also argues that many of these Christians were immigrants. If he is correct, some of the repression which they experienced might have been expressions of cultural superiority. I find Elliott’s arguments generally persuasive and with him I date 1 Peter between 73-92, the middle Flavian years, because the book reflects a period when Christianity is emerging as a movement distinct from Judaism. While 1 Peter remains open to both Jews and Gentiles, it takes pains to re-interpret Judaism. These features reflect the context of the Christian community during the latter decades of the first century CE.

Revelation addresses similar issues. Indeed, one of the key issues was the manner in which the Christian community should relate to the imperial cult, symbolized by the beast from the land in Rev 13. Price argues that there was no Christian mechanism for showing respect to the emperor because Christianity had no role for sacrifice in its rituals. Conversely, adherents of the imperial cult expected some sign of reverence for the emperor which approximated sacrifice. At this point, Christian practice and pagan expectations caused tensions to the social detriment of the Christians. Pagans would have pressured the Christians to be less exclusive and become more accommodating to ancient regional religio-political customs. I concur with Price and will discuss it in more detail later. At this point, it is necessary to point out ways in which Revelation itself lends credence to Price’s reconstruction. The letters in Rev 2-3 tell us that accommodation, complacency and other forms of religious laxity were real issues within some of these congregations. Moreover, the apocalyptic visions in Rev 4-19 relate how suspicion, contempt, slander and reproach (e.g., Rev 3.2-3, 14-22; cf. 1 Pet 2.15-16; 4.14) have escalated to the deaths of some Christians (e.g., Rev 2.10-13; 6.9-11; 7.14; 16.6; 17.6; cf. 1 Pet 1.6-7; 3.16; 4.4, 12, 16). As with 1 Peter, there is no evidence that this is an official Roman imperial policy. Rather, it appears that John placed a regional oppression on a worldwide plane.

A second front was the relationship between Christians and Jewish groups. Both sides appealed to the same ancient traditions, yet in strikingly different ways. Unlike the pagans, the Jews disliked the Christians because they understood them. It was to the advantage of Judaism to distance itself from the Christian movement, a topic which will have our full attention at a later point in this chapter.

---

14Elliott, Home, 21-58.
16Price, 220-23.
17Price, 197; see also 78-100.
In sum, many Christian groups experienced ridicule, harassment and oppression throughout the first century CE. 1 Peter and Revelation provide evidence of this same attitude toward Christians in the Roman province of Asia the latter decades of the first century CE.

ii. Dating Revelation

For most of this century, biblical scholars have generally argued that the book of Revelation was written during the reign of Domitian and that Domitian instituted an empire-wide persecution of Christians.18 Most exegetes who espouse this position have taken their cue from Irenaeus.

Irenaeus, who wrote ca. 190-200 CE, is the earliest extant witness to the date of Revelation. He writes that the book was written "near the end of Domitian's reign" (Adv. Haer. 5.30.3).19 Domitian was Roman emperor from 81-96 CE. Several commentators argue that the Domitianic date is correct because during Domitian's reign the titles "Savior" and "Benefactor" and Roman claims to divine honors were applied to the emperor more frequently. During this time, there would have been considerable social pressure for Christians to conform to religio-political traditional practices. Such pressures might have led some Christians to consider a more accommodating stance to regional religio-political traditions. Along these lines, some exegetes postulate that Christian complacency and compromise toward the imperial cult also contributed to the writing of Revelation.20

Others add that the use of "Babylon" as a code name for Rome is evidence of a Domitianic date for Revelation. They note that 4 Ezra, 2 Baruch, Sib. Or. 5 and 1 Peter all employ "Babylon" as a code name for Rome. More recent scholarly opinions date 4 Ezra, 2 Baruch and Sib. Or. 5, between 100 and 120 CE; 1 Peter, between 64-100 CE.21 Thus, it is argued, that the use of "Babylon" as a code name for Rome in Revelation

---


19Οὐδὲ γὰρ πρὸ πολλῶν χρόνων ἔωράθη, ἀλλὰ αὐξήθη ἐπὶ τῆς ἡμιτερᾶς γενεᾶς, πρὸς τῷ τέλει τῆς Δομιτίανος ἀρχῆς (Neque enim ante multum temporis visum est, sed pene sub nostro saeculo ad finem Domitianii imperii [PG 7:2, 1208). See also Clement of Alexandria (ca. 150-ca. 215), Quis Dives Salvetur? 42; Victorinus (third century CE), Apos. 10.11 and 17.10; Origen (ca. 185-ca. 255), In Matthaueum 16.6; Jerome (ca. 342-420), De vir. illus. 9; Eusebius (ca. 260-ca. 340), H. E. 3.18-25, whose primary sources were Irenaeus and Clement.


reflects a late first century CE development. Like the Babylon of old, Rome destroyed the Temple and the city of Jerusalem itself. Many Jews quickly made the connection between the two events. Yarbro Collins notes, "This designation (for Rome) could not have arisen in Judaism prior to the destruction of the temple, when priests offered sacrifices for the well-being of Rome and its emperors." Price suggests that if the Domitianic date is correct, it corresponds to the date of the establishment of the imperial cult at Ephesus, an event which involved the entire province, as attested by the series of dedications by numerous cities. Such an event would have eventually "led to unusually great pressure on the Christians for conformity."  

In addition, Rev 13.3 and 17.9-11 have often been used as starting points to date the book. They are examples of the *Nero redivivus* myth. Rev 13.3 is a reference to Nero's suicide and helps the reader to identify Nero in Rev 17.9-11. Rev 17.9-11 reads, "This is the mind which has wisdom: The seven heads are seven mountains, where the woman sits upon them. They also are seven kings. Five have fallen, one is; another has yet to appear and whenever he appears it is necessary for him to remain a brief time. And the beast who was and is not is the eighth and is from the seven and he goes to destruction." The seven mountains refer to the seven hills of Rome. Roman writers often referred to Rome in this manner. Do these verses refer to Roman emperors or do they refer to a succession of kingdoms (e.g., Assyria, Babylonia, Persia, Greece, Rome), with Rome being the current world power?  

I believe the seven kings symbolize the imperial line because the passage refers to kings, not kingdoms. If this imagery does refer to kings, i.e., Roman emperors, should one begin counting with Julius Caesar, or Augustus Caesar (the first true emperor) or Caligula, who was the first emperor to insist that his statue be worshipped? Perhaps due to the complex nature of this question, the current scholarly trend is not to count the emperors at all, but to view seven as a symbolic number here as elsewhere in Revelation. According to this viewpoint, "seven emperors" represents the entire imperial line whatever the actual number might be. If seven is used symbolically in 17.9-11, it would connote completeness.
because seven is the number of completeness in Revelation (e.g., 1.4-20; 4.5; 5.1, 6; 8.2; 15.1). Krodel writes, "When he (John) identifies the Antichrist as an eighth, then he suggests that the Antichrist will be someone so novel in evil as to signal a new beginning. But on the other hand he belonged to the seven, which means that the evil can already be detected in the imperial cult of Asia Minor."27

Many who interpret seven literally in 17.9-11 usually count Augustus, Tiberius, Gaius (Caligula), Claudius, Nero, then omit Galba, Otho and Vitellius, and continue with Vespasian, Titus and end with Domitian as the eighth.28 Regardless of whether one interprets Rev 17.9-11 symbolically or literally, the passage is one of the few examples of ex eventu prophecy in the book.

The passage itself suggests a symbolic interpretation. Seven heads represent seven mountains which in turn represent seven rulers. This is pure symbol. In the real world, heads and mountains and rulers have no natural connection. John creates the connection in order to communicate a specific message to his original audience. Quite possibly, Rev 17 employs seven as a symbol and also in some literal sense as a manifestation of evil. It is clear from the use of the seven heads, seven mountains and seven rulers that the Roman Empire represents the power of Satan in the world for John. If Revelation employs the number seven in Rev 17.9-11 both symbolically and literally, which occurs often in apocalyptic writings, it may not be possible to determine the date of the writing of this book solely upon this passage, as some have suggested.29

I date Revelation ca. 95. First, the use of "Babylon" as a code name for Rome has parallels in 4 Ezra, 2 Baruch, Sib. Or. 5 and 1 Peter, reflecting a late first century CE development. I believe this is the strongest argument for dating Revelation. Additionally, I have dated 1 Peter between 73-92. 1 Peter takes a more positive role toward the state than Revelation. Thus, since they were written to the same general area, it is more probable that Revelation reflects a later, more intense time for Christians (cf. 1 Pet 2.13-14, 17 and Rev 16-18). Finally, Price states that a Domitianic date would coincide with the establishment of the

28 Bell and Wilson do not omit Galba, Otho and Vitellius.
29 In their attempts to date Revelation, Sweet and Rowland, for example, both examine Rev 17 but reach different conclusions. Sweet accepts a Domitianic date (21-35), and Rowland argues for a date in the late 60's (Open Heaven, 405-06).
imperial cult at Ephesus which involved the participation of the entire province. The
institution of the cult at this time might have led to increased social pressure upon
Christians to conform to Asian religious customs. For these reasons, I date Revelation ca.
95. Church fathers are important witnesses; however, since Irenaeus is the earliest witness
and he is at least two generations removed from John, I consider the patristic testimonies
supplementary external witnesses. Moreover, while Rev 13 and 17 must be examined
when attempting to date Revelation, the symbolic nature of these chapters can lead to
conflicting reasonable conclusions. Until scholarship can obtain a better understanding of
these passages, their usefulness for dating Revelation will continue to be limited.

iii. Persecution: Rhetoric or Reality?
If, as Rev 17 seems to stress, the power of Rome is clearly in view, are we to assume that
Revelation was written to Christians facing persecution? If so, can this be squared with a
Domitianic dating? Although they differ in emphases, several scholars have recently
questioned the traditional depiction of Domitian as a persecutor of the Christian Church.
Others note that the letters speak of compromise, complacency and/or accommodation as
the threats to community and say little about persecution or oppression by the Roman
state.

Classicists have long questioned the traditional view of NT scholars that Domitian
was an 'arch persecutor' of the Church. H. W. Pleket, for example, argued in 1961 that
Domitian was loved in the provinces because he attempted to curb economic exploitation by
Roman provincial governors. While the provincials held Domitian in favor, the provincial
governors, who owed much to their senatorial benefactors, disliked Domitian because he
hampered their economic and political agendas. Pleket concludes that Domitian was not
without his faults, but he was not a second Nero.

Thompson, following the classicists, is representative of many current NT exegetes
who argue that the depiction of Domitian as a persecutor of the Church and a "second
Nero" is inaccurate. Thompson, who dates Revelation late in the reign of Domitian,
makes the following main points: (1) the widely held negative impression of Domitian

---

30E.g., Thompson, 95-197. Others who question the traditional view of Domitian include Yarbro Collins,
_Crisis_, 54-110; Krodel, 35-39; Wall, 10-12.
31E.g., Charles, 1:43-47; Sweet, 26-27; Bauckham, _Theology_, 12-17.
32H. W. Pleket, "Domitian, the Senate and the Provinces," _Mnemosyne_ 14 (1961) 296-315. I am indebted
to the Revd. Canon John Sweet of Cambridge University for directing me to Pleket (cf. Sweet, 26-27). See
also D. Magie, _Roman Rule in Asia Minor to the End of the Third Century after Christ_ (2 vols.; Princeton:
33Thompson is a member of the SBL seminar "Reading the Apocalypse: The Intersection of Literary and
Social Methods." Other members of this seminar who concur with Thompson's position concerning the
social setting include D. E. Aune, D. L. Barr and J. C. Wilson.
comes from anti-Flavian writers who sought the favor of Trajan and his successors and whom Trajan also used to argue that his imperial family was superior to the Flavians; (2) all epigraphic, numismatic, prosopographic and biographical data contemporary with Domitian depict him more fairly. These two points are distinct but inseparable for Thompson.

The official depiction of Domitian as an evil, incompetent ruler who arrogantly demanded that he be worshipped as "dominus et deus noster" comes primarily from Pliny the Younger (ca. 60-ca. 115), Tacitus (ca. 55-ca. 120) and Suetonius (ca. 75-ca. 135). This circle of friends and historians heavily influenced later Roman and Christian writers concerning Domitian (e.g., Dio Cassius, Juvenal, Philostratus, Eusebius). They portray Domitian as a cunning and devious ruler (e.g., Tacitus, Agricola, 39 and 43; Pliny, Panegyric 90.5-7 and Epistles 1.12.6-8) who was both tyrannical and insane (e.g., Suetonius, Domitian 1.3; Pliny, Panegyric 48.3-5) and had a voracious sexual appetite (e.g., Suetonius, Domitian 1.1; 1.3; 22.1; Tacitus, Histories 4.2 and 4.68; cf. Agricola 7). He was jealous of his father Vespasian and his brother Titus (e.g., Pliny, Epistles 4.9.2; Titus 9.3; Tacitus, Histories 4.5, 52 and 86), was an unenlightened ruler who indiscriminately murdered political opponents and placed a financial strain upon the empire (e.g., Tacitus, Germania 37; Pliny, Panegyric 11.4; 76.5; 82.4; Suetonius, Domitian 4.1, 4; 5; 12.1 and 14.1). Thompson claims that the negative depiction of Domitian came about because of later political and practical agendas. Pliny and Tacitus had political axes to grind against Domitian. While both men had good careers under Domitian, both had relatives and/or friends who were either exiled or executed by Domitian. Both felt their opportunities for advancement and freedom of expression were hampered by Domitian (Pliny, Epistles 3.11.3-4; 4.24.4-5; 7.27.14; Panegyric 95.3-4; Tacitus, Agricola 2-3, 44-45). Thus, they wrote to discredit Domitian and, at the same time, they contributed to the image of the new imperial family which Trajan promulgated.

Trajan proclaimed a "new era" (beginning with Nerva) in order to legitimize his dynastic line and also to distinguish it from the Flavians. Trajan enlisted the services of Pliny, Tacitus and others to propagate this new era throughout the empire. Thompson writes, "The opposing of Trajan and Domitian in a binary set serves overtly in Trajan's ideology of a new age as well as covertly in his praise. Newness requires a beginning and therefore a break with the past; such a break is constructed rhetorically through binary contrast." Agreeing with Pleket, Viscusi and other classicists, Thompson argues that Domitian was no more despotic an emperor than his predecessors, and that Jews and Christians were not singled out by Domitian for persecution but enjoyed the benefits of pax Romana as did other groups in Roman society. Thus, he concludes that no actual crisis

34Thompson, 115.
35Thompson, 95-115.
 existed but only a tension between Christian expectations and reality, a tension within the "social location" of the minds of Christians.36

Thompson vigorously challenges the traditional view of Domitian as arch persecutor: he notes that almost all epigraphic, numismatic, prosopographic and biographical data contemporary with Domitian throw this negative characterization into doubt. First and foremost, with Viscusi, he notes that there are no extant inscriptions, coins or medallions from the Domitianic period which refer to Domitian as dominus et deus noster.37 Moreover, he notes that Quintilian (Inst. Orat. 10.1.91), Martial (2.2; 8.15, 78); Statius (Silvae 3.3.171; 4.1.34-39; 4.3.159) and Silius Italicus (Punica 3.607), who wrote during Domitian's reign, provide more positive views of Domitian. Further, Thompson notes that these same writers did not hesitate to criticize Domitian or his politics and did not suffer as a consequence (e.g., Quintilian, Inst. Orat. 12.1.40; Martial 1.8; 4.54.7), evidence that they almost certainly portray Domitian more accurately.

As helpful as this new perspective is, a closer examination of the classical texts themselves show that Thompson's revisionist case is not as strong as it appears initially. First and foremost, it is possible that the work of Statius and Quintilian may have been biased toward Domitian since both men found employment with help from Domitian, Quintilian as the tutor to Domitian's great-nephews (cf. Quintilian, Inst. Orat. 4, preface, 2), a fact that Thompson neglects to discuss. Martial, cited by Thompson as an uncensored critique of Domitian, does not make a single explicit reference to Domitian in the passages that Thompson cited. Martial merely praises men who happen to be Domitian's opponents. Unless Domitian was the emotionally insecure emperor that Thompson argues that he was not, one could not imagine that these passages could possibly anger him.

Examples from Quintilian and Martial themselves will demonstrate my points. While Quintilian does not employ "dominus et deus noster," he describes Domitian as one worthy of divine honors twice in Inst. Orat. 4, preface, 2 and 5:

But now Domitianus Augustus has entrusted me with the education of his sister's grandsons, and I should be undeserving of the honour conferred upon me by such divine (caelestium) appreciation...

Assuredly therefore I may ask indulgence for doing what I omitted to do when I first entered on this task and calling to my aid all the gods and Himself (i.e., Domitian) before them all (for his power is unsurpassed and there is no deity that

---

36Thompson, 171-201. For reviews of Thompson, see Yarbro Collins, JBL 110 (1991) 748-50; see also my own review in JITC 20 (1992-93) 139-41.
37P. Viscusi, "Studies on Domitian" (PhD. diss.; Ann Arbor: University Microfilms, 1973) 94.
Thompson's insistence that Domitian was not worshipped as "our lord and god" may be strictly true, but it is equally true that Quintilian clearly sees him as worthy of divine honors, a detail which undermines, to some degree, Thompson's point. Indeed, it is possible that Domitian's benefaction caused Quintilian to speak of Domitian in this manner. Thus, with this one writer, two aspects of Thompson's revisionist program, that Domitian did not receive divine honors and that Quintilian is an unbiased commentator, are found to be less than satisfactory. Since Statius also prospered due to Domitian's help, any positive comments from him concerning Domitian must also be examined critically.

Thompson also argued that Quintilian, Statius and Martial prospered during Domitian's reign even though they criticized him. Thompson refers to two passages from Martial which refer positively to Paetus Thrasea, a political opponent of Domitian, as proof that Martial criticized Domitian and did not suffer as a consequence. In my opinion, neither passage supports Thompson's case.

In that you follow the maxims of great Thrasea and of Cato the perfect, and yet are willing to live, and rush not with unarmed breast upon drawn swords, you do, Decianus, what I would have you do. No hero to me is the man who, by easy shedding of his blood, purchases his fame; my hero is he who, without death, can win praise (1.8).

Though thou wert richer than Crispus, more firm of soul than Thrasea's self, more refined even than sleek Melior, yet Lachesis addeth nought to her tale of wool, . . . (4.54).

Both passages are merely passing references to Thrasea and neither one directly mentions Domitian. These are not clear, definitive statements denigrating Domitian but positive statements about Thrasea. The praise of Thrasea and the criticism of Domitian are not necessarily mutually inclusive. Moreover, if Domitian was the enlightened leader whom Thompson proposes, one would think that Thompson would mention criticisms which explicitly mentioned Domitian. It is quite possible that Martial never had Domitian in mind at all. Indeed, again only if Domitian were the insecure megalomaniac that Thompson argues that he is not could we reasonably expect Domitian to find these statements

38mili quoque profecto poterit ignosci, si, quod initio, quo primum hanc materiam inchoavi, non feceram, nunc omnes in auxilio deos ipsumque in primis, quo neque praesentius aliud nec studiis magis propitium numen est, invocem, ut, quantum nobis expectationis adiecit, tantum ingenii adspiret dexterque ac volens adsit et me qualem esse credidit faciat.
39This is a point which Thompson does not discuss in any detail (see pp. 95-115).
offensive. I do not find these brief statements as strong evidence that Martial criticized
Domitian and was not punished. Rather, they are evidence that Martial praised Domitian's
political opponents but no more than that.

In sum, Statius and Quintilian's praise of Domitian might have been influenced by
his benefaction and/or status as emperor, just as Trajan's sponsorship influenced
Suetonius, Pliny and Tacitus's writings. Further, Quintilian spoke of Domitian as one
worthy of divine honors and Martial's two passing references which Thompson lists as
criticisms do not mention Domitian. Thus, the evidence is not as clear-cut as Thompson
argues. A more critical reading of the classical writers themselves might have led
Thompson to different conclusions concerning the status of Christians under Domitian.

According to Krodel, Domitian could be heartless, but he was no more heartless
when dealing with opponents than his predecessors or his successors. "In short, there is no
evidence that Christians in Asia Minor had it any worse under Domitian than they had it
before or after him."40 I agree with Krodel. Moreover, even if Domitian did not demand
that he be referred to as "our Lord and god," it does not mean that no one deemed him
worthy of divine honors.

I accept that there is no evidence that an empire-wide persecution of Christians
occurred under Domitian. In this respect, the traditional view of Domitian as an 'arch-
persecutor' of Christians must be revised. However, because an empire-wide persecution
did not exist does not necessarily mean that there was not a limited, regional repression of
Christians during this time period. Many scholars have shown that there is plenty of
evidence for the enthusiastic promotion of the imperial cult in Roman Asia. Concurrently,
the repression of persons who would not support this cult was a real possibility in the first
century CE.41

Others have also pointed to the letters as proof that Revelation is not responding to a crisis
of any type, arguing that the letters do not mention persecution or oppression but
complacency, compromise and/or accommodation as the chief problems for the churches in
Asia.42 These commentators have assumed that since the letters are in prose they represent
a more straight-forward version of the apocalyptic visions. However, the relationship
between the letters and the apocalyptic visions is somewhat more complex than that.

40Krodel, 38.
41My forthcoming discussion in this chapter on "Religious Factors in Asia" will attempt to demonstrate
that the Christians' refusal to participate in the imperial cult resulted in Asian pagans repressing Asian
42E.g., Charles, 1:43-47; Sweet, 26-27; Bauckham, Theology, 12-17. In private discussion, I have learned
that Thompson, Aune, Barr and Wilson hold similar views concerning the function of the letters. It is on
this point that Bauckham and I disagree concerning the role of the letters in the overall scheme of
Revelation.
The general function of the letters is to inform each church what it needs to do in order to become spiritually strong enough to endure and withstand the coming apocalyptic trials in order that they may "enter the new Jerusalem." However, most exegetes have failed to note that only one of the letters (Rev 2.8-11) discusses the relationship between Christians and non-Christians in Roman Asia. Rather, in general, the letters focus upon issues within each church in order to improve that church's spiritual well-being. On the other hand, the apocalyptic visions which dominate chaps. 4-19, in general, speak to the role of the Christian community in a non-Christian world, explaining why the letters, in general, emphasize the problems of accommodation, laxity, complacency and other internal issues, issues which receive little attention, if any, in the apocalyptic visions. John presupposes that if the churches correct their problems, they will be able to survive the apocalyptic trials and enter the New Jerusalem.

I shall now discuss these points in more detail. The letter to Smyrna (2.8-11) is the only letter which addresses the relationship of the church to a social entity outside itself. The other six comment upon internal issues (2.2-6; 2.14-16; 2.19-25; 3.2-4; 3.8-11; 3.15-20). If these letters had been written primarily to tell us something about the wider social milieu, why is it that only one letter does this? In fact, the letters provide only passing references to the wider social milieu. Those who argue against persecution or oppression as a contributing social factor for Asian Christians have failed to note that the letters contain only one full comment (2.8-11) and two passing references (2.13; 3.8-10) to any external issues and that all three passages refer to the repression of Christians. They have also failed to note that the apocalyptic visions contain little or no references to Christian complacency, compromise and accommodation. The full comment, found in the letter to Smyrna, mentions tribulation, Jewish harassment, impending imprisonment and ends with an admonition to be faithful unto death (2.9-10). The letter to Pergamum mentions the death of Antipas, "my witness," (ὁ μαρτυρὸς μου [2.13]) and the letter to the Philadelphians mentions Jewish harassment and Christian endurance under pressure to recant religious beliefs (3.8-10).

---

43 Bauckham, Theology, 14.
44 Josephine Ford makes a helpful distinction between persecution and oppression. She says persecution refers to an official state program of systematic and consistent discrimination and harassment, while oppression is an unofficial, localized crisis (SBL Seminar, Reading the Apocalypse: The Intersection of Literary and Social Methods, Philadelphia, PA, USA, Nov 18, 1995). I find this distinction helpful in general and this thesis uses oppression, suppression and repression as references to a regional maltreatment of Christians by Jews and Gentiles alike.
45 It is quite possible that the Christians to whom John wrote saw themselves in some way connected to the synagogue. We are not certain when Jews and Christians became separate organizations and there is no reason to believe that it occurred at the same time in every region of the Roman Empire. The fact that the Asian Jewish community feels a need to contest the Christian community indicates that the Jews themselves saw the Christians as being related to them in some way (cf. Yarbro Collins [Crisis, 85-87] and
Thus, it is not that the letters make no reference to oppression, but rather that the
only references to external matters are to oppression. These passing references are all the
more important because they are among the few references to the wider social milieu.
Authors often reveal more in passing than in explicit comments. This is not to say that
compromise, complacency and accommodation to pagan religion and other internal issues
play little or no role in the churches. Rather, they are internal concerns, matters which
represent only an aspect of John's concerns. If complacency, compromise and
accommodation were the central issues in these churches, as some have argued, one would
expect these issues to recur throughout the book. They do not. My socio-historical
exegeses in Parts I and II of this study will argue that at the very least Revelation responds
to some type of maltreatment, most probably to some type of limited, regional oppression.
In my opinion, a sociological exegesis asks the appropriate questions which push us
beyond the historically verifiable to the "historically intelligible," given what is known
about the wider context, and provide a more thorough understanding of early Christianity.

Other writers have presented what I consider a more nuanced understanding of the social
setting of the book of Revelation. Classicists have argued for at least a century that in
the late first/early second centuries CE Christians experienced regional, limited oppression.
The only question has been the legal precedents which led Roman officials in different
regions to act as they did. The earliest Roman references to Christianity are negative
ones, lending support to an argument for a regional oppression of Christians.

Some classicists have argued that the Romans punished Christians because they
viewed Christianity as a social movement which disturbed Roman sensibilities, especially
with regard to religious customs. Sherwin-White argues that previously the Romans had
become intolerant of the Bacchanalians (2nd century BCE) and the Druids (1st/2nd centuries
CE) for what the Romans considered and associated with human sacrifice. "When cult and sceleratio appear inseparable, a total ban, or strict control,
may be placed upon a particular cult. So because of the flagitia, the nomen, active

Wall [10-12] who have similar arguments). Even Rev 2.8-11 then, from John's perspective, might be an
internal matter.

46For me, the historically verifiable refers to data that can be confirmed by two or more independent
sources. Historically intelligible hypotheses come into play when the data are incomplete and/or
independent verification is not possible. In such cases, the exegete seeks to extrapolate from general
premises, which are verifiable historically, intelligible hypotheses which are probably true though not fully
verifiable. Historically intelligible hypotheses are necessary and appropriate in the present study because
our knowledge of both early Christianity and the Roman Empire is incomplete, as Price states (79-80).
47E.g., Yarbro Collins, Crisis, 84-110; Boring, 8-23; Krodel, 35-42; Wall, 10-12. See also the work of
the classicists Price, 197-98; A. N. Sherwin-White, The Letters of Pliny: A Historical and Social
membership of a criminal organization without further proof of individual guilt is constituted a capital charge, by direct magisterial action. . . with or without support of a senatorial decree.\textsuperscript{49} He argues that there was no official imperial persecution of Christians, but that Christians were held in low social esteem in the empire. While some provincial governors punished Christians, others chose not to do so. Thus, he argues, the plight of Christians depended upon the attitude of the Roman authority before whom Christians were tried.\textsuperscript{50}

The writings of Tacitus, to which Sherwin-White does not appeal, support his argument. In describing the repression of Christians following the burning of Rome in 64, Tacitus has an enlightening passage on Roman attitudes toward Christians.

Therefore, to scotch the rumour (that the fire had been started intentionally) Nero substituted as culprits, and punished with the utmost refinements of cruelty, a class of men, loathed for their vices, whom the crowd styled the Christians \textit{(quos per flagitia invisos vulgus Christianos appellabat)}. Christus, the founder of the name \textit{(nominis)}, had undergone the death penalty in the reign of Tiberius, by sentence of the procurator Pontius Pilate, and the pernicious superstition \textit{(superstitio)} was checked for a moment, only to break out once more, not merely in Judaea, the home of the disease \textit{(mali)}, but in the capital itself, . . . .

First, then, the confessed members of the sect were arrested; next, on their disclosures, vast numbers were convicted, not so much on the count of arson as for hatred of the human race \textit{(odio humani generis)} \textit{(The Annals of Imperial Rome, 15.44)}.

While Tacitus clearly decries Nero's action, he has no respect for Christians. He uses \textit{flagitia} to refer to Christianity, supporting Sherwin-White's argument. He calls it a superstition and a disease. Moreover, Christians were deemed guilty simply because they were Christians, i.e., because of the \textit{nomen}, also supporting Sherwin-White's argument. These highly anti-Christian sentiments probably reflect a general lack of respect for Christians altogether in Roman society. They are so corrupt, in Roman eyes, that they deserve punishment merely for being Christians. Christian writings give an alternate perspective (e.g., Matt 10.17-23; John 15.21; Acts 5.41; 1 Pet 4.14; Rev 2.17; 3.5, 10, 12). Thus, there is evidence from Christian and Roman sources describing the type of public ridicule and harassment which first-century Christians endured.

Suetonius makes a similar comment in his \textit{Nero} 16.2.

Punishment was inflicted on the Christians, a class of men given to a

\textsuperscript{49}Sherwin-White, 780-81.
\textsuperscript{50}Sherwin-White, 696, 781-84.
new and mischievous superstition (*afflicti suppliciis Christiani, genus hominum superstitionis novae ac maleficae*).

One might argue against my position that Tacitus and Suetonius are second century CE writers whose comments may not reflect the sentiment of the citizens of Rome in 64 CE. This is true, but both men came into adulthood in the first century CE when their ideas and opinions were formulated. It is noteworthy that they denigrate Christianity without feeling the need to support their position with proof. Persons often take this attitude when their opinions reflect the perspective of society-in-general.

On the other hand, if one argues that Christians were often held in moderate to high social esteem, one has to deal with the fact that our earliest references to Christianity are negative. Similarly, how does one explain the case with which Nero persuaded the Roman population of Christian culpability? If Christians were respected after 64 CE, how does one explain Tacitus' attitude early in the second century CE? The absence of extant pagan witnesses for the propriety of Christianity does not mean that such witnesses did not exist. Rather, it suggests that at best Christianity was an insignificant movement within the Roman Empire which received little note from first-century CE pagan authors. This accounts for the sparse references to it in Graeco-Roman literature, either positively or negatively, in the first century CE. My argument that Christianity was often held in low social esteem in the first century CE is not historically verifiable, given our limited knowledge of this period of time; however, given what is verifiable from both Christian and Roman writers, my argument is historically intelligible.

Pliny's correspondence with Trajan provides another witness of the Roman attitude toward Christianity. Pliny, a Roman provincial governor under Trajan, writes a letter to the emperor Trajan. This letter and Trajan's response share with Tacitus and Suetonius a disdain for Christians. Written ca. 112 CE in the province of Bithynia, north of Asia, *Letter* 10.96-97 states that Christians have been tried previously. Although Pliny gives no date for the beginning of this practice, his statements read as if this is one of many givens in provincial administration and at no point is he decrying Christian trials.51 His purpose in writing to the emperor is to be sure that he has done it properly!

What has Pliny done? He has led a regional oppression of Christians after *local residents* have informed him that the Christians are seditious persons. Initially, Pliny assumed, without verifying it, that Christians were criminal by nature and thus executed them upon their Christian confession of faith (just as Tacitus says occurred in Rome in *Annals*) and their refusal to worship the traditional gods and the emperor. Pliny refers to their refusal to worship the traditional gods and the emperor as "obstinance and

---

51 Sherwin-White, 694-96.
stubbornness." In interrogating some persons, he learned that they were once Christians but had left the movement, some as long ago as 20 years earlier during the reign of Domitian. They told Pliny that Christianity was not a seditious, immoral movement, but was somewhat benign in its religious practices and beliefs. Instead of being immoral, Christians actually took oaths to act honorably.

Seeking verification, Pliny tortures two Christian women and learns that Christianity was indeed the ethical movement that the former Christians described. He then writes Trajan, "I found nothing more than a vulgar, excessive superstition (superstitionem pravam inmodicam)." He continues, "The plague (contagio) of this superstition has spread not only in the cities, but through villages and the countryside." He concludes that since his pogrom, the temples are gaining more and more people, the sacred feasts are being observed again and the sacrificial meat is being purchased once more.

Trajan responds by applauding Pliny's actions. While there is no norm for such cases, Christians should not be sought out, Trajan states. He states further that if Christians do not recant their faith and worship the traditional gods, then they should be punished, i.e., executed.

It is noteworthy that Pliny executed Christians for not participating in the traditional religious practices. He writes, "If they persist (in worshipping Christ), I order them to be led away for execution; for whatever the nature of their admission, I am convinced that their stubbornness and unshakeable obstinancy ought not to go unpunished." He assumed that they were a seditious, criminal social movement without any proof of their culpability, as did Tacitus and Suetonius. Pliny could hardly have drawn this conclusion if Christian practices and beliefs had been well-known and understood and/or well-respected in Roman society, a point which Elliott makes about the recipients of 1 Peter. Indeed, even when he learns the truth, he appeals to the emperor for guidance, while still describing the movement in derogatory terms. Such an attitude usually does not develop within months but over years of mistrust and denigration.

Pliny's reaction to this "mischief" was a religio-political attempt to maintain social institutions at the expense of Christian lives. The fact that Pliny knows so little of Christian values, values extremely close to Roman values, means that the contempt for Christians

52M. E. Boring's translation (14-15).
53Elliott, Home, 78-84.
54See, e.g., the lists of virtues and duties in Cicero, The Ends 19-20; The Duties 1.2.7-1.3.10; 1.17.53-58; Epictetus, Discourses 2.10.7-23; 2.14.13; 3.7.26-27; see, e.g., Rom 13.1-7; Mark 12.13-17; Eph 5.21-6.9; Col 3.18-4.1; 1 Tim 5.1-6.2; 1 Pet 2.13-17. I have chosen Cicero and Epictetus Romans because they reflect the types of ethical mores common to their culture and, also, because Cicero pre-dates Christianity and Epictetus's life and career overlaps the writing of Revelation. They represent established expectations of social behavior, modes of behavior which Christians shared with the broader society.
is probably very deep and reflects the low regard with which the general society viewed Christianity. Pliny's actions and statements do not reflect a social setting where Christians have prospered and been respected, but, rather, one in which they have been deemed unworthy of any social esteem. This negative attitude toward Christianity probably has deep historical roots because even when both Pliny and Trajan learn that Christianity is not immoral and has ethical ideals in common with Roman ideals, neither man feels any remorse for the loss of Christian lives. Such prejudices have long histories. Heller states the case accurately: "In vain do we confront the established prejudices with reality: they are unshakeable."\(^55\)

It is quite possible that Revelation, written to churches in the same general region of the Empire approximately 20 years earlier, responds to a similar localized oppression. Local adherents of the imperial cult, a practice which we shall show began under Caesar Augustus, would see Christians as social malcontents who were unlawful and/or unpatriotic and as people who refused to participate in the traditional religious customs.\(^56\) When taken before provincial governors, Christians would unwittingly confirm for the Roman official their guilt by not worshipping the traditional gods and the emperor. The provincial governor would then execute the "guilty." From a Roman perspective, Christians are obstinate and stubborn; from a Christian perspective, faithful witnesses.

I believe that this is an historically intelligible argument which explains the images of persecution in the apocalyptic visions and also explains why John identifies the Roman Empire as the earthly manifestation of Satan. Moreover, the exegeses of pertinent passages in this study will demonstrate that a key issue in the link between Christ and community is the question of what it means to be a faithful witness, as with Antipas (2.13), an issue which recurs throughout the book, indicative of its importance for the original audience of the book (e.g., 1.5; 2.10, 13; 3.14; 17.14; 19.11).

Several NT commentators have argued that because there was no empire-wide persecution as envisioned in Revelation, that does not mean that there was no social crisis at all, but that a limited, localized oppression of Christians ca. 95 CE is historically intelligible.\(^57\) Furthermore, these exegetes state that such limited actions could be as horrific as an imperial persecution to those who suffered its effects. They postulate that John placed a limited repression of Christians on a cosmic scale in order to explain the plight of his fellow Christians within the wider perspective of the divine plan.

\(^{57}\)E.g., Yarbro Collins, *Crisis*, 84-110; Boring, 8-23; Krodel, 35-42; Wall, 10-12; cf. Price, 123-26; Sherwin-White, 772-87.
I agree with this position because it provides a needed corrective to the assumption that since there was no empire-wide persecution then there was no suffering. Further, this position relates the book of Revelation to first and second century CE Christian and Roman writers who describe the low social status of Christians. Indeed, Christians suffer not because of their criminality but often because of the name alone. Additionally, our sources indicate that both Jews and pagans had reasons to resent Christians and to see them as social deviants. Jews disliked their belief that Jesus was worthy of divine honors; pagans, their refusal to participate in traditional Asian religio-political customs. Paul tells us that initially he persecuted the church and that he was among the best in this endeavor among his peers (Gal 1.13-14), clearly implying that he was not the only Jewish persecutor of Christians. Conversely, there is also little evidence that Christians received a great deal of respect in Roman society during this time (see Heb 10.32-39; 12.4; Luke 21.12; Ign., Magn 8).

Several NT writings, dated variously by scholars from 55-125 CE, describe the Christian perspective of the relationship of the Christian community to Judaism: Christians saw themselves as the True Israel/New Israel which continues the task which the Old Israel had left undone (e.g., Acts 13.46-48; 14.27; 24.10-16; 28.17-30; Gal 3.7-9; 6.16; Rom 4.13-17; Jas 1.1; cf. 1 Pet 1.1; 2.9-10; Rev 7.4-9). This Christian self-image would not have endeared Christianity to other movements within Judaism. Other forms of Judaism would have re-asserted their own claims to election, probably themselves excluding Christians. Moreover, by the time Revelation was written, Christianity was a predominantly Gentile movement.58 Gentiles claiming to be God's true people would have upset more traditional Jewish persons, many of whom probably thought of Gentiles as impure. Rev 2.9 and 3.9 may reflect such a social context or a similar one: "Jews" treated as an honorific name indicates that both sides called themselves Jews and thought of themselves as the elect people of God.59 Our exegesis of these passages will develop this point in more detail.

iv. Religious factors in Asia
While the aforementioned section discussed the social status of Christians in Asia, this section will demonstrate that both the novelty of Christianity and its Asian religio-political setting would have caused significant tension between Christians and pagans. Price points out that Christians were perceived negatively because of their refusal to participate in the traditional religions and in the imperial cult.60 I agree.

---

58See S. G. Wilson, Related Strangers (Minneapolis: Augsburg Fortress, 1995) 1-35.
60Price, 123-26.
Graeco-Roman society in general had little respect for new movements. The Roman state in particular was suspicious of any new assembly or association, lest it might develop into a political organization in conflict with the Roman state. Secondly, and perhaps more importantly, the Asian religio-political setting itself could produce tensions between non-Christians who participated in the imperial cult and Christians who did not. In the eastern region of the Mediterranean, the worship of the emperor was not mandated by the emperor himself, but was a grassroots movement among the common people who traditionally believed that the king was a son of the nation's god. Alexander received such treatment after conquering these countries as well as his Seleucid and Ptolemaic successors.

When the Romans conquered the eastern Mediterranean, their emperors received similar divine honors. The Roman imperial cult began in Asia in the first century BCE. Dio Cassius writes that early in Augustus' principate Roman citizens in Asia were required to worship the divine Julius Caesar and the goddess Roma, while the provincials were required to worship Augustus and the goddess Roma. Pausanius mentions a temple to Octavia, Augustus' sister, in the first century BCE. Reynolds argues that by the middle of the first century BCE, Aphrodisias had a temple dedicated to Rome; by 14 BCE, one to Augustus. Claudius' living grandmother was worshipped as Thea Antonia. Although Caligula might have been the first living emperor to require that he be worshipped, he was not the first living member of the imperial family to receive divine honors. Price's comment is important: "Though I would not wish to return to the old picture of a clash between Christ and the Caesars, the imperial cult was clearly one of the features of the contemporary world that troubled the Christians. Their responses during the first three centuries of the empire consisted essentially of passive resistance." I concur. Parts I and II of this study will show that Revelation is a form of passive civil disobedience that advocates faithfully waiting for an imminent divine deliverance (see 22.7-20).

---

62See Price, 123-26; 197-98; 220-22.
64Roman Histories 51.20.6-7; cf. SEG XXIII.206.
67Price, 123.
The imperial cult was practiced strongly in Asia, and in most of the eastern Mediterranean regions of the Roman Empire, and, more importantly, cities competed vigorously for the privilege of being declared *neokoros*, an official center for the imperial cult. All seven cities addressed in Rev 2-3 received the neokorate in the late first and/or early second century CE. In the first century CE, Ephesus (see Rev 2.1), which received the neokorate more than once, had a cult to Roma and Julius Caesar and later added a temple to Tiberius. Caesarea had a temple to Augustus and Roma. Pilate dedicated a shrine in Caesarea to Tiberius. Augustus was worshipped in Antioch-near-Pisidia in his lifetime. Other first century CE neokorate cities included Pergamum, Smyrna, Sardis, Laodicea, Philadelphia (all mentioned in Rev 2-3), Cyzicus and Ancyra. In the next century Magnesia-on-the-Maeander had a cult to Nero, a testimony to the esteem in which the eastern provinces held him. Thyatira and Tralles also received the neokorate in the second century.

The neokorate symbolized for these cities civic pride and devotion to their religious traditions. Perhaps more importantly, the imperial cult established a means by which these once proudly autonomous cities came to understand their relationship to the new Roman imperial power by representing it to themselves in the forms long established for the gods. The imperial cult played a key role in the establishment of the new symbolic universe for the Roman province of Asia. Christians who denied the validity of these religio-political traditions constituted an affront to Asian pagan social sensibilities. Christian religious impiety, from a pagan perspective, left them open to reprisals from the gods through natural disasters and social anarchy. While some local Roman officials did not seek out Christians, as Trajan advised Pliny, they held them in low esteem and would not hesitate to execute Christians if they did not adhere to the normal religio-political customs of the day, including worshipping the emperor, again reflecting Trajan's sentiments to Pliny. The writings of Tacitus and Suetonius also support this observation.

I propose a social and religious setting for the book of Revelation in which Asian Christians endured a limited regional oppression in the early 90's for their religious beliefs and their refusal to worship the traditional gods. Several Christians have been executed (see 2.13; 6.9-11; 7.13-14; 20.4-6) and John believes that more executions will follow before the end comes (see 16.6; 17.6).

---

69See Price, xxii-xxvi; 64-65, n. 47; 66-67; 249-74.
71Sherwin-White, 774; Price, 123-26; 97-98. Many NT commentators hold a similar view concerning 1 Peter (e.g., Selwyn, 52-56; Kelly, 5-11; Balch, 138; Elliott, *Home*, 87; Davids, 7-9; Perkins, 15-16.)
Several further points support this conclusion. First, both Christian and Roman writers tell us the very name "Christian" had negative connotations in Roman society (e.g., Luke 21.12; John 15.21; Acts 5.41; Tacitus, *Annals* 15.44; cf. Pliny, *Letter* 10). Some leading Roman writers considered Christianity a social vice (*flagitia*) without any attempt to substantiate this opinion (Tacitus, *Annals* 15.44; Suetonius, *Nero* 16.2; cf. Pliny, *Letter* 10.96-97). Indeed, Roman leaders felt no remorse in punishing Christians who had not committed a crime, even when they learned that Christians were not malevolent persons (Pliny, *Letter* 10.96-97). This is all the more significant given the similarity between Roman and Christian ethics, giving support to Elliott's argument that the exclusiveness of the Christian community led to a general ignorance about Christian beliefs and practices as well as a suspicion of the Christian movement. Finally, 1 Peter, Revelation and Pliny all give evidence of the regional oppression of Christians in the eastern region of the Roman Empire. If our dating of these works is correct, these three writings demonstrate that Christians suffered in this region for approximately 50 years. Our discussion of the religious traditions of the eastern areas of the Roman Mediterranean world support a regional suppression of Christians due to differences with pagans, as well as Roman officials and Jewish leaders. Classical and biblical scholars who reach this conclusion are able to base it on an abundance of solid evidence.

The exegeses in Parts I and II of this study will argue that John placed a regional oppression on a cosmic scale in order to understand the role of the Church in the divine plan for the cosmos. Since Revelation communicates its message predominantly through its images, an approach which attempts to understand how images function within a given community is preferable to others in order to interpret it. It is to such a method that I now turn.

C. Symbolic Biblical Language and Sociological Interpretation

Religious communication is distinctive because it refers to a transcendent truth which is beyond total human comprehension. This incomprehensibility carries with it a sense of mystery and awe. Thus, the need arises for symbolic forms of communication, by means of analogy and comparison, in order to overcome these difficulties. Moreover, there is
also a need for a method of interpretation appropriate to interpret the symbols. This study employs sociology of knowledge as its method for the task of interpreting the symbolic language of Revelation. This method has the benefit, when practiced properly, of asking how symbols function within a community without imposing value judgments upon those symbols.

Religious discourse attempts to give meaning and purpose to life, i.e., it attempts to inspire and inform human existence. One may distinguish these functions, but one should not attempt to separate them within the context of religious communication where they rightly function hand-in-hand. Religious discourse employs symbols and/or images as abbreviated messages that communicate data already known in a more complete form or a more complete sense. They provide pathways to the beliefs and values that contribute to the structure of a particular symbolic universe.

Religious communities also use metaphors, parables, stories, symbols and images as their primary means of symbolic discourse. Stories are the most highly developed and complex forms of symbolic communication. They may be historical, ahistorical or both to some degree. They may employ several different literary forms (e.g., myth, legend, epic, encomium, historiography, parable or drama), or may combine forms or include different forms within a greater formal framework (e.g., a parable within a legend). Since stories function within a narrative framework that recognizes past actions, present realities and future possibilities, they possess a sense of realness which coheres with the narrative quality of life itself. For this reason, common stories within a given social group may provide extraordinary means of social cohesion and identity. Stories may simultaneously constitute the reason for being for nations, cultures and individuals, performing three functions: (1) giving meaning to life for the group as well as for each person within the group; (2) providing a sense of corporate and individual identity; (3) creating a sense of purpose both collectively and personally. Similarly, stories help to indoctrinate new members into the social order. The social value of stories lies in their ability to inspire and inform.76

The two basic types of symbols are representational symbols and presentational ones. Representational symbols bring together two objects which have no natural connection or relationship. Their association derives from a given socio-historical context and continued use within that context, i.e., through custom and tradition. Presentational symbols participate in and/or may be similar to that which they symbolize. Because of the


similarity between the symbol and its referent, presentational symbols can become powerful icons which are strongly resistant to change. In many religious groups, followers may believe that this type of symbol actually brings them into contact with their god.

Revelation employs myth as its primary mode of narrative. Religious myth should not be evaluated solely upon whether it is factual but upon its communicative power. A myth is a narrative which describes the heavenly/transcendent realm and relates the activities of a heavenly/transcendent being, or an agent from that realm, in ways which human beings can appropriate. Some scholars argue that actual occurrences lie behind many myths. With Malinowski, I would argue that a myth must be understood as it functions within its own cultural setting.

Myths perform three functions. First, they provide a model for structuring the social order. Cosmogonic myths relate how the universe came into being or how a pivotal social event occurred. These data in turn influence social structures and social institutions. Such myths serve to unify diverse elements in a given society and establish a cultural identity for an ethnic group. Secondly, myths explain the unexplainable, both the good and the bad, and often relate what needs to be done to renew the social order. This renewal may be termed either “liberation” or “salvation” and may be viewed as a political act, a religious one, or both. Finally, myths provide models of behavior and a sense of one’s role and identity within a social group. Outstanding individuals become role-models and their recorded deeds, or stories about their deeds, become criteria by which to judge human behavior. Myths sanction some forms of behavior, tolerate others and condemn still others. Important events associated with a group’s mythology are commemorated on special days and these events reinforce social norms and social expectations. This present study will demonstrate how myths function similarly in Revelation.

Images are symbols which represent in abbreviated form the fuller metaphor, parable, myth and/or story. Images may be representational or presentational. They provide a means of communicating, in an expedient but thorough fashion, important concepts and messages and possess the power to inspire and inform their readers/hearers. Within Revelation’s mythic framework, select images function as literary symbols, abbreviated forms of the larger narrative, which remind the hearer/reader of the details behind the image. Some images in Revelation are representational (e.g., the Lamb), while others are presentational (e.g., “one like a son of man,” the Divine Warrior). All provide

---


John with means of communicating an important concept quickly and, like the stories which they represent, possess the power to inspire and inform.\textsuperscript{79}

Since Revelation conveys its messages primarily through its symbols and mythology, an approach which enables one to better interpret symbolic language is preferable. Sociology of knowledge is suited to this task because it attempts to examine the analogies and symbols which help to structure human societies.\textsuperscript{80}

The task of sociology of knowledge is two-fold: to uncover (1) "whatever passes for 'knowledge' in a society" and (2) the process of its development, transmission and maintenance through social institutions.\textsuperscript{81} "The theoretical formulations of reality (in whatever forms) . . . do not exhaust what is 'real' for the members of a society." Sociology of knowledge then must concern itself with "common-sense 'knowledge'" which constitutes "the social structure of reality" for a given society or culture.\textsuperscript{82} Sociology of knowledge must also concern itself with the analysis of the process of the construction of reality in human societies. Berger, Luckmann, Wolff, Hindson and others correctly describe reality and knowledge functionally, enabling the sociologist to analyze without judging the validity of a given social reality or concept of knowledge. Indeed, structuralist-functionalist views of religion have become the dominant methods employed by sociologists of religion.\textsuperscript{83} The work of Abraham Malherbe, Gerd Theissen and Wayne Meeks are prime examples among NT exegetes.\textsuperscript{84}

"Knowledge" connotes "the certainty that phenomena are real and that they possess specific characteristics."\textsuperscript{85} The sociologist then asks if two different perceptions of reality

\textsuperscript{79}See Thompson, 4-6, 46-50, esp. the excellent discussion of puns and word plays (49-50).
\textsuperscript{82}Berger and Luckmann, 27; see also Tidball, 95-96; Heller, 7-18.
\textsuperscript{83}Tidball, 96, 105. Berger and Luckmann are not always unbiased observers. On this point, I am grateful to William Power, University of Georgia, for directing me to a critique of their work (V. Harvey, review of Berger, RelSRev 5 [1979] 1-10).
\textsuperscript{85}Berger and Luckmann, 15; cf. Hindson, 35; Thompson, 176-85.
might reflect two different societal settings. This is particularly true in conflict situations.  

"The need for a 'sociology of knowledge' is thus already given with the observable differences between societies in terms of what is taken for granted as 'knowledge' in them." Moreover, the need arises by a recognition of "the general ways by which realities are taken as 'known' in human society." 87

Every group, society or culture constructs a "symbolic universe" 88 which provides its constituents with an ideal, prototypical society which gives legitimation and rationality to every aspect of human existence by explaining and justifying the given social order. This occurs in the following manner. Initially, the existing social order should make sense to the vast majority of persons in different social roles. Next, the social order must make all of life a meaningful process. As a result, the social order gives cognitive value to its meaningful process. Social knowledge leads to social values and those values then indicate proper social behavior. Subsequently, the social order provides four different levels of legitimation. Often these levels overlap both in method and time of use. The incipient level begins with the transmission of "linguistic objectifications of human experience," 89 i.e., oral traditions which attempt to explain life's purpose and meaning. The next level, rudimentary theoretical proposition, deals with the more pragmatic side of life. It transmits proverbs, myths, legends and folk-tales. The third level relates to advanced theories which explain and justify social institutions by means of complex theories. This level is entrusted to specialists (e.g., economists, lawyers, philosophers, theologians). The final level of legitimation is the symbolic universe itself. It contains traditions "that integrate different provinces of meaning and encompass the institutional order of a symbolic totality." 90 The symbolic universe includes both collective and individual histories and represents the ultimate fulfillment of institutional processes. 91 The conceptualization of a symbolic universe involves objectivation, sedimentation and accumulation of knowledge. Objectivation consists of the common expressions and concepts valued and adhered to at all social levels. Sedimentation refers to memorable experiences which help to form one's self-consciousness and perception of reality. Accumulation of knowledge occurs when the

---

86 Cf. Tidball, 103.
87 Berger and Luckmann, 15; see also Tidball, 105-06; Heller, 10.
88 One might use "sacred realm" or "sacred cosmos" or a similar phrase to describe a symbolic universe from a religious perspective. See also J. Camery-Hoggatt, Irony in Mark's Gospel (SNTSMS 72; Cambridge: CUP, 1992) 16-17, 26-30; Thompson, 33-34, 95.
89 Berger and Luckmann, 112; see also Heller, 11-12.
90 Berger and Luckmann, 113.
data of the first two steps are brought together and assimilated into a meaningful, coherent whole.92

Symbolic universes have three general roles: (1) they legitimize individuals; (2) they legitimize societies/cultures and (3) they present a society's version of the ideal human society. First, symbolic universes legitimize individuals by giving order to one's life. They validate, or invalidate if one chooses poorly by its standards, one's choices at the highest level of existence. They make life intelligible and liveable. Moreover, they may help certain persons to return to normality when their behavior has strayed too far from the social norm. Symbolic universes also provide a way of integrating the discrepant meanings encountered regularly in life. Furthermore, one's self-identity receives validation by its place within the universe, i.e., even when no one else understands me, God does. Finally, symbolic universes make death something with which one can live by giving death a meaningful purpose. Berger and Luckmann state that this final element is the most potent legitimation of the symbolic universe.93

Secondly, symbolic universes legitimate cultures/societies. They provide protection for institutions and set limits to social interaction and social reality. They also structure social history by giving all events a cohesive unity (e.g., Dionysius of Halicarnassus' Roman Antiquities, or the 19th century U. S. doctrine of manifest destiny, or a Chinese Maoist interpretation of history). In addition, symbolic universes integrate all discrete institutional processes, making the entire social operation coherent and, in doing so, preventing social chaos.94

Finally, human societies construct symbolic universes in order to represent the ideal human society.95 In this manner, a symbolic universe provides a strong sense of cosmic security for its members, even in the face of a competing, more technologically advanced symbolic universe.

Symbolic universes usually develop maintenance strategies96 in order to react to both interior and exterior threats. Societies maintain their symbolic universes in several ways. Mythology, a narrative which embodies ideas rather than history,97 is one maintenance strategy, the most archaic one, according to Berger and Luckmann. They define mythology as "a concept of reality that posits the ongoing penetration of the world of everyday experience by sacred forces."98 A myth is a symbolic story which expresses a

---

92 Berger and Luckmann, 49, 85, 115.
93 Berger and Luckmann, 115-19; see also Heller, 9.
94 Berger and Luckmann, 120-21.
95 Berger and Luckmann, 121-22; Heller, 9; Wright, 112-30.
96 In this study, "maintenance strategy" and "maintenance technique" will be used interchangeably.
97 Remus, 55.
98 Berger and Luckmann, 128. Cf. my earlier discussion of myth.
group's, or a society's, or a culture's identity in part or in toto. Myths depict how things should be and not always how things are. I find Berger and Luckmann, at this point, showing too little appreciation for the social need for mythic language. Tillich provides a more cogent discussion.99

Tillich writes that symbols and myths are closely related for they both constitute the language of faith for which science is ill-equipped. He defines myth as a "combination of symbols of our ultimate concern."100 By this, Tillich means that myths represent, either through narrative or symbol, that which a society or culture values most dearly. A myth is a symbolic presentation of divine figures/divine agency figures and their actions in human history. Myths will always be present because faith can only be expressed through symbolic language. Myths may either respond to a need and grow and develop or die and become forgotten when their usefulness has passed. However, they are invaluable as a means of expressing the highest values and goals of a society.101 At this point, the theologian informs the sociologists.

As a form of social maintenance, mythologies contain little theoretical deliberation save one's claim to a superior mode of life. They convey the connection between the human world and the transcendent world. A universe based primarily upon myth has specialists who best understand the tradition, but their knowledge is rather commonplace and non-technical.102 Again, although very helpful, one notes a certain elitist bias in Berger and Luckmann's comments concerning myths as forms of social maintenance. Mythology is a major maintenance strategy in Revelation and is closely related to the book's theology.

Like mythology, theology, the second maintenance method, also functions as a mode of contact between the human realm and the heavenly, transcendent realm, but it requires specialists with more technical skills than mythology requires.103 The acquisition of such skills often distances these specialists from everyday, commonplace life. These skills (e.g., translating the Greek New Testament) then become more and more difficult to obtain and may even seem extremely difficult to grasp by non-specialists. Often, however, mythology and theology coexist, each supporting the same symbolic universe within different social circles, affecting one another very little. Revelation, however, most often

99For a critique of Berger and Luckmann on this point, see N. Smart, The Science of Religion and the Sociology of Knowledge (Princeton: Princeton U., 1973) 74-91. I am grateful to Alan Godlas of the University of Georgia for directing me to Smart.
100Tillich, 50.
101Tillich, 41-54.
102Berger and Luckmann, 128-29.
103Berger and Luckmann, 129.
presents its theological content within a mythological framework. In this way, mythology and theology work together in maintaining church order.

Philosophy is the third means of maintenance. It may be viewed as a secularized version of theology (or theology may be viewed as a religious version of philosophy). Philosophy removes the means of maintenance farther from everyday life. The symbolic universe is taken for granted totally. In extreme cases, it may come to dominate every aspect of one's life (e.g., Communist China under Chairman Mao). Determinism is the most frequently employed philosophical argument employed by Revelation (e.g., 13.8).

The final major means of maintaining a symbolic universe is modern science. Berger and Luckmann describe this as an extreme step which totally removes the sacred and knowledge concerning it from everyday life. In other words, scientists become the specialists who keep the system running. In such social schemata, specialists in other fields rank beneath the scientists in importance. At its worst, this mode of maintenance can degenerate into a dehumanizing symbolic universe where the end-result becomes more important than how people are treated by the process.

Two maintenance techniques which address minor situations, according to Berger and Luckmann, are therapy and nihilation. Therapy keeps people within the system and from entering other competing symbolic universes. Nihilation is a negative form of legitimation wherein everything outside the system is liquidated in some way. Deviant behavior is given an inferior status or incorporated within the system itself. However, Revelation employs therapy as a major maintenance strategy. Often, mythology, theology and nihilation function conjointly in order to perform therapeutic tasks in Revelation. These maintenance strategies are prevalent in the letters to the seven churches (Rev 2-3) as a means of retaining the connection between Christ and community. In particular, this study will demonstrate that the promise of an unbroken fellowship between Christ and community, principally as priest-kings with Christ in the New Jerusalem, is the primary maintenance strategy throughout the book of Revelation.

Harvey and Smart have been particularly critical of the work of Berger and Luckmann from different disciplines. On theological grounds, Harvey argues that their work relativizes contrasting views while claiming a value-free and objective perspective, a position which Berger and Luckmann themselves question in others. Furthermore, Harvey

---

105 Berger and Luckmann, 130.
106 Berger and Luckmann, 130-34. A brilliant and gifted person may have no role in a given society. Berger and Luckmann refer to such an individual as an “intellectual,” one “whose expertise is not wanted by the society at large” (143). Anyone who has been so designated at any time in her or his life knows how valid this definition can be.
notes that Berger does not provide any norms or criteria that justify one type of religious faith rather than others. Smart, writing as a sociologist of religion, states that Berger and Luckmann reduce religion to a human construction within a supposedly neutral universe. Smart argues that they have not demonstrated that the experience of the numinous is a product of human society. Moreover, many objects in Berger's construction of the universe are not human products (e.g., the sun) but are grouped with human products nonetheless. Berger should revise his metaphysics and/or abandon his concept of a neutral universe.\(^\text{107}\) While these critiques deserve serious consideration by sociologists of knowledge, the Harvey's second critique is less convincing. Sociologists of religion are not about providing criteria to justify one type of religious faith overagainst others. Their task is to describe these religious traditions objectively.

Vorster makes some interesting comments on Revelation and the manner in which it creates a sacred cosmos. It narrates "otherworldly realities to a subculture whose members have to overcome the pressures of their society." The reader accepts "the authority of these visions" and is "an insider in apocalyptic imagery and symbolism, a believer in the triumph of God in the second coming of Christ." This process creates "an image of the reader in the text which directs the actual reader."\(^\text{108}\) Indeed, Parts I and II of this study will substantiate Vorster's statements with respect to the three major christological images in Revelation. In particular, it will argue that Jewish and pagan pressures caused internal and external pressures upon the churches in Asia, pressures which led some to a more relaxed attitude toward pagan religious customs and Jewish traditions and led others to ask how the Church could survive in a hostile environment. Moreover, it will suggest that Revelation was written to churches with competing prophetic/apocalyptic movements (John's movement, the Nicolaitans, the Jezebel-movement) and that this context assured John an astute audience which presumed that God communicated to prophetic figures.\(^\text{109}\) My use of the terms "reader," "hearer," "reader/hearer" (or "hearer/reader"), "original audience" or "original recipients," or similar expressions, connotes persons within the Christian community who may or may not be "insiders" (to use Vorster's expression) in apocalyptic

\(^{107}\)See V. Harvey, RelSRev 5 (1979) 1-10; N. Smart, The Science of Religion, 74-91.
visions, images and symbols, but who nonetheless have a sound knowledge of the message of a given image or symbol due to its currency in early Christianity.

With regard to sociology of knowledge, I am conscious of the limitations of the method. Along with the aforementioned criticisms of Berger and Luckman, it can be said of the method itself that it is often difficult to determine with certainty whether the relationship between symbol/image and community is symmetrical or asymmetrical or whether it intensifies or denies an empirical experience. Mythic symbols present more unique problems. They often reflect an earlier stage in the life of the community than the time when the document under examination was written. Moreover, they often alternate between description and prescription to varying degrees without noticing any tension in doing so. Additionally, social paradigmatic mythic symbols may provide a sense of the direction, motivation and rationale for the community but miss the unique features of the specific context. Furthermore, a religious symbol may reflect an ideal situation for which the author hopes and not the real situation. The author may have an inaccurate perception of reality. I will attempt to minimize these limitations by comparing passages in Revelation which rely on symbols to communicate their messages with those which do not rely on symbols to communicate. In this way, hopefully, the shortcomings of the method may be minimized.

D. Previous Studies: An historical overview

The major studies of the christology of Revelation in this century have been heavily theological in nature and have not engaged in detailed discussions of the possible sociological dimensions. These studies have focused upon the titles and names which can be catalogued, examined and explained within a theological tradition-history with minimal reference to their social impact.

Büchsel (1907) developed the first modern, extensive study of the christology of Revelation by describing the function of its christological titles and themes. Although Büchsel's work is dated due to subsequent research, its focus upon the christological titles has provided a model for others to follow (e.g., Comblin, Ellwanger, Feuillet, J. Giblin, Holtz, Jankowski, Jonge, Mounce and Müller). I would argue, against Büchsel's approach, that the foundational christological meaning of the book of Revelation, a book of visions, is in the symbols and images expressed through its visions. Only after examining

---

111 Cf. Scroggs, 166-67, 176.
those symbols and images, can one appreciate and understand the christological agenda in Revelation and then go on to make statements about christological titles.

Comblin (1965) argued that the main innovation of Revelation is the identification of the two figures of the Son of Man and the messianic king of Israel in the person of Jesus of Nazareth. While the concepts of the Son of Man and king of Israel derive from Jewish apocalypticism, the ministry of the historical Jesus constitutes a singularly Christian contribution to Revelation. This is comprehensible if one starts with the concept of Isaiah's transcendent suffering servant of God, a prophecy fulfilled in Jesus. If Jesus is the servant of God, then one should expect him also to be the Son of Man and the king of Israel. Comblin states that this christology was present in the Christian community from a very early date (e.g., Paul). The Church continues Christ's servanthood in the interim between the ascension and the second coming. Similarly, the faithful Christian witnesses will live again with Christ in the New Jerusalem. Christians enjoy that bliss proleptically in the interim. Jesus guides the Church from heaven. The title of the exalted and sacrificial Lamb is subsumed under the Son of Man and King of Israel titles.

Comblin's work, though outstanding at many points, has two shortcomings. First, as we shall see, Revelation does not contain a "son of man" christology, but a "one like a son of man" christology. The latter comes from Jewish apocalypticism, but the parallel traditions are Ezekiel, Daniel, 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra, the Apocalypse of Abraham and the Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah, not Isaiah in the Hebrew Bible (HB). In these Jewish apocalypses, comparisons such as "one like a son of man" denoted heavenly beings in human-likeness. Secondly, if Comblin had been more sensitive to the sociological function of the christological images and symbols, he might have noted that the king of Israel motif plays a small role in Revelation. Unlike 4 Ezra 11-13 which stresses the king of Israel through the symbol of the lion, Revelation places much more emphasis upon the slain Lamb who has become Sovereign of the universe (not only Israel; cf. Rev 5.5-10; 17.14; 19.16). Thus, the way to dominion and salvation, two inseparable concepts in Revelation, is through faithful witnessing, even unto death (e.g., 1.5-6; 20.4-6). The kingship of Israel theme has been overshadowed by the slain Lamb who has become the role model for Christian witnessing in Revelation. This study argues in Part II that the slain Lamb of Revelation is a Christian adaptation of Jewish traditions.

Like Büchsel, Holtz (1971) concentrates on the christological titles. Holtz has done an outstanding job of describing what John and his original audience believed. His understanding of the interrelated nature of the doctrines of christology, soteriology, eschatology and ecclesiology provides helpful insights into the community's theology.

113 This point will be demonstrated in chapter two of the present study, a more developed version of my "One Like A Son of Man in First-Century CE Judaism," NTS 41 (1995) 183-98.
However, he has not shown clearly the interrelationships among the various aspects of John's theology, often addressing topics in isolation from related materials. For example, he does not recognize the high status of priest-kings consistently presented in connection with "one like a son of man" and with the Lamb. Furthermore, by concentrating rather on the theological background and not on the socio-historical foreground, he fails to recognize what the former christological tradition has contributed to the latter. Thus, while Holtz has made the initial steps in helping us to understand the relationship between christology and ecclesiology, his work provides little data on how these images might have influenced John's readers/hearers in Asia and fails to provide an integrated christological study.

The present work will focus upon christological symbols and images because prophetic and/or apocalyptic writings communicate primarily through visions and not theological expositions, a fact recognized by Beck but not developed by him. 114 Visions have the power to affect both one's emotionality and rationality simultaneously, i.e., they can inspire and inform.

Keck warns us that the study of christological titles has many shortcomings. 115 First, title-centered studies cannot adequately explain important christological passages which do not include titles. He notes that some scholars even provide titles that are not there (e.g., Comblin's the king of Israel thesis concerning Revelation). I agree with Keck. Rev 1.7 is an example of an important christological passage in Revelation without a title or a name. Its relevance will be explored later. Secondly, title-centered studies do not adequately address the phenomenon of a plurality of titles in a given passage or pericope. He notes that the biblical writers themselves show no embarassment with using many titles within one context, but scholars feel the need to instruct the reader how these titles relate to one another. I concur with Keck and would suggest that because no single title exhausted what Jesus meant to the early church, a plurality of titles may indicate a search for the combined images which would convey all that Jesus represented. Thirdly, title-centered studies can miss the christology in the text. For example, Keck notes, correctly in my opinion, that nothing Paul says about the importance of Jesus depends upon a christological title. Subsequently, christological elements are either underappreciated or overlooked entirely. Fourthly, title-centered studies often elucidate only half the christology in a given text. Jesus interprets the titles and not vice versa, i.e., who Jesus was for the early church determined what the title meant. Again, I agree. The Lamb who conquers through suffering, leads the community and destroys evil in Revelation (John's


contribution without a titular history) is an image which takes it cue from the history of Jesus in order to explain the history of the community. For example, while Rev 5 mentions the lion, a traditional Davidic messianic image, it then replaces the lion with the slain Lamb, an image with a tradition-history but one re-defined in Revelation in light of the crucifixion of Jesus. More will be said concerning this in Part I. Moreover, Part II of this study will demonstrate how an examination of the symbolic names alone in Rev 19.11-21 misses key christological issues and that the symbolic names and images complement one another and their interrelationships are crucial if one is to fully understand the passage.

In addition to the general weaknesses which Keck identified, studies of the christology of Revelation based primarily upon titles suffer from three basic problems. The first problem is that many writers recognize the implications for a sociological understanding of Revelation but do so through theological categories which speak to academic questions (e.g., Holtz and Comblin), i.e., the question of what people believed. Sociological realities and academic questions do not always go hand-in-hand. Sociological inquiries ask why people believed certain things and how their lives were affected by their beliefs. Such questions are vitally important when studying a work which offers an alternative worldview, as an apocalypse does.

The second problem is that even more narrowly focused studies (e.g., Lietzmann on the son of man; Hillyer on the Lamb) often spend more time discussing the ANE/Jewish background at the expense of an examination of the social foreground.116 As a result, their studies provide substantial information about the history of an idea but little about the social setting and perspective of its proponents. As a corollary, the function of symbolic discourse (stories, symbols, images, etc.) for the ongoing life of a given community goes underappreciated at best, unnoticed at worst.

The third problem, a by-product of theological interests, is that previous studies have failed to notice the sociological function of the major christological images in Revelation and, thus, failed to make vital connections which reveal important sociological data about the community. While we are indebted to these works for recovering the tradition-history of many passages, they have often overlooked John's creativity in re-fashioning older imagery to suit the pastoral task before him.

The present study employs a different approach. First of all, it isolates the distinctive apocalyptic "one-like-a-son-of-man" tradition in first century CE Judaism and demonstrates how Revelation incorporates this tradition. It also demonstrates how John re-interprets the "one like a son of man" in distinctively Christian ways. This continues some of my earlier

---

116E.g., H. Lietzmann, Der Menschensohn (Freiburg: Mohr, 1896); N. Hillyer, "The Lamb' in the Apocalypse," EvQ 39 (1967) 228-36.
work. Secondly, it identifies the social function of this tradition in Revelation and demonstrates how this tradition has influenced the Lamb imagery in Revelation. This has rarely been noted previously by NT scholars. Thirdly, it shows how the fullest christological expression is found in the Divine Warrior image (19.11-21) and how the “one like a son of man,” the Lamb and the Divine Warrior images are interrelated. This last point has been noted previously by Laws, but, in my opinion, she undervalues the importance and influence of the other two christological images in the fashioning of the Divine Warrior. Finally, this study will detail the sociological implications of these images for a more complete understanding of the book of Revelation.

The methodology employed will involve a combination of historical criticism and insights from the sociology of knowledge. Since I have discussed historical criticism in detail elsewhere, I will not burden the reader unduly presently.

The main ways in which the christology of Revelation has been studied have been noted above. This particular study will conduct a socio-historical study of the christology of Revelation using historical criticism and insights from the sociology of knowledge. The strengths of this approach are threefold. First and foremost, it emphasizes the need for a thorough knowledge of the socio-historical context which gives meaning to expressions, symbols, myths, stories and rituals. It also investigates the ways in which what passes as "knowledge" or "reality" in a given social setting is transmitted from place-to-place and generation-to-generation and acknowledges that literature plays a role in this transmission. This thesis will demonstrate the ways in which the pagan sacred cosmos and the Christian sacred cosmos came into conflict in Roman Asia.

Secondly, historical criticism attempts to ascertain the context of a given document by identifying its author, locating its historical setting, and stating the significance of social, cultural, economic and political references. It also attempts to determine the meaning of the original document for the original readers and its original purpose and function for those readers. Sociology of knowledge begins with the assumption that groups, societies and cultures create symbolic universes, or sacred cosmoses, which provide a cosmic rationale for the way things function in society, legitimize the social institutions which support the social order, and create a framework from which individual identities come into formation. In the dynamic relationship between social reality and psychological development, there


exists an unconscious validation system in which the social order validates personal behavior that falls within the accepted norms and adheres to the standard values. Likewise, personality characteristics which conform to social expectations reinforce the correctness of the perception of reality in a given social community. Historical criticism provides a means to determine the historical background for the reconstruction of the social setting. Sociology of knowledge then attempts to ascertain the manner in which traditional materials have been incorporated by the group under study. Since the aims of the two methods complement one another so well, the two can naturally work hand-in-hand in historical research.

Because of these similar concerns, sociology of knowledge and historical criticism can function together. They will be especially helpful in this study which has the following two overall objectives: (1) to ascertain the role and function of Christ within Revelation's symbolic universe through its use of the "one like a son of man," the Lamb and the Divine Warrior images; (2) to understand how these images affected the life of the Christian communities in Asia in the first century CE.
PART I:
ONE LIKE A SON OF MAN

Part I will examine the one-like-a-son-of-man tradition in Judaism from Ezekiel to apocalyptic Jewish writings in the early decades of the second century CE and will conclude with a detailed exegesis of the role of the tradition in the book of Revelation.

Chapter 2:
THE JEWISH BACKGROUND

The preceding chapter discussed the characteristics of apocalyptic literature, the date and social setting of Revelation and commented on recent studies on the christology of Revelation. It also discussed the research methods, historical criticism and aspects of the sociology of knowledge, to be employed conjointly in order to ascertain in what ways christological imagery helped to maintain a particular communal worldview.

Part I, encompassing chapters 2-4 of this study, will examine the "one like a son of man" tradition, identify its roots and development in exilic and post-exilic Judaism and demonstrate how Rev 1.1-3.22 and 14.14-16 fit within this tradition. In particular, chapter 4 will conclude with a detailed exegesis of Rev 2.1-3.22 and 14.14-16, demonstrating the manner in which Revelation's christology incorporates the human-like redeemer imagery and relates it directly to the life of the community by means of the promise of an eternal fellowship with God Almighty and Christ in the new age. This promise established the chief point of contact between Christ and community in Revelation. Our discussion of the letters in Rev 2-3 in chapter 4 will substantiate this point. Revelation does not merely promise the faithful an eternal fellowship but one as priestly co-regents (i.e., priest-kings) with Christ, a maintenance strategy aimed at sustaining Revelation's symbolic universe. The priest-kingship promise is an eschatological exodus motif depicting the Christian Church as the New Israel on the verge of entering the New Jerusalem.

Our discussion of the "one like a son of man" found in Rev 1.13 and 14.14 in Part I of this thesis necessarily also studies the letters to the seven churches (Rev 2-3) because these letters contain the messages which the "one like a son of man" sends to the churches and, in turn, reveal something of the christology of those communities. It would not be enough simply to examine the description, call and commission in 1.13-20 without also examining what Christ instructed John to write. Thus, as Mark 1.1 serves as a programmatic statement to the entire gospel, Rev 1.13-14 serves as a superscription to Rev 2-3.
Chapter 1 of this study argued that the purpose of the seven letters, with one exception, is to address internal issues within each congregation by stating what constitutes a faithful Christian witness in each context. In this way, the instructions within the letters are aimed at preparing the churches spiritually so that they might endure and overcome the perceived crises envisioned in Rev 4-19. If Christians recanted their faith and lived, they could not become priest-kings in the next age. If they died for their faith, they would become priest-kings in the next age. Since Christians valued life in the next age more, Rev 1.5b-6, with its reference to "the one who loves us and freed us from our sins by means of his blood and made us a kingdom, priests to his God and Father," could be a powerful therapeutic maintenance technique.

A. The Scholarly Interpretation of Daniel 7.13

Daniel 7.13a reads, "As I looked in the night visions, I saw one like a son of man coming with the clouds of heaven" (translation mine). This passage of Scripture has created an enormous amount of secondary literature. Although scholarly comment upon it has been extensive, there is no consensus as to its origin or its original meaning and referent. Our task will not be an exhaustive history of the critical scholarship. Others have done so ably. Rather, we shall ask and attempt to answer two questions. (1) What did this expression, "one like a son of man," mean originally in Daniel? (2) To whom did it refer? These two questions are interrelated, if not inseparable.

Generally, scholarly opinion has taken its point of departure from one of six general perspectives. Often methods, ideas and conclusions overlap. However, most scholars make the same error of failing to identify adequately the distinction in the HB and Jewish pseudepigraphy between the generic expressions "son of man/sons of men," on the one hand, and the description of heavenly beings by means of comparison (i.e., by means of "descriptive comparisons") to human beings (e.g., "one like a son of man"), on the other.

i. The messianic interpretation is the earliest extant interpretation of Dan 7.13. Many contemporary scholars still believe that interpretation is correct. "Conservative scholars are
agreed that the Son of Man is a picture of the Lord Jesus Christ..." According to this school of interpretation, the setting for Daniel is the Babylonian exile of the sixth century BCE; the "one like a son of man" referred prophetically to the first coming of Jesus in the first century CE; and the transportation upon clouds connotes his role as a divine being. This school argues that "Son of Man" was a messianic title for Daniel. Walvoord, for example, writes that "the frequent introduction of this term in the New Testament referring to Jesus Christ is the divine commentary on the phrase." He claims that the Son of Man in Daniel "corresponds clearly to other Scriptures which predict that Christ will rule over all nations (Ps. 72:11; Rev. 19:15-16)." Walvoord finds confirmation in the fact that Christ "took the title Himself in the New Testament." Walvoord has interpreted the HB/OT in light of the NT. If he had not, he might have realized that Dan 7.13 has the descriptive comparison "one like a son of man" and not the titular "the son of man." He presupposes that all prophecies in the HB are predictions concerning Jesus in the first century CE without allowing the prophets to speak for themselves. Finally, nearly all HB scholars question the Babylonian captivity as the true historical setting of Daniel.

ii. Other scholars have tended to pinpoint ANE parallels as the source of the "one like a son of man" tradition. For example, in his discussions of Ugaritic, Egyptian, Gnostic and Iranian texts, Mowinckel concluded that the Son of Man concept did not develop within Judaism but developed as a Jewish variant of the ANE concept of the cosmic Primal Man. In the Jewish version, soteriological and eschatological elements replaced the cosmological ones. Similarly, Cullmann argued that a concept of an Original Man existed in oriental religions and that Judaism attempted to relate this concept to Adam the first human. One result of this attempted merger was the Danielic Son of Man. However, our

---


5 Walvoord, Daniel, 168.


8 Mowinckel, 346-450.

knowledge as to the origin and geographical extent of the Urmensch traditions is limited
and thus this tradition cannot be assumed with certainty to be a model for Daniel. This
approach also misses entirely the distinction within the tradition between the generic and
comparative expressions. While the generic expressions (e.g., "son of man" or "sons of
men") function as circumlocutions, the comparisons (e.g., "like that of a man" [Ezek 8.2] or
"one like a son of man" [Dan 7.13]) describe heavenly beings in human-likeness.

iii. Colpe is among those who argue for a Canaanite background to the son of man image
in Daniel. He argues that the Ras Shamra texts describe Baal, the young god who replaced
the chief god El, as one who rides upon the clouds. He also notes other borrowings from
the Canaanites, for example, in Isa 19.1 and 27.1; Ps 74.13-14; Job 9.13 and 26.12. In
this way, he hopes to demonstrate how these non-Jewish traditions survived in the Jewish
community up to the second century BCE. The parallels identified by Colpe are
generally sound, but they may reflect a more general ANE tradition lost to us. One should
note, however, that Dan 7.13 does not tell of a young god replacing an older god, as with
Baal and El, but rather a god giving authority to a heavenly being. If Canaanite religiosity
is the source of Dan 7.13, it has been demythologized considerably. In addition, Colpe's
explanation provides little information as to how the figure functions in Dan 7. Moreover,
this school of interpretation fails to appreciate the traditional distinction made between the
generic expressions and the descriptive comparisons.

iv. Many commentators look more to the biblical tradition itself. Hooker, for example,
argues that in both Daniel and I Enoch the 'Son of Man' represented the faithful remnant
within the people of God in both suffering and glorification. The fact that the phrase
'Son of man' is used here as a comparison suggests that, whatever else he may or may not
be, he is not a mere 'Son of man.' Against Schmidt, who argues that "one like a son of
man" is a comparison that refers to angels, she argues, "Such reasoning presents a too-

of the Book of Daniel (HSIM 16; Missoula, MT: Scholars Press, 1977 [hereafter Collins, Vision of
Daniel]) 123-47 and The Apocalyptic Imagination (New York: Crossroad, 1984 [hereafter Collins,
Apocalyptic Imagination]) 78-86; see also Day, Emerton and Morgenstern. For a critique of this position,
see F. M. Wilson, 36.
views include S. R. Driver (mentioned above); T. W. Manson, "The Son of Man in Daniel, Enoch and the
Gospels," BJRL 32 (1949-50) 171-93; J. Mullenburg, "The Son of Man in Daniel and the Ethiopic
NTS 41 (1995) 277-79, esp. n. 1; M. Casey, Son of Man: The Interpretation and Influence of Daniel 7
(London: SPCK, 1979 [hereafter Casey, Son of Man]); A. A. DiLella, "The One in Human Likeness and
the Holy Ones of the Most High in Daniel 7," CBQ 39 (1977) 1-19; D. S. Russell, Daniel
(Edinburgh/Philadelphia: St. Andrew/Westminster, 1981); R. A. Anderson, Signs and Wonders
12Hooker, p. 11; see also n. 1.
neat solution to our problem. The useful convention that animals represent men and men represent supernatural beings no doubt holds good for later apocalyptic, but it is doubtful whether it was already a recognized formula when Dan. 7 was composed.  13 She finds two themes in Dan 7. First, there is a conflict between the people of Israel and their foes and, secondly, the conquest of chaos by their god. "Yahweh's struggle with the monster and the people's battle with their enemies are one, and it is God's victory which ensures the well-being of the people."  14 The Son of man represents the faithful remnant of Israel who received dominion. Israel is "the true Son of Man to whom dominion belongs by right."  15

Hooker notes a shift in the Similitudes of Enoch (1 Enoch 37-71) and 2 Esdras 13. In the Similitudes, the Son of Man is more an individual while not losing his function as a representative figure. He is the Righteous One who represents the righteous ones; the Elect One who represents the elect ones.  16 In 2 Esdras 13, the Danielic Son of man has become an individual Man, possibly under the influence of an Anthropos tradition.  17

Hooker's argument has several strengths. She correctly understands that (1) Dan 7 contains a comparison and not the title; (2) the representational function of both the Danielic and the Enochic figures and (3) the shift of meaning from Daniel, on the one hand, to the Similitudes and 2 Esdr (or 4 Ezra) 13, on the other. However, she fails to appreciate the change which the comparison creates when joined with the generic phrase. It is no longer a generic phrase in Dan 7, the Similitudes of Enoch and 2 Esdras but becomes a description of a heavenly being. Thus, she also fails to identify the use of comparisons in 1 Enoch 46 and 2 Esdr (4 Ezra) 13 as descriptions of heavenly beings totally consistent with Dan 7.13. Indeed, Schmidt's solution may be "too-neat" simply because it is correct. The "one like a son of man" in Dan 7.13 is more than a representative figure. He is also an individual heavenly being who has received the dominion in heaven that will come soon to the faithful remnant of Israel on earth, according to Dan 7-12.

v. Similarly to Hooker, DiLella argued that the son of man was a symbol of the faithful. The Aramaic בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים ("one like a son of man") and the Hebrew בְּנֵי הָאֱלֹהִים ("son of man") are figures of speech which merely mean "a human being" or "a person." The "one in human likeness" is not a real person but "a symbol of 'the holy ones of the Most High,' a title given, . . . to the faithful Jews. . . who courageously withstood the persecution of

---

13Hooker, 14.
14Hooker, 20-21; quote from 21.
15Hooker, 23-29; quote from 29.
16Hooker, 46.
17Hooker, 49-56.
Antiochus IV Epiphanes. Hence, there seems to be no mystery at all as to the meaning and background of the 'one in human likeness.' 18

First of all, against DiLella, I would argue that there is a "mystery" simply because this figure is not named explicitly in Daniel. Secondly, Dan 7.13 does not simply read בֵּן יָשָׁר but בֵּן רָעָה. In both its Hebraic and Aramaic forms, "son of man" is merely a figure of speech denoting human beings; however, the comparison changes the meaning significantly, conveying to its original readers that the figure only has a human appearance. Indeed, what sense would it make to describe a human being with the expression "like a human being"? It would convey that the being in question only looked human, or had a human appearance, but was not actually human. This is exactly how the four beasts are described in Dan 7.1-8. The reader knows that these descriptions are nothing but analogous representations. Thus, the "one like a son of man" is not a human being but a description of another type of being, a heavenly being (as traveling via clouds connotes in the HB [e.g., Exod 13.21 and 16.10; Num 11.25; Ps 104.3; Isa 19.1]) in human form.

vi. The final position was first put forth in two journal articles nearly a century ago by Nathaniel Schmidt. 19 In his first article, Schmidt argued that 'son of man' was not a messianic title. In the later article, developing his earlier one somewhat, Schmidt argued that "one like a son of man" did not refer to the messiah but to the archangel Michael. Schmidt argued that in Dan 8.15, Gabriel is described as "one having the appearance of a man," Dan 10.16 later described another angel as "one in the likeness of the sons of men" and Dan 10.18 a third time described an angel as "one having the appearance of a man." Furthermore, coming with clouds suggests a heavenly being (see my comments above concerning DiLella's position). Finally, Dan 10.21 identified Michael as the heavenly prince of Israel. Thus, Schmidt concluded that "one like a son of man" in Dan 7.13 functioned similarly and described an angelic being. Since Michael is the angelic prince for Israel, he would be the logical referent of "one like a son of man."

Others have followed Schmidt's lead. For example, Leitzmann argued that since Daniel and Revelation both use comparisons and the Gospels do not, Revelation depends upon Daniel and knows nothing of the synoptic son of man tradition. 20 Others have identified "the holy ones of the Most High" as the angelic army which followed Michael in

---

18 DiLella, 3; cf. Moule, NTS 41, 278.
19 N. Schmidt, "Was bar nash a Messianic Title?" JBL 15 (1896) 36-53 and "The 'Son of Man' in the Book of Daniel," JBL 19 (1900) 22-28. It is this Schmidt to whom Hooker referred whose solution was "too-neat."
battle at the celestial level. Both Michael and the holy ones would be the heavenly counterparts to the faithful Jews under Antiochus' persecution. Day argues, for example, that except in Ps 34, "holy ones" always refers to angels in the HB, Qumran and the intertestamental literature. Collins notes similar roles for Michael in the Qumran literature (QL) (e.g., 1QM 17.7-8) and the NT (e.g., Rev 12.7-12) and notes similar heavenly figures in 11Q Melch vv 8-15; T. Moses 10; Matt 16.27; Mark 8.38; 1 Thess 4.16 and 2 Thess 1.7. For him, the Danielic figure is a variant version of a second temple Jewish belief in a heavenly savior.

I agree with the position taken by Schmidt and followed and developed by others. First, it does justice to Daniel by not reading the NT back into it, but reads Daniel on its own terms. Secondly, those who have followed Schmidt's lead have shown parallels in other Jewish writings without overlooking Daniel's place within the tradition. Collins especially has shown parallel developments in second temple Judaism and early Christianity which elucidate Daniel's use and concept of the expression. Thirdly, Schmidt correctly perceives the distinctive manner in which Dan 7-12 uses descriptive comparisons.

Why then have so many gone wrong on this topic? With few exceptions, regardless of the point of departure, most scholars make the same three errors. First, the synoptic son of man tradition is either in the foreground and/or the background of their thinking and they come to Dan 7.13 from that perspective. This error in perspective leads to the other two. Secondly, they do not perceive the differences between the generic terms and the descriptive comparisons because they want to prove either that Dan 7.13 predicts the lordship of Christ or that it is not a prediction and that "one like a son of man" is just another generic expression. The distinction between generic expressions and descriptive comparisons was recognized by some early Christians. For example, Mark uses a generic expression (νδοις των αυτρώπων [3.28]) to denote human beings, while using δοις τοι δεμεράπων as a technical term to denote the messiah (e.g., 8.38). Thirdly, they do not realize the degree to which Daniel is dependent upon Ezekiel for its descriptive comparisons (primarily due to an overemphasis upon the nature of the relationship between Dan 7.13 and the synoptics). Subsequently, they fail to perceive how descriptive comparisons


22Day, 168, esp. n. 81.

function in the HB, the pseudepigraphical literature and Revelation. Similarly, scholars have failed to note that

These errors are interrelated. Several persons have recognized the dependence of Dan 7 upon Ezek 1.24 For example, Bowman notes the throne on wheels aflame (cf. Ezek 1.4, 15-16, 21, 26 and Dan 7.6); God enthroned in human-likeness (cf. Ezek 1.26-27 and Dan 7.9-10); a great cloud (Ezek 1.4 and Dan 7.13); and four great beasts (Ezek 1.5-14 and Dan 7.3-8). This listing, however, is but partial. I have identified four other elements which Daniel borrows from Ezekiel which enable us to understand better the role and function of the descriptive comparisons.

First, the setting for both is the Babylonian captivity in the sixth century BCE, in actuality for Ezekiel; in imagery for Daniel. This cannot be overstated. The author of Daniel uses Ezekiel's context as a symbolic metaphor, a mirror for his own time. As in Ezekiel's time, faithfulness to God cannot be taken for granted in the face of an oppressive foreign ruler but must be shown constantly. 4 Ezra, Revelation, Sib. Or. 5 and the Apocalypse of Abraham, all thought to have been written about 100 CE, also use "Babylon" as a code name for the oppressor and use Ezekiel's time as a symbolic metaphor.

Secondly, both books contain symbolic messages of hope in order to encourage the faithful in their struggle against oppression (e.g., Ezek 37 and Dan 7).

Thirdly, in the books of Ezekiel and Daniel alone in the HB, "son of man" functions as a means of address to a human being (e.g., Ezek 2.1; 5.1; 11.2; 15.2; 22.23; 30.21; 37.3; 40.4 and Dan 8.17 [cf. Dan 10.19]).25 The only other extant occurrence of "son of man" as a means of address in early Judaism is in 1 Enoch 60.10: "And he said to me, 'Son of man, you here wish to know what is secret.'"26

Fourthly, only Ezekiel and Daniel in the HB describe heavenly beings by means of comparison, i.e., with descriptive comparisons. Schmidt correctly noted this in Dan 7.13; 8.15; 10.16, 18 (see also 12.6-7). Parallels in Ezekiel include 1.26-28 which describes the appearance of the Lord; 8.2-4 which may describe either God or an angel; 9.2-11 which describes an angel as a "man clothed in linen" (see Dan 10.5 and 12.6-7; also compare


Ezek 9.4-6 with Rev 7.3); 40.3-4 describes an angel who acts as Ezekiel's heavenly guide (cf. Dan 10.10-21).

These parallels in and of themselves may not persuade everyone; however, one should note that "son of man/sons of men" never functions as a description of a heavenly being but only as a reference or means of address to a human being in the HB. The same is also true in the pseudepigraphical writings. Some might argue that the title "that/this Son of man" in 1 Enoch 37-71 is an exception to this rule. It is not. In 1 Enoch 37-71 "that/this Son of man" is not the primary referent. The primary referent is one "whose face had the appearance of a man" (46.1). In other words, in 1 Enoch 37-71 "that/this Son of man" always refers back to the figure introduced by means of a descriptive comparison in 46.1 and not vice versa. That is to say, the phrase "whose face had the appearance of a man" is the image for which "that/this Son of Man" is the symbol. Additionally, the Ethiopic translation of 1 Enoch employs three different expressions for "that/this son of man," suggesting that it was not a technical term or a title in the earlier document of which the Ethiopic version is a translation. This entire matter is difficult to clarify because Ethiopic has no definite article. However, it is certain that "this/that Son of Man" is not a mere mortal, but a heavenly being who possesses extraordinary powers and duties.

Furthermore, even though there is no consensus among scholars concerning the origin, meaning and function of Dan 7.13, there is a broad consensus that Ezekiel has influenced Daniel's presentation of heavenly beings and that Dan 8.15, 10.16 and 10.18 refer to heavenly beings.

We began this section by asking what the expression "one like a son of man" meant and to whom it referred originally. Our research has shown that this expression was one of several descriptive comparisons which the books of Ezekiel and Daniel employed to designate heavenly beings, either God (e.g., Ezek 1.26-28) or angels (e.g., Dan 10.16-18). Although absolute literary dependence has not been established, nowhere else does one find these same aforementioned literary parallels. Our research does not deny other parallels, but those parallels, for example in Canaanite traditions, have not adequately examined the function of descriptive comparisons in the HB.

28 Cf. F. M. Wilson, 40-42.
Before turning to Revelation itself, this study will now briefly examine the exegesis of Dan 7.13 in *1 Enoch*, *4 Ezra*, the *Apocalypse of Abraham* (*ApAb*) and also the *Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah* (*Mart. Isa.*).

B. Descriptive Comparisons in Jewish and Christian Pseudepigrapha

i. The Similitudes of Enoch

*1 Enoch* 37-71, also known as the Similitudes of Enoch, *4 Ezra* 13, the *ApAb* 10 and the *Mart. Isa.* 4 provide important examples of the interpretation of Dan 7.13 in first century CE Judaism and independent, parallel Christian traditions.\(^{31}\)

It is generally acknowledged that *1 Enoch* is a composite of several Enoch books written at different times and places. These books are (1) The Watchers (1-36), (2) The Similitudes (37-71), (3) The Astronomical Writings (72-82), (4) The Dream Visions (83-90) and (5) The Epistle (91-107). The Similitudes have five parts: (1) an introduction (37.1-4); (2) the first similitude (chaps. 38-44); (3) the second similitude (chaps. 45-57); (4) the third similitude (chaps. 58-69); (5) two epilogues (chaps. 70-71).

The Similitudes were not found in the Qumran collection and this fact has led many scholars to date the Similitudes after the death of that community in 70 CE. Milik, for example, has argued for a pre-Christian Enochic Pentateuch at Qumran with a longer version of the astrological writings and a "Book of Giants" instead of the Similitudes. Milik did not work closely with the Ethiopic translations. He discovered late additions in 61.1 in Aramaic which refer to angels flying with wings. He concluded that the Similitudes was a Christian work which eventually replaced the Giants in the Enoch tradition. He dated the Similitudes in the late third century CE.\(^{32}\)

Milik has been soundly criticized by other leading scholars studying *1 Enoch*. Some have argued that if Milik had worked more closely with the Ethiopic translations he would have found that the addition in 61.1 was not in the Ethiopic and would have dated the Similitudes in the first century CE.\(^{33}\)

---


be 40 BCE if 56.5-7 refers to an attack on Palestine by the Parthians at that time. He also notes that 67.5-13 refers to hot springs where the affluent sought cures from illnesses. This could refer to the springs at Callirhoe to which Herod travelled prior to his death in 4 BCE. Moreover, Reddish also notes parallels between the NT and the Similitudes (Matt 19.28 and 1 Enoch 45.3; John 5.22 and 1 Enoch 61.8).\(^{34}\) In general, I agree with Reddish. However, the NT parallels may simply reflect dependence upon a common Jewish religious milieu. I would argue for a date in the first six decades of the Common Era because the Similitudes do not contain any reference to the Jewish War of 66-72 CE but allude to events at the close of the previous century. It would be difficult for a Jewish writer not to mention the destruction of Jerusalem after the fact, as 4 Ezra, 2 Baruch, and the *Apocalypse of Abraham* attest.\(^{35}\)

1 Enoch 46.1 describes one with the Head of Days "whose face had the appearance of a man and his face (was) full of grace, like one of the holy angels," i.e., he is a heavenly being. This text clearly picks up where Dan 7.13 ends. The "Ancient of Days" is now the "Head of Days," the "one like a son of man" is now one "whose face had the appearance of a man" who is identified as "that Son of Man." As noted earlier, 1 Enoch 46.1 introduced the human-like figure with a descriptive comparison, in keeping with Dan 7.13 and Ezek 1.26. In other words, the descriptive comparison becomes the point of reference for "this/that Son of Man" and not the reverse (see also 1 Enoch 46.2, 3, 4; 48.2; 60.10; 62.7, 9, 14; 63.11; 69. 26, 27 (twice); 70.1; 71.14, 17). "This/That Son of Man" is the messiah, the Elect One, the Chosen One (e.g., chaps. 51-52).\(^{36}\) "This/That Son of Man" sits on a throne (e.g., 45.3; 55.4; 61.8; 62.5; 69.27, 29), acts as a judge (e.g., 45.3 and 46.2) and gathers a community of the faithful to himself (e.g., 48.4 and 62.12-13); is righteous (e.g., 46.3 and 62.2), has a mysterious dimension (e.g., 48.3; 62.7), functions as a revealer (e.g., 46.3), rules the cosmos (e.g., 62.6-7; 71.15-17) and is an object of adoration (e.g., 48.5 and 62.9).

In contrast, 1 Enoch 37-71 has 10 generic sayings which do not describe or refer to heavenly beings but to human beings. 1 Enoch 39.1 provides an excellent example, for it contrasts heavenly beings with human beings. "And it will come to pass in these days that the chosen and holy children (i.e., angels) will come down from the high heavens, and their offspring will become one with the sons of men" (cf. 39.5; 42.2; 64.2 [twice]; 69.6 [twice]; 69.12; 69.14 [v. 69.15 in Charlesworth ed.]).

---

\(^{34}\) Reddish, *Apocalyptic Literature*, 164-65.


1 Enoch 60:10 stands out for it provides a parallel to Ezekiel’s and Daniel’s use of "son of man" as a means of address: "And he said to me, 'Son of man, you here wish to know what is secret." 37 One finds in 1 Enoch 37-71 the same literary feature that one finds in the HB with respect to the generic son of man/sons of men phrases referring to humans and the descriptive comparisons referring to heavenly beings.

ii. 4 Ezra

4 Ezra is a composite Jewish-Christian work. Chapters 3-14 contain the original Jewish work. Chapters 1-2 and 15-16 are later Christian additions. Chapters 3-14 contain seven visions: (1) 3.1-5.20; (2) 5.21-6.34; (3) 6.35-9.25; (4) 9.26-10.59; (5) 11.1-12.51; (6) 13.1-58; (7) 14.1-48. 38 Most scholars date 4 Ezra ca. 100 CE. 4 Ezra 3.1 laments the destruction of the city by the Babylonians 30 years earlier (cf. Ezek 1.1). However, this probably a symbolic reference to the Romans’ destruction of Jerusalem in 70 CE. In 4 Ezra 11-12, the eagle-vision presents an eagle with 12 wings and three heads. The 12 wings probably symbolize the 12 Roman emperors, from Caesar to Domitian; the three heads, the Flavians Vespasian, Titus and Domitian. Indeed, the symbol of the Roman Empire was the eagle, the very symbol used for the oppressor in chaps. 11-12. Thus, NT scholars generally agree that 4 Ezra 3.1 refers to the siege of Jerusalem in 70 CE by Vespasian and Titus. 39

4 Ezra 13 interprets Dan 7.13 in a manner similar to 1 Enoch 46 by employing a descriptive comparison to present a heavenly being: "And I looked, and behold, this wind made something like the figure of a man come up out of the heart of the sea. And I looked, and behold, that man flew with the clouds of heaven; . . . (4 Ezra 13.3)." As with Ezekiel, Daniel and 1 Enoch, a heavenly being is described in human-likeness by means of a comparison. 40 With regard to qualities and/or functions, there are strong parallels with 1 Enoch 37-71, suggesting a common tradition of interpretation in first century CE Judaism. In 4 Ezra 13, this human-like figure is unknown (v 52; cf. 7.28; 12.31-39; 1 Enoch 48.3; 62.7); pronounces judgment (vv 37-38; cf. 12.32-33; 1 Enoch 46.4-6; 62.3-16; 69.27-29) and gathers an elect community (vv 12-13, 39-50; 1 Enoch 48.4 and 62.12-13) and is the messiah (4 Ezra 12-13 and 1 Enoch 52-53). Finally, as with Dan 7.13, the human-like figure of 4 Ezra 13 rides upon the clouds.

37 Collins agrees and argues that 1 Enoch 71.14 may also be a form of direct address (NTS, 456). I am open to that possibility.
38 Seven is a holy number in both Revelation and 4 Ezra (see Bauckham, Theology, 16-17, 26-27, 40-42, 79-83, 109-19; Collins, Apocalyptic Imagination, 49-52).
39 Cf. Collins, Apocalyptic Imagination, 156; Reddish, Apocalyptic Literature, 58.
Two other traditions also deserve attention, the *Apocalypse of Abraham* and the *Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah*. These two works do not employ descriptive comparisons to present messianic figures, but they do use them to describe the appearance of heavenly beings.

Most scholars date the *Apocalypse of Abraham* around 100 CE on the grounds that, like 4 Ezra and 2 Baruch, it attempts to understand the meaning behind the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 CE. I am persuaded that this argument.

*ApAb* 10.1-4 describes how God sent an angel to Abraham to restore his strength. In chap. 9, God has given Abraham a vision. Abraham becomes faint in 10.1-2 (cf. Rev 1.17a). God sends an angel to strengthen him (v. 3). The seer describes the angel in this manner (v. 4): "The angel he sent to me in the likeness of a man came, and he took me by my right hand and stood me on my feet." Here we have a clear example of a heavenly being described in human-likeness. Although this being is not the messiah, this tradition agrees with examples presented in Ezekiel, Daniel, 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra which describe God, the messiah and angels in this same manner. This verse, without Christian influence and employing a descriptive comparison to describe an angel instead of the messiah, in contrast to the Similitudes of Enoch and 4 Ezra, still shares with them the use of comparisons to describe heavenly beings. Rowland argues convincingly that *ApAb* 10.4 based its description of the angel upon Ezekiel and Daniel.

The *Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah* is a composite work whose various parts need not detain us. We shall focus upon *Mart. Isa.* 3.13-4.22, also known as the *Testament of Hezekiah*, a Christian work. Knibb, correctly in my opinion, dates it between 68-100 CE. *Mart. Isa.* 4:2 describes Beliar/Satan: "And after it has been brought to completion, Beliar will descend, the great angel, the king of this world, which he has ruled ever since it existed. He will descend from his firmament in the form of a man, a king of iniquity, a murderer of his mother --- this is the king of this world." Originally, the tradition probably only recounted Satan’s fall from heaven in human-likeness (cf. Luke 10.18; Rev 12.7-9). However, after Nero’s persecution of Christians, *Mart. Isa.* 4.2 identified Satan with a specific human being. What is of importance for our study is the use of the descriptive comparison, “in the form of a man,” to present a heavenly being (cf. *Mart. Isa.* 9.12-13).
C. Summation

Several elements stand out from this survey. First and foremost, we have discovered the consistent use of descriptive comparisons to designate heavenly beings in Ezekiel, Daniel, 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra, the Apocalypse of Abraham and the Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah. Secondly, Ezekiel, Daniel and 1 Enoch use "son of man" as an address to a human being. Thirdly, both 1 Enoch 37-71 and 4 Ezra 13, along with employing descriptive comparisons, understand those comparisons to refer to the messiah in Dan 7.13. In these two books, the messiah has four common functions: (1) he acts as an eschatological judge; (2) he gathers to himself an elect community; (3) he makes war against the enemies of God and (4) he possesses an element of mystery. These common messianic expectations suggest a common tradition in first century CE Judaism from which both writings draw in regard to the exegeses of Dan 7.13. This similarity is all the more striking since there is no evidence of any literary relationship between 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra. Finally, the Apocalypse of Abraham and the Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah show no relationship to 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra or to each other, but they also use descriptive comparisons to describe heavenly beings, a technique probably based upon the use of descriptive comparisons in Ezekiel and Daniel. This final point proves that these late first/early second century Jewish and Christian apocalypticists consciously and consistently employed descriptive comparisons in a similar way, i.e., they exhibit a traditional means of describing heavenly beings.

Revelation belongs to this tradition and we must now consider whether there is a similar usage of descriptive comparisons in the book of Revelation. In chapters 3 and 4 of this study, we shall discuss the pertinent passages in Revelation and demonstrate the similarities between Revelation and 1 Enoch 37-71, 4 Ezra 13, the ApAb 10 and the Mart. Isa. 4 as well as the distinctively Christian aspects of John's use of descriptive comparisons.

---

45 Kraeling notes the use of comparisons in Daniel, 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra but not in Ezekiel, the Apocalypse of Abraham or the Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah (142-44).
47 Cf. F. M. Wilson, 49-50; J. M. Myers, I and II Esdras (AB 42; Garden City, NY: Doubleday, 1974) 302-16; Collins, NTS, 464-466, who states that 4 Ezra 13 is reminiscent of traditional theophanies of the divine warrior. If Collins is correct, there may have been in second temple Judaism a tradition which joined the concept of heavenly saviors in human-likeness and divine warriors. Chapters 4 and 6 of the present study shall argue that John understands the two images to both refer to the messiah.
Chapter 3:
The Presentation of the Messiah in Revelation 1

The preceding chapter argued that Ezekiel, Daniel, *I Enoch* 37-71, the *Apocalypse of Abraham*, *4 Ezra* and the *Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah* all employed descriptive comparisons to denote heavenly beings in human-likeness. This chapter will discuss the role and function of descriptive comparisons in Revelation and show that there is a marked similarity with *I Enoch* 37-71 and *4 Ezra* 13. It also will demonstrate the centrality of the "one like a son of man" christology to the life of the Christian community in Asia.

Revelation employs descriptive comparisons in 1.13 and 14.14 (διόμων ὦν ἄνθρωπον) in order to describe the messiah. Rev 1.13 functions as a superscription for the remainder of Rev 1 and the letters in Rev 2-3. That is to say, the "one like a son of man" in 1.13 becomes the authority figure for the Asian Christians who reveals to them what they must do in order to enter the New Jerusalem (Rev 2-3). Rev 2-3, in turn, provides the necessary instructions which will enable the churches in Asia to withstand the apocalyptic trials presented in Rev 6.1-19.10. Thus, in this way, Rev 1.13 functions as a key passage in the overall organization of the book of Revelation.

Lietzmann first noted the similarity of expression in Dan 7.13 and Rev 1.13 and 14.14, on the one hand, and their dissimilarity with the synoptic gospels, on the other. While Daniel and Revelation employ comparisons, the synoptics do not (ὁ υἱός τοῦ άνθρώπου). He also noted that while the Synoptics have the definite article neither Daniel nor Revelation has it. Lietzmann concluded that son of man was not a title in Daniel and Revelation and that John the apocalypticist depends totally upon Dan 7.13. We turn now to a discussion of the one in human-likeness in Rev 1.1-20 and 14.14-16.

---


2Some exegetes argue that the Son of Man title must have been known to John (e.g., Schlüssler Fiorenza, *The Book of Revelation: Justice and Judgment* [Philadelphia: Fortress, 1985] 148; cf. W. Bousset, *Die Offenbarung Johannis* [Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1906] 194). However, for the reasons already stated, I doubt that such a position is tenable.
A. Rev 1.1-8: The Introduction of the Author

Although our primary concern is with the “one like a son of man” in Rev 1.13, one cannot fully appreciate vv. 9-20 without first examining vv. 1-8. Within these verses, one finds key themes which recur throughout Revelation: God shares divine honors with Christ by sharing authorship of the apocalypse (vv. 1-2; cf. 5.13; 7.10; 12.10; 14.4; 20.6; 22.1); the soteriological centrality of the death of Christ (vv. 5-6; see, eg., 1.18; 2.8; 5.6, 9-10; 13.8; cf. 7.13-14 and 22.14); and Christ’s expected imminent return (v. 7; cf. 1.3; 3.11; 14.6; 22.12). Rev 1.1-8 may be divided into two distinct parts: a superscription in vv. 1-3 and an epistolary greeting in vv. 4-8.

Revelation begins by asserting the origins and authorship of the vision: “An apocalypse of Jesus Christ which God gave to him (v. 1).” This apocalypse must be shown to his (God’s or Christ’s) servants so that they might be prepared for the events coming soon. The usual means of transmitting visions has been supplemented in v. 1. Normally in visions and apocalypses in the Jewish tradition, God gives the vision to an interpreting angel who then mediates it directly to a human seer (e.g., Dan 8.15-26), such as Enoch, Daniel or Abraham. In Revelation, God gives it to Jesus Christ, who gives it to an angel, who gives it to John. For John, however, God Almighty has entrusted the vision to Christ. Christ, not God Almighty, becomes the authoritative, authenticating figure behind the apocalypse, a pronounced Christian development in the history of Jewish apocalypses. This development enables Christ to participate in divine honors with God Almighty. Furthermore, the revelation of the risen, heavenly Jesus also verifies the witness of the pre-Easter, earthly Jesus, an important fact for Revelation expressed through “confirmation statements.”

Christ's participation in divine honors as God Almighty's agent occurs in several ways in Revelation. One is by the use of confirmation statements which convey to the reader that God will faithfully execute his divine plan, that Christ has accurately and thoroughly presented the contents of that plan to humankind and that they who live in accord with Christ's witness to God are the victors/conquerors who shall inhabit the New Jerusalem. These confirmation statements are therapeutic maintenance strategies employed to retain persons within Revelation's symbolic universe. One such confirmation statement

---


4Cf. Bauckham, Theology, 26, 54-65.

5Cf. Thompson's "confirmatory statements" (40; see also 178).

6On the use of maintenance strategies to support a symbolic universe, see Berger and Luckmann, pp. 128-34.
is found in the superscription: “the word of God and the testimony (or witness) of Jesus Christ” (τὸν λόγον τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ τὴν μαρτυρίαν Ἰησοῦν Χριστόν[v. 2]).

The expression the "testimony of Jesus (Christ)" has generated a considerable amount of secondary literature, but little attention has been given to the phrase “the word of God.” In Revelation, “the word of God” and “the testimony of Jesus (Christ)” are parallel statements. These statements convey to the reader that they who are faithful to God’s word and Jesus' witness, even unto death, are special. Those special people include John (1.9) and the martyrs, or saints (20.4; cf. 6.9), and find fulfilment in Christ himself (19.13). Similar confirmation statements, key technical terms in Revelation, are found in 6.9 (διὰ τὸν λόγον τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ διὰ τὴν μαρτυρίαν ᾧ ἐξου; 12.17 (τῶν προφητῶν τὰς ἐντολὰς τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ ἔχοντων τὴν μαρτυρίαν Ἰησοῦν), and 14.12 (οἱ προφητείς τὰς ἐντολὰς τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ τὴν πίστιν Ἰησοῦν). Set within the superscription of the document, Jesus's role as the heavenly authority behind Revelation, coupled with a reference to his earthly role as faithful witness to God, assures the reader that faithfulness to Jesus ensures a heavenly reward. It also establishes Jesus's role as the "trustworthy and true" (see 3.14 and 19.11) witness. The text expects the readers to respond with a renewed faith and religious vigor (see 17.14 and 19.10).

Verse 3 should then be seen as more than a beatitude. It contains parallel expressions (οἱ ἀκούσαντες τοῦς λόγους τῆς προφητείας καὶ προσόντες τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ γεγραμμένα) and serves as a powerful exhortation to the reader to adhere completely to the dictates of the vision, “for the time is near.” Thus ends the superscription.

In the next section, vv. 4-8, we have a second example of John presenting Jesus Christ as God Almighty's agent and representative. John moves from a purely apocalyptic format to a more epistolary one. First, in v. 4 he identifies himself and follows with a distinctly Christian greeting made popular by Paul (e.g., Rom 1.7; 1 Cor 1.3; cf. 1 Pet 1.2

---


9 Cf. Rev 19.10 and 19.13. Dehandschutter (see n. 51) has a similar argument but only concerns himself with μαρτυρεῖν and its cognates. For contrasting positions, see Satake, 97-99; T. Zahn, Die Offenbarung des Johannes (2 vols.; Leipzig: Deichert, 1924-26) 185-87; H. Kraft, Die Offenbarung des Johannes (HINT 16a; Tübingen: J. C. Mohr, 1974) 26-27.


11 Note the other six beatitudes in 14.13; 16.15; 19.9; 20.6; 22.7, 14.
and Jude 2). He then refers to God in a manner which demonstrates that for John the figures of God Almighty and Christ are closely related. The apocalypse is from the God "who is and who was and who is coming," a present-past-future continuum.

This is not a normal temporal sequence or mode of expression from one point in time to a future point. The more normal mode of expression is found in Isa 44.6: "I am the first and I am the last, And there is no God besides Me" (see also Isa 41.4; 43.10 and 48.12). Similar temporal expressions abound in Graeco-Roman literature. For example, Pausanias 10.12 reads, "Zeus who was, Zeus who is, and Zeus who will be." Similarly, Plutarch quotes Isis as saying, "I am all that has been and is and shall be" (On Isis and Osiris 9). Both Graeco-Roman statements have a past-present-future sequence which is more to be expected over against the present-past-future one in Rev 1.4 and 1.8.13

John has reversed the first two temporal dimensions of the past-present-future continuum to make it consistent with the life, death and life again of Jesus. Rev 11.7 is similar: "We thank you, Lord God Almighty, who is and who was, for you took your great power and ruled." This verse refers to God, not Christ, clearly indicated by the term παντοκράτωρ which only refers to God in Revelation (see 4.8, 11.17, 15.3, 16.7 and 19.6). Just as Christ has become the guarantor of the apocalypse and not God, just as "word of God" and "testimony of Jesus" are synonymously parallel confirmation statements, so too Christ functions in God Almighty's stead as God's agent in the world.14

After mentioning the seven spirits (v. 4) before the throne of God,15 John moves to Christ Jesus, "the faithful witness, the first-born of the dead and the ruler of the kings of the earth" (v. 5; cf. Ps 89.27). Antipas, the martyr (2.13), is also referred to as a "faithful witness." It refers to those who were faithful regardless of the circumstances. It conveys to the reader that just as Jesus was exalted, so too will others, like Antipas, who are faithful. Charles argues that "first-born of the dead" has messianic implications.16 If nothing else, it connotes the preeminence of Christ among the children of God. It clearly refers to the resurrection.17 "Ruler of the kings of the earth" must be defined more fully later for the readers/hearers (17.14 and 19.11-21), but already they can perceive that

---

12On this topic, see the interesting discussion in Corsini (73-79).
13Charles (Rev 1:20) and Beasley-Murray (59-63) have identified similar statements in non-biblical Jewish writers of this same period.
14For a contrasting view, see Bauckham, Theology, 27-30.
15Charles believes the reference to the seven spirits before God is an interpolation (Rev 1:9). One must ask who would make such an addition and why. This image goes back to Isa 11.2 LXX. For more balance discussions, see Beasley-Murray, 54-56; Krodel, 83; R. H. Mounce, The Book of Revelation (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1977) 69-70; P. E. Hughes, The Book of Revelation (Leicester/Grand Rapids: Inter-Varsity/Eerdmans, 1990) 18.
16Charles, Rev 1:15.
Christ, the crucified one, has become the Lord of the cosmos. John's references to Christ do not stop here. Christ's love has freed us from sin through Christ's blood, another reference to the crucifixion (v. 5). John views the crucifixion as a sacrificial act by Christ on behalf of humankind. This point is continued in the next verse where the kingdom is composed entirely of priests to his (Christ's) God and Father (cf. Exod 19.6), followed by a doxology (1.5b-6; cf. 5.10). "The allusion to Israel's deliverance in the exodus is...obvious.... Blood is the symbol of life. Freedom from sin and guilt means to be rightly related to God and enfolded by the love of Christ (realized eschatology!)."

Although it does not contain any of the three christological images under examination in this study, Rev 1.6 is a christological statement on the work of Christ creating priest-kings, which this thesis argues constitutes a link between Christ and community in Revelation. The image of priest-kings in a passage without reference to "one like a son of man," the Lamb or the Divine Warrior illustrates the consistency of Revelation's christology and indicates the appropriateness of the method and argument of the present study. What, then, is the source of the priest-kings imagery?

Exod 19.6 is the source of this imagery: "but you (i.e., Israel) will be for me a kingdom of priests and a holy nation" (NIV). Whereas the elect community is composed of priests in Exod 19.6, Revelation states that the elect community will be composed of priest-kings who reign with God and Christ in the new age (1.6; 5.10; 20.4-6). 1 Peter addresses Christians in the same general region of the Roman Empire and uses quite similar language: "But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for God's own possession" (2.9). Both passages incorporate an exodus typology in order to create fictive Christian families. Both relate to persons who have suffered for their religious convictions under the hands of local residents adhering to Graeco-Roman religious traditions (see discussions of the social setting in Chapter 1 of this study). By referring to the new age, Revelation's exodus motif takes on eschatological dimensions as well.

Sweet notes that there is exodus imagery throughout Revelation, with frequent allusions to Isa 40-66 which heralds the new exodus from Babylon. He argues that

---

19See also Hughes, 19-20; L. Morris, The Book of Revelation (Tyndale NTC; Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1987) 49-50.
20Krodel, 85.
21I am indebted to Prof. H. W. Attridge for pointing out to me the significance of Revelation's employment of exodus typology (Revelation seminar lectures, SMU, Dallas, TX, summer 1978; see also Bauckham, Theology, 70-72).
Christians rule over earthly kings in Christ's stead; their priestly office represents God to the world and also offers the world's worship to God. This priesthood belongs to the entire Christian community.\textsuperscript{22} I agree. The purpose of this priest-king imagery is to convey to the readers that God Almighty will initiate a new exodus, a new saving event for a new people Israel.\textsuperscript{23} The leader and role model of this new community is Christ (e.g., 17.14), i.e., the priest-king imagery is a primary example of the relationship between Christ and community in Revelation. Indeed, it is as priestly lord of the community to whom they must remain faithful and loyal that Christ addresses the seven churches in Asia, a point which I demonstrate in my exegesis of Rev 1.13-20 later in this study.

Verse 7 continues the sacrificial theme. First, borrowing an element from Dan 7.13, Christ will be seen by all coming upon clouds. Traveling upon clouds denoted that one's origins are from the heavenly realm (e.g., Exod 13.21; 16.10; Num 11.25; Ps 104.3; Isa 19.1; cf. Matt 17.5 and Acts 1.9). Thus, Christ, who was crucified, will return to earth as God's regent and the event which should have been his humiliation has become his exaltation and the means of redemption for all humanity. This scene is one of many reversals of expectation throughout Revelation. The greeting ends in v. 8 with God stating his eternal sovereignty over creation, which we discussed above.

Verses 4-8 contain more than a greeting. The cosmology in these verses has presented Christ as a participant in divine honors with God.\textsuperscript{24} Christ takes a place of preeminence as God's first-born and ruler of the earth. Christ has faithfully \textit{re-presented} the word of God to humanity and now \textit{represents} that very word of God in his person (cf. Rev 19.13). He also has faithfully discharged his responsibility even to the point of giving his own life and has been elevated by God to the position of Sovereign Lord of the universe. Christians may feel safe, for their lord and master rules the universe. Eventually, Christ's sovereignty will be acknowledged by all humanity (v. 7). Thus, these verses also convey to the reader the certainty of God's eternal blessings to his "faithful witnesses." This verse is a mythological maintenance strategy which establishes a concrete connection between Christ and community.\textsuperscript{25}

Christ Jesus provides the model for Christian behavior: just as Christ suffered, they will suffer; just as he remained faithful, they must remain faithful; just as God rewarded him, God will reward them. God Almighty will demonstrate this in public for all persons to see (v. 7). Verse 7 would carry added meaning for Christians who might have suffered public ridicule and repression for their religious beliefs before Roman officials. These

\textsuperscript{22}Sweet, 60-68.
\textsuperscript{23}Cf. Bauckham, \textit{Theology}, 70-72.
\textsuperscript{24}See preceding discussion of v. 4; cf. Thompson, 64-66.
\textsuperscript{25}On the social function of myth, see Berger and Luckmann (128-34); Tillich, 41-54; Livingston, \textit{Anatomy of the Sacred}, 86-96; Cunningham, Kelsay, \textit{et. al.}, \textit{The Sacred Quest}, 78-90.
verses attempt to elicit a faithful response on the part of its reader/listeners, a response consistent with "the word of God and the testimony of Jesus."

B. Rev 1.9-20: The Call and Commission of John

Rev 1.9-20 records the calling and commissioning of John. Verses 9-11 describe the call itself; 12-20, the commissioning. Verse 12 is an interlocking, transitional statement. An interlock is a literary device which overlaps and connects one series of images, events, teachings or visions to another series.26

Verses 12-20 can be divided further into two parts: (1) the vision of the "one like a son of man" and its effect upon John (12-17a) and (2) the response, commission and explanation given to John by Christ (17b-20). These symbols attempt to establish Jesus' authority to write to the churches and to expect their compliance. As we shall see, these symbols also function as mythological maintenance strategies and indicate to the reader a link between Christ and community.

Verses 9-12

In v. 9, John identifies himself by name. To the best of our knowledge, Revelation is the only Jewish or Christian apocalypse from this period which is not pseudonymous. Apocalypticists wrote under pseudonyms in order to give the document more credence.27 John probably was known personally to these congregations. It also means that John himself believed that ancient worthies such as Daniel, Isaiah, Enoch and Ezekiel had indeed written prophetic books; John works on the assumption that at least some of the recipients of his own book of prophecy had that same belief. John moves quickly in an attempt to authenticate his vision. He writes that faithfulness requires steadfastness in the midst of tribulation in order to enter the kingdom. John's faithfulness to "the word of God and the testimony of Jesus" has caused his exile to Patmos.28 This confirmation statement

26Cf. Yarbro Collins, The Combat Myth in the Book of Revelation (HDR 9; Missoula, MT: Scholars Press, 1976) 16-29 [hereafter, Combat]. This term is Yarbro Collins' adaptation of Allo's loi de l'emboîtement. Yarbro Collins uses the term more narrowly than does Allo (see n. 64). See also Thompson, 37-52; Bauckham, Climax, 2-22.


28Many scholars appeal erroneously to Pliny's Natural History 4.12.23 and/or 4.69, Tacitus's Annals 3.68, 4.30, 15.71 and/or Juvenal's Satire 1.73, 6.563-64 and 10.170 as proof that Patmos served as a Roman place of exile. While Pliny merely describes Patmos, Tacitus and Juvenal confirm that exile to islands occurred in imperial Rome, Tacitus and Juvenal naming some places of exile; however, none of the writers identifies Patmos as a place of exile. This does not mean that Patmos was not a place of exile for Roman offenders, for our data concerning that era is far from complete. It only means that the above references do not identify Patmos as such a place and should not be used for that specific purpose.
communicates to the reader that John has consistently held fast to his Christian beliefs even through tribulation and that John's witness is trustworthy.

Verse 10 states that John received the revelation "on the Lord's Day." Whether the reader should understand "the Lord's Day" to refer to a specific day of the week (e.g., Sunday or Friday) or a specific religious holiday (e.g., Easter) is not important for our purposes. The reception of this vision on the Lord's Day should further confirm to the reader both its heavenly origins and its faithful reception and transmission by John and attempt to bring about an appropriate response of compliance with its demands. Next John hears a loud voice, like a trumpet, instructing him (v. 11) to write what he sees in a book and to send it to seven churches in Asia (Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia and Laodicea). This command will be repeated in v. 19. When John turns, he sees seven golden lampstands and "one like a son of man" (vv. 12-13). Verse 12 is a typical reversal of expectation common to Revelation where the vision prepares the hearer/reader for one thing but provides another instead. In v. 12 one expects to see a voice but sees seven lampstands instead. Similarly, in Rev 5.5, for example, one expects to see a lion (cf. 4 Ezra 11) and sees instead a lamb. These reversals function in two ways. First, their very unexpectedness tends to grab one's attention. Secondly, they serve as transitions to more important matters. In Rev 1.12, as in 5.5, the more important matter is the introduction of the messiah (cf. the reversal in 1.7).

Verses 13-20
First of all, the "one like a son of man" stands among the seven golden lampstands introduced in v. 12 and explained in v. 20. These lampstands represent the seven churches to whom Christ has instructed John to write (vv. 9-11 [and 19]). This vision in vv. 13-20 is related directly to what precedes it and what follows it. This point deserves closer attention. Rev 1.7 employs an element of Dan 7.13 omitted by 1.13; 1.4, 8 are recapitulated in 1.18. Rev 1.1 identifies the one who sent the letters and his identity is confirmed in 1.8, 13, 17-20 as Jesus the Christ. In this manner, John has created numerous interlocks which hold Rev 1-3 together as one distinct unit of the book. The purpose of these interlocks is to ensure that the readers/hearers of Revelation understand that the apocalypse comes from Christ and not John. Thus, the Christ presented in 1.1-8 is identical to the "one like a son of man" in vv. 13-20 instructing John to write the seven letters which comprise Rev 2-3.

---

29Cf. J. H. Charlesworth, "The Jewish Roots of Christology: The Discovery of the Hypostatic Voice," *SJT* 39 (1986) 19-41, who argues that vv. 10-12 may represent a movement toward hypostasis. However, Rev 4.1 makes it clear that the voice in vv. 10-12 is either an angel's or Christ's.

30Similarly, Rev 1.9 reiterates 1.2; 1.11, 1.4-5a; 1.12, 1.6. Other interlocks can be found in the opening lines of six of the seven letters in chaps. 2-3.
Farrer noted that the golden lampstands of Rev 1.12-13 come from Zech 4.1-2 (see also Exod 25.31-40). The lampstands represent the seven-branched candelabrum of the Jewish sanctuary. For Judaism, Zech 4 was a prophetic vision. "The seven lamps of Zechariah stand for the temple worship..." In Revelation, John sees the lampstands in the heavenly temple with Jesus functioning as high priest. Moreover, Christ standing in the midst of the lampstands symbolized Christ's involvement and concern for the seven churches which the lampstands represent, symbolizing the bond between Christ and community.

Next in 1.13 comes the descriptive comparison, "one like a son of man," the one to whom God Almighty has given the apocalypse (1.1), the faithful witness who frees humankind from sin by means of his blood (1.5), who thereby bestowed upon humankind simultaneously royal and priestly statuses, a maintenance strategy to keep secure the bond between Christ and community (1.6), and comes with clouds as a triumphant, heavenly being for all to see (1.7). Thomas writes, "The comparison (i.e., "one like a son of man") sets forth essentially the human appearance, and thus the humanity of the one who John saw." He further states that the messianic title "son of man" is not used here, but it doubtless refers to the same messianic figure found in Rev 19.11-16. Similarly, Seiss writes that this passage focuses on Christ's humanity, "for it is in his human nature that his redemptive work is conducted and his victories achieved." According to him, the term "like" connotes "something higher than humanity,..." This human-likeness "presupposes some modification of what properly is not human." Thomas and Seiss do not recognize how these distinctive descriptive comparisons function in apocalyptic literature, thus giving the term a soteriological function that the original writers did not give it. Descriptive comparisons were merely traditional means of describing heavenly beings.

The second half of v. 13 describes the attire of the one in human-likeness in a fashion strongly suggesting a priestly role. Thomas notes that in the LXX ποιηματικής is found in passages dealing with the high priest (e.g., Exod 28.4; Ezek 9.2; Zech 3.4).

32 Cf. Walvoord, Revelation, 44, 49; W. J. Harrington, The Apocalypse of St. John (London: Geoffrey Chapman, 1969) 79; Seiss, 75-77; Corsini, 94-95; Beasley-Murray, 70.
33 Harrington (79), Charles (Rev 1:27) and Hughes (25-26) argue that "one like a son of man" echoes the synoptic tradition. I believe it only echoes the eschatological synoptic son of man statements, a figure which probably goes back to Dan 7.13. T. F. Glasson argues that the comparison in Rev 1.13 "simply means man, here and in Dan. 7" (The Revelation to John [CBCNEB; London: CUP, 1965]) 21; cf. Lohse, "Menschensohn." See my opposing argumentation above on this position. On the different types of synoptic son of man statements, see R. Rhees, "A Striking Monotomy in the Synoptic Gospels," JBL 17 (1898) 87-102; G. N. Stanton, The Gospels and Jesus (Oxford: Oxford U. Press, 1989) 230-35.
36 Seiss, 73; also Ladd, 32.
He also notes that ἐνδεδυμένον ποδήρη, which is found in Rev 1.13, also occurs in Ezek 9.2 LXX. A similar phrase is found in Dan 10.5 LXX. He concludes, however, that this verse focuses upon Jesus' "activity in extending mercy" rather than "a priestly capacity."38

Thomas strongly denies that there is any attribution of a priestly role to the messiah based upon this verse and wants "to limit the significance of the symbol to the aspect dealing with judgment."39 His conclusion does not have sufficient argumentation. How does Rev 1.13 relate to 1.5, 5.10 and 20.6? If Christ enables one to become a priest in the heavenly temple, cannot Christ himself be the high priest? If not, why not? Thomas is silent on this aspect of the passage. Others are less reserved. Ladd and Hughes merely state that the robe and girdle denote Christ as one with an exalted status. Krodel states that the attire probably symbolize his high-priestly dignity (cf. Exod. 28:4; Dan. 10:5).40 Corsini goes further. He states that v. 13 describes Christ as both king and priest (citing Exod 28.4; 29.5 and Lev 8.7). Angels functioned as priests, prior to Christ. Christ perfects that task. Christ belongs to a higher order than the angels. "He is 'clothed with a long robe,' a technical term referring to the priestly garment."41 Christ is the heavenly high priest-king whose life and ministry are paradigmatic for the Asian Christians, an image discussed earlier in comments on 1.6.

Indeed, Thomas' own comments on the position of the golden girdle, placed in a footnote, and Rev 15 argue against him. He writes in a footnote, "Josephus gives information that the high priest wore the high girdle and that it was not adaptable to laborious servce (sic) (Antiquities, Book III, Chap. VII, Paragraph 2). Thus to be girded about the breast was a mark of dignity while girding about the loins signified service or activity."42 Along with the quotation from Josephus and the points made by Corsini, I would argue that the placement of the golden girdle around the chest and the use of the phrase ἐνδεδυμένον ποδήρη depicts the one in human-likeness as a priestly messiah. What would be the point of presenting the messiah in a manner equal to any dignified person in the midst of a temple context? Moreover, Rev. 15.6 has angels who exit the temple "dressed (ἐνδεδυμένοι) in pure bright linen... dressed... around the chest with a golden girdle." Jesus' sacrifice led to the salvation of the faithful, but the work of these angels leads to the plagues upon those who persecuted the faithful. Both Jesus and the

---

37Thomas, 242-43, esp. nn. 4 and 5.
40Ladd, 32-33; Hughes, 26; Krodel, 95; cf. 96.
41Corsini, 91-93; quote 92. See also Mounce, 77-79; Rissi, Time and History, 56-57.
42Thomas, 243, n. 7; cf. Farrer, Revelation, 66.
angels function as priests in their respective contexts but the result differs. Finally, second temple Judaism and early Christianity have many examples of a priestly messiah (e.g., CD 12.23-13.1; 14.19; T.Dan 5.10; T.Naph 8.2; T.Gad 8.1; Heb 4.14-5.10; 8.1-13).

Verses 14 and 15 can be discussed together in that they describe further the appearance of the one in human-likeness. They also draw upon different passages in Daniel in order to do so. First, v. 14 draws upon Dan 7.9 which describes the Ancient of Days, God Almighty. In the Danielic passage the Ancient of Days has clothing white as snow and hair like pure wool and a throne like fiery flames. Rev 1.14 borrows elements from this description and gives them not to God Almighty but to the messiah. It also employs them differently. For example, in Revelation the human-like messiah's head and hair, not clothing and hair, are white and the eyes are like fiery flames (Dan 10.6; cf. 2 Enoch 1.5), not the throne as in Dan 7.9. Verse 15 does likewise. The descriptive elements in v. 15, the feet like polished brass refined in a furnace and a voice like the sound of many waters, come from Dan 10.6. The vision in Dan 10.6 describes an interpreting angel; in Revelation, the messiah. Furthermore, John does not utilize the descriptions of the angel's body, face and eyes because he has already described the messiah's eyes in v. 14 and now applies those elements which describe the angel's arms and legs in Daniel to the messiah's feet. The sound of the voice is not like the roar of a multitude, as in Daniel, but like many waters as in Ezek 43.2. Once again we have an example in Revelation of the Christ participating in divine honors.

The subtle differences between Daniel and Revelation provide useful information about how John's vision developed. First, the freedom with which he employed Scripture, re-applied it and gave it new meaning probably indicates someone rather well-versed in Jewish religious literature. Terms, phrases, images are literally at his command and he uses them at will. At the same time, his freedom with tradition does not degenerate into a self-centered license. The book of Revelation is not from John but Jesus (from John's point of view) (e.g., 1.4-5, 9-16; 2.1, 8, 12, 18; 3.1). However, John's command and use of these traditions do not consistently follow either the HB or the LXX. John does not simply repeat older traditions but employs them as media for his new prophetic message.

43 See, e.g., Lev 16.4; m.Yoma 3.6-7; Philo, The Life of Moses 2.17; Josephus, The Jewish War 5.230-37.
44 See also Ezek 1.7 and 8.2. Cf. Corsini, 88-91; Beasley-Murray, 67; Krodel, 95; Hughes, 27. Against Thomas (245), who argues that "the sound of many waters" is not at home in Revelation, it is also found in 14.2 and 19.6. All major extant textual witnesses contain it in all three verses.
In his use of Scripture John relies on his memory, for there are many more allusions to Scripture than quotations. It is not impossible that both the HB and the LXX traditions have influenced John's recollection and employment of Scripture. Nor is it impossible that John may rely upon two different versions of one book in the same language. For example, Qumran's Hebrew Jeremiah has a different wording at some points to convey the same message as in copies of Jeremiah in other textual traditions. Indeed, we often find church fathers quoting Scripture from two different text families. However, John relies upon his memory more than on any written tradition. For example, Rev 1.14-15 has strong parallels in Ezek 1 and 42 and Dan 7 and 10 without directly quoting either. Traditional materials serve as media for a new message. Such is the norm in Revelation. Moreover, the description of the messiah with elements from a description of an angel suggests that John does not have the literature before him but rather through memory draws from a tradition describing heavenly beings in glorious terms. Again, Dan 10.6 is the obvious source for Rev 1.15, but just as obviously the Danielic description has not been taken over in toto. For instance, John does not use Dan 10.6 and then provide a rationale for its re-interpretation, as if correcting Daniel in some way. John simply employs a resource to communicate the vision. For John, this vision of the messiah with white hair and fiery eyes connotes the ultimate purity and awesome powers of perception possessed by the messiah in order that he might judge human behavior.

Secondly, Jesus, the messiah in human-likeness, functions as God Almighty's eschatological agent. To some degree this point contradicts the preceding point on John's use of Dan 10.6. It may be argued that I apply a different criterion when relating Jesus to God Almighty than to angels. However, my means of arriving at this conclusion is not based upon v. 14 alone, but the many times throughout the book that envision the messiah as one who participates in divine honors with God Almighty (e.g., 4.11; 5.13; 7.10; 12.10; 21.22) and also the explicit association John himself makes between the two in vv. 14-15.

Verses 16-17a bring us to the seven stars and their meaning. The seven stars are the angelic patrons in heaven who protect the churches (cf. Dan 10.21). The image of the sharp, double-edged sword protruding from Christ's mouth relates to Christ's authority to judge the world (cf. 2.12, 16; 19.15). Isa 49.2 is probably John's source: "He made

---


my mouth like a sharp sword" (cf. Isa 11.4; 4 Ezra 13.4). The Lord's sword "never fails to cut. If it does not cut with the edge of salvation it cuts with the edge of condemnation; ...."47 The brightness of Christ's face is reminiscent of Judg 5.31 which celebrates an Israelite victory over Canaanite king Jabin (see also 2 Enoch 1.5 and 19.1). Farrer thinks the shining of Christ's face should be compared to the shining of the stars.48 Morris disagrees and insists the purpose is to terrify his foes.49 However, it probably merely refers to Christ's purity and fidelity (cf. Mark 9.2-3). At this point (v.17a), the seer falls to his feet overwhelmed with awe and emotionally drained by what he has seen. This is a typical response by a holy man to a vision (cf. Josh 5.14; Ezek 1.28; Dan 8.17-18; 10.8-10; ApAb 10.1-3).

Verses 17b-20 conclude this vision. The messiah re-assures John (cf. Dan 8.19) and then identifies himself in a mode reminiscent of God Almighty's self-identification in v. 8, substantiating my earlier point that Christ functions as God Almighty's divine agency figure, and continues by identifying himself with the historical Jesus of Nazareth who was born, died and raised to eternal life. In 1.17, 2.8 and 22.13, these words, "the first and the last," which refer to Christ, come from Isaiah where they refer to Yahweh (cf. Rev 1.8; 21.6).50 Again, we note that Christ participates in divine honors. Finally, the messiah has control over who might die and might descend into eternal punishment, i.e., he is the Lord of hades (v. 18). This last factor coheres with the messiah's stewardship of the book of life (see 13.8; 17.8).

Verses 17b-18 are loaded with every type of symbol and imagery. First, comfort comes to the seer's psyche when his strength wanes. There is no need to fear. The messiah is in control. Secondly, the authority of the speaker is transhistorical, spanning time (δ πρώτος καὶ δ ἐσχάτος) and therefore nothing within time escapes his purview. This expression is synonymous to the Alpha-Omega saying in v. 8, providing yet another example of the way Revelation tells the reader that Christ shares divine honors with God Almighty. This reference to Christ attempts to convince the reader to conform his/her life to the contents of the prophecy. It may be a mythological maintenance technique.51 Thirdly, the vision is not ahistorical, for it also relates to a specific person and a specific event within human history (καὶ ἐγενόμην νεκρὸς), the crucifixion of Jesus, yet confirms the overcoming of that historical event (ἴδοὺ ζῶν εἶμι εἰς τοὺς αἰῶνας τῶν

---

47 Hughes, 27; cf. Ladd, 33; Charles, Rev 1:30; Mounce, 79; Sweet, 72; Krodel, 95-96 and Corsini, 93.
48 Farrer, Revelation, 68.
49 Morris, 55; cf. Charles, Rev 1:30-31; Mounce, 78-80; Ladd, 33-34; Hughes, 27-28; Krodel, 96.
51 On maintenance strategies, see Berger and Luckmann, 128-34.
The purpose of this maintenance strategy is to convince the reader that she/he too can overcome history if she/he remains faithful to God (cf. Rev 2.7). In so doing, the echoes of 1.8 come through again very clearly (see also Rev 22.13). Finally, the cosmological dimensions state that the one in human-likeness judges who will die and suffer eternally in hades. Within these two short verses, John has identified the Jesus of history with the cosmic Christ who reigns over all temporal events in this world and the underworld. Does Christ's dominion extend upwards? Indeed it does!

Verses 19-20 confirm that Christ reigns in hades, on earth and in heaven as well. In v. 19 John is told to write all that he has seen, is seeing and will see (with the exception of 10.4; cf. Dan 8.26; 12.4, 9) and Christ explains the mystery of the seven stars and seven golden lampstands. The reference to "things you saw, see and which are about to occur after these things" conveys to the reader that the author of the vision, Christ, controls past, present and future events. Some scholars have claimed that these words revealed the overarching outline of the Book of Revelation. However, I think that one should expect an apocalypse supposedly from God to make such explicit claims. Verse 19 is not so much about the vision as about the one who sends it.

The seven stars are the angelic messengers who represent the churches in Asia and the lampstands represent the churches themselves. Many scholars have had difficulty understanding why John addresses the letters to the angels in heaven and not directly to the churches on earth. A representative selection of their explanations might prove helpful.

Sweet writes, "Angels are the spiritual counterparts of earthly realities; here (in Rev 1.19-20) they represent the churches seen as spiritual entities." Some argue that the angels are actually leading members of the earthly churches themselves and not heavenly beings at all. Others argue that the angels are heavenly counterparts of the earthly congregations who are spiritually in heaven but living physically on earth. This passage proclaims the sovereignty of Christ over creation. Finally, still others argue that the angels are actually bishops or pastors in the earthly congregations themselves and not heavenly beings.

---

53Note here John returns to a past-present-future temporal sequence, while in describing the attributes of God earlier (vv. 4, 8), he employed a present, past, future sequence. The latter form clearly relates only to God Almighty and Christ for John.
54So argue Charles, Rev 1:33 and Walvoord, Revelation, 48.
55Cf. Mounce, 81-82.
56Sweet, 73; see also Swete, 21-22; Morris, 56-57; Charles, Rev 1:34.
57E.g., Hughes, 30-31; Morris, 57.
58Beasley-Murray, 69-70; Mounce, 83.
59Morris, 57.
All the commentators attempt to address why these letters to earthly communities are sent to heavenly beings. Several questions arise. If the angels are spiritual counterparts of earthly realities, why are the letters addressed to them at all? How would they have been delivered? Furthermore, what proof is there in Revelation that these angels are human leaders, bishops, priests or otherwise? If they reside materially on earth, why write to them in heaven at all?

While all the commentators attempt to explain how the stars and angels are symbolic, none of them has any trouble accepting the lampstands as the seven churches. For example, Morris states that the lampstands are the actual, existing churches. "The churches are no more than lampstands. The light is Christ, and they are to show forth." No one has trouble accepting the lampstands at face value, but the stars-angels pose a different problem, for they receive the messages which Christ gives to John.

Schüssler Fiorenza and Enroth argue that the angels of the churches might be human prophets within the congregations. John might be their leader. The angel functions as a "visionary counterpart of the other prophets in the community, has the same function as the other Christian prophets: to make known the testimony of Jesus." This thesis represents the best argument thus far because it answers the question on John's prophetic terms. As we noted earlier, many NT commentators have argued for the prophetic character of Revelation (1.3; 22.18). We can now go a little further: these communities probably held prophets in high esteem and understood them to be messengers from heaven, i.e., angels.

In any event, the point of vv. 19-20 is that Christ has dominion over the celestial entities in the cosmos which parallel the earthly congregations. Christ is lord of heaven, earth and hades. As Farrer has noted, "In St. John's picture the single figure of Jesus, both priestly and royal, takes the centre; the churches burn as candles around him, but his own radiance is greater." I agree with Farrer. This priestly and royal Jesus would be a point of contact with the eschatological exodus motif in 1.5b-6 where the promise of being priest-kings is held out as a salvatory reward to the faithful.

What type of worldview does John present here? How does he hope this worldview will influence the Asian Christians to whom he writes? What is the relationship between Christ

---

60Morris, 57; cf. Krodel, 98 and Corsini, 94-95.
61Schüssler Fiorenza, Revelation, 145-46.
63Enroth, 604.
65Morton, 26.
66Farrer, Revelation, 66.
and community presented in these verses? Rev 1.13-20 presents the "one like a son of man" who is the heavenly high priest, the authoritative Lord of the seven churches in Asia who shares divine honors with God Almighty. Moreover, he is also Lord Supreme from the beginning of time, within time (as Jesus of Nazareth) and until the end of time. He is also Lord Supreme of the cosmos, including heaven, earth and hades. As John received the apocalypse from Christ and Christ received it from God Almighty, so too Christ received universal dominion from God Almighty over all creation eternally. Heavenly beings and human beings serve both God Almighty and Christ. This is the worldview created by this passage. This vision (vv. 9-20), with its accompanying worldview, is a myth, a maintenance strategy which expects increased religious fidelity and spiritual perseverance (1.9a). It assures the reader/hearer of Christ’s complete sovereignty. It expects the original audience to re-commit itself to its Christian beliefs and not waver, assured that its Lord governs the universe.

What type of reader does the material require and what do these verses tell us about the community for which this book was written? The reader understands second temple Jewish religiosity in general, and messianic expectations in particular, as well as early Christian proclamation. One familiar only with Judaism or only with Christianity would not be able to decipher all the allusions in the passage. For instance, those only familiar with the Jewish elements could not perceive the allusions to the historical Jesus of Nazareth as proclaimed in the early church. However, someone only familiar with the Christian traditions would not be able to recognize and appreciate the priestly traditions in the passage and could not appreciate the use of Danielic imagery, the double-edged sword to describe the Christ and the theophanic brilliance employed in describing the Christ. Additionally, the reader understands how apocalyptic literature functions in general. In discussing the seven letters, I will argue that John’s principal rivals, "Balaam," "Balak," the Nicolaitans and "Jezebels," might actually be rival prophetic groups. Such an atmosphere of competing prophetic-apocalyptic preaching movements would provide fertile ground for a biblically-based message and/or apocalyptic vision. Thus, I believe that the reader opens himself/herself to the possibility that God reveals hidden mysteries to holy persons (cf. 1.1-3, 20). Moreover, I suggest that heavenly angels have human counterparts in the churches who function as prophets. Paul's congregations in this same region had such persons (1 Cor 12-14 and 2 Cor 12). If not, an apocalypse has no power beyond any other literary form and may even be unintelligible, ultimately discarded by the community to

---

68 Cf. Bauckham, Climax, 83-91; Rowland, Open Heaven, 9-22.
which it was sent originally. The reader need not experience an apocalyptic vision herself/himself but only believe in them.

Furthermore, such a reader expects such a vision which would relate to the return of the Christian messiah in light of Jewish messianic expectations. Whether or not the reader expects a priestly or political messiah is not important since for Revelation Jesus fulfills both. This messianic expectation of both types in one person was also found at Qumran (e.g., CD 20.1). Finally, the reader accepts Jesus as the messiah, the Lord of life. The text provides assurances that Christ has the right to address matters in the Asian congregations because of his sacrificial death on their behalf. The expected responses would be belief that the vision truly comes from Christ and not John, trust in Christ as Lord of the church and the cosmos, obedience to his word through his prophet John and confidence in his power to rule the cosmos within and beyond time. These are the connections between Christ and community in Rev 1 and the means of persuasion employed by John. This is a Christian community with strong prophetic/apocalyptic traditions.

C. Summary and Conclusion

The presentation of the messiah in Rev 1 has parallels with the messianic figures in the Similitudes of Enoch and 4 Ezra. First of all, each employs a descriptive comparison (Rev 1.13). The description in each case interprets Dan 7.13. Secondly, in all three, the messiah judges the acts of humans (symbolized by the sword from his mouth in v. 16). Thirdly, he gathers the elect to himself (symbolized by his presence among the lampstands in vv. 13, 20). Fourthly, he makes war against the enemies of righteousness (vv. 7, 16b) and, fifthly, possesses an element of mystery which only he can reveal (vv. 13, 16, 20).

In addition to these features, the messiah of Rev 1 also has features in common with one of those books. As in 1 Enoch, the messiah is a revealer (Rev 1.19; cf. 1 Enoch 46.3) and rules the universe (Rev 1.13, 16a, 18, 20; cf. 1 Enoch 62.6-7). Both Revelation (v. 7) and 4 Ezra 13 (v. 3) depict the human-like messiah riding on clouds. The following features are unique to Rev 1: the messiah serves as a sacrifice for human sin (v. 5; cf. 1 John 2.2); functions as a high priest in heaven (v. 13; cf. Hebrews 7-8) and is God's agent (vv. 1, 4-6, 14-20; cf. John 14 and 20.28). The similarities among all three works and between Revelation and at least one of the other two indicates a common tradition. The traits peculiar to Revelation are ones which would be central to the proclamation of the early Christian community.

Let us turn now to discern the specific connections between Christ and community in the seven letters in Rev 2-3 and attempt to learn to what degree Revelation's messiah
functions in a fashion similar to the parallels in *1 Enoch* 37-71 and *4 Ezra* 13 deduced earlier.
Chapter 4: 
ONE LIKE A SON OF MAN IN REV 2-3 AND 14.14-16

A. The Nature and Purpose of the Letters

The "one like a son of man" functions primarily as the pastoral leader of the community who directs it from the present age into the next age. The "one like a son of man," the heavenly lord who commends, exhorts, threatens, encourages and redeems, sends the letters to tell each church what, if anything, it needs to do in order to spiritually strong. In this manner, each letter functions as an introduction to the entire book. However, one should not assume that the letters are merely prose versions of the apocalyptic visions. Rather, the letters address internal communal issues which must be corrected in order that the churches may withstand social pressures to conform their religious practices and also what they must do in order to be able to endure the coming apocalyptic trials.

The arrangement of the letters may be geographically significant. The seven cities form a circuit on a major Roman road of that time. One could travel from Ephesus north to Smyrna; farther north to Pergamum; southeast to Thyatira; farther south to Sardis; southeast to Philadelphia; farther southeast to Laodicea and almost due west back to Ephesus. This route might have been the one John took when visiting these churches and may explain the order of the letters in Rev 2-3. With the exception of the journey from Laodicea to Ephesus about 95 miles, the average distance between the other cities would be approximately 35 miles.1

In each letter, the reader/hearer can identify Christ as the sender of the letter. John merely serves as a secretary. This is accomplished usually by describing the sender in an introductory title in terms drawn from earlier portions of the book.

Letter 1: the introduction in 2.1 recalls 1.13;
Letter 2: the introduction in 2.8 recalls 1.17-18;
Letter 3: the introduction in 2.12 recalls 1.16;
Letter 4: the introduction in 2.18 recalls 1.14-15 (see also 19.12);
Letter 5: the introduction in 3.1 recalls 1.4, 16, 20; 2.1; see also 4.5; 5.6;
Letter 6: the introduction in 3.7 recalls 1.18;
Letter 7: introduction in 3.14, cf. 1.5; 2.13 and 19.11.

1Cf. Bauckham, Theology, 12-17.
Only the letter to the Philadelphians (3.7-13) does not adhere to this pattern strictly. These introductions, in general, interlock chap. 1 with chaps. 2-3. However, some also point back to an earlier letter and forward to other sections (3.1, cf. 2.1; 4.5 and 5.6; 2.18, cf. 19.12; 3.14, cf. 19.11), attesting to the unity of the book as a whole. In each letter, Christ comments with authority upon the quality of Christian behavior in each community (2.2-4, 6, 9, 13-15, 19-20; 3.1b, 4, 8, 10, 15, 17), i.e., the purpose of the letters individually and collectively is the internal improvement of the Christian community in order that the bond between Christ and community might be maintained. Rev 1.13 is the superscription not only for the remainder of Rev 1 but also for Rev 2-3 and it establishes Christ as the Lord of the community who expects absolute and complete adherence to his word. Therefore, it is necessary to study these seven messages to ascertain the manner and extent of Christ's lordship over these congregations. These letters constitute a mythological maintenance strategy aimed at substantiating Christ's authority.

Each letter also contains an exhortation to hear near its end (2.7, 11, 17, 29; 3.6, 13, 22). First, since these exhortations are always in the imperative mood, "Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches," it places the burden of action upon the hearer since everyone, presumably, has ears or the faculty of hearing. Secondly, these exhortations to hear do not go to a single church but to all churches wherever they might exist, i.e., the exhortation to adhere to the Spirit's message is universal. Thirdly, John does not differentiate sharply between the Spirit who speaks to the churches and the Christ who sends the letters to the churches (19.10). Finally, the exhortations to hear and the promises jointly function as maintenance strategies to encourage the readers/hearers to remain in the sacred cosmos so that Christ might protect them during the coming apocalyptic cataclysms and establish them in the New Jerusalem (e.g., 2.7, 11; 3.5-6, 10-13, 21-22).

In Revelation, both Christ and the Spirit convey data from the heavenly sphere to the earthly one. This is not Christ's only function, nor is it the Spirit's. One should note that each letter begins with Christ identified as the sender and ends with an exhortation to hear "what the Spirit says to the churches." In other words, the Spirit transmits to each church the same message which Christ sends to them. Enroth, arguing (correctly in my opinion) that the two are not identical, still writes, "The author (of Revelation) connects this phrase (the exhortation to hear the Spirit) with the introduction of the letter, . . . identifying the Spirit and the risen Lord by one or more epithets." Rev 19.10 clearly substantiates it: "For the witness of Christ is the spirit of prophecy" (cf. Rev 1.1, 19 and 22.16-17 read in this light). While the Spirit functions as the

---


3 Cf. Bauckham, Climax, 118-73; Theology, 109-25.

medium of revelation to prophets in Revelation, revelation only involves one aspect of the work of Christ who also serves as an expiation for human sin (1.5) and judges humanity (19.11-21), among other tasks as well as the work of the Spirit who guides the ongoing life of the Christian community, among other tasks. Finally, these exhortations to hear are powerful maintenance strategies aimed at sustaining the Christian community’s positive relationship with its exalted Lord and Christ.

Since all the exhortations to hear are identical in each letter, nothing further need be said concerning them.

Before discussing the letters themselves, one must first discuss to what degree these seven letters are true letters. Charles stated that these seven letters addressed issues which typified life in first century Christianity as a whole. Many agree that the letters have a universal appeal. Charles also argues that the letters were written approximately two decades before the apocalyptic section and circulated independently as authentic letters. Later, they were re-edited and added to Rev 4.1-22.5. He noted that the letters omit any reference to the imperial cult or to an empire-wide persecution and contain a parousia hope common among first-century Christians. According to Charles, later additions include the promises in each letter, the proclamation of the resurrected Christ and Rev 3.10.

Charles’ position has not gone unchallenged. Many have argued that Rev 2-3 does not contain authentic letters at all. For example, Beckwith calls them “special words”; Lohse, "literary epistles.” They all recognize that these letters do not follow the epistolary conventions of the time. However, one might argue that neither did Paul follow those conventions when he combined Graeco-Roman and Jewish greetings at the beginning of his letters. Letters do not have to conform slavishly to current conventions to be letters. Moreover, these letters, as many have noted, contain specific details which would be relevant in each context. Although the arguments for some details are often slender, these exegetes have shown that John knew

5 Charles, Rev 1:37.
6 Cf. Mounce, 83-85; Kiddle, 18; Ladd, 36; Morris, 87-88; Sweet, 65, 77-78; Krodel, 100; Court, 22-25.
7 Charles, Rev 1:43-47.
something of the geography, the social milieu and the nature of the Christian life in each of these churches. The letters are not “form letters” but real letters that addressed real problems. Indeed, Christ's knowledge concerning the social situation in each community would attest to the specificity which accompanies most genuine letters and also to Christ's omniscience (a mythological maintenance technique aimed at sustaining the order).

Others argue, against Charles, that chaps. 2-3 relate directly and naturally to the rest of the book. Sweet, for example, argues that chap. 1 provides Christ's title in each letter. He also notes that the promises to the victors at the end of each letter find fulfillment in chaps. 19-22. He concludes that the letters constitute an integral section of Revelation. With one partial exception, this is the case; the promise of the white stone with the new name is only fulfilled partially in Revelation. Rev 22.4 only mentions the new name. I also agree that the promises which are fulfilled in chaps. 19-22 argue against Charles for the unity of the book. Moreover, certain images recur throughout the book (e.g., the sword in 1.16, 2.12, 19.15; the seven-fold formula in 1.4; 2.1-3.22; 6.1-8.5; 8.2-11.19; 15.1-16.21; the word of God in 1.2, 1.9, 6.9, 19.13, 20.4).

Many have argued that the letters contain a prophetic element. For example, Beasley-Murray, notes parallels between Amos 1-2 and Rev 2-3. He claims that both have seven messages of judgment with no indication that any of these messages circulated independently. Feuillet adds that τάσσε ὁ λέγει at the beginning of each letter should be translated "Thus saith," a phrase which precedes divine speech in the prophetic oracles in the HB/LXX. Krodel goes further. He notes parallels between Rev 2-3 and 2 Chron 21.12-15 and Jer 29.1-23 (LXX: 36.1-23). These prophetic parallels are persuasive, especially in light of John's self-conscious identity as a prophetic figure (Rev 1.3; 22.7, 10, 18-19).

Aune has a more convincing approach because he allows the letters to interpret themselves without imposing artificial categories on them. He defines the seven letters as a mixed genre created by John which Aune calls "parenetic salvation-judgment oracles." These oracles combined aspects of Jewish prophetic speech and imperial edicts. From the prophetic speeches, it took the three-part parenetic sermon with its accusation, admonition and conditional threat of judgment. From the imperial edicts, it took the juxtaposition of commendation and censure and

10 Cf. Ladd, 36; Caird, 27-28; Sweet, 77; Mounce, 84-85.
11 Many argue that the titles come from the son of man vision in 1.9-20. The titles, more precisely, come from chap. 1, with the possible exception of the Philadelphia letter which paraphrases Isa 22.22. However, 1.18 may have brought this paraphrase to mind.
12 E.g., Hahn, "Sendschreiben"; Bauckham, Climax, 83-91; Theology, 2-22; 121-25; Rowland, Open Heaven, 9-22. I use "prophetic" here to mean like or similar to the prophets in the HB in form and purpose and not in the sense of prediction. See Corsini's instructive comments on the disadvantages of the "prophecy-as-prediction" point of view (103-04).
13 Beasley-Murray, 72; cf. Bauckham, Theology, 1-2. Amos 1-2 actually has eight oracles, not seven as Beasley-Murray stated.
14 Feuillet, 48-49; see also Beasley-Murray, 72; Boring, 85-86; cf. Isa 22.25 LXX.
15 Krodel, 99-100.
16 NTS 36, p. 198 and Prophecy in Early Christianity, 326.
its use of ῥάδε λέγει to introduce royal correspondence. John employed these elements in the letters in varying degrees depending upon the context. Aune's argument, which I find convincing, also supports my argument concerning the general purpose of the letters: the internal edification of the churches in order to ensure their participation in the new age. The great pre-exilic prophets (e.g., Amos, Micah, Isaiah) were preachers who denounced unrighteousness and proclaimed the need for righteous repentance, i.e., they sought the internal edification of the people Israel. John continues this tradition in Revelation within the Christian community (Rev 2-3) and within the broader society as well (Rev 18).

Many have also argued that the letters have a universal appeal. The letters cover every aspect of first-century CE Christian living, in particular the relationship between Christ and community, according to this argument. The letters do indeed cover a variety of topics, but our limited knowledge of first-century Christianity prevents us from saying conclusively that they cover every major issue for first-century Christians. How did John come to select these churches both for their location and for the quality of their spiritual lifestyle? How can one say that the letters are making a catalogue of the leading first-century Christian issues when overlaps exist among them? For example, two separate letters mention the Nicolaitans (2.6 and 2.15). While "Balaam/Balak" (2.14) and "Jezebel" (2.20) may refer to two different prophetic movements which oppose John's own ministry, many commentators argue that they are the same movement. Still others argue that the Nicolaitans, Balaam/Balak and Jezebel all refer to the same movement. How can these repetitions exist and the letters still have a universal appeal?

Some see the universality of the letters in their intentional grouping in a certain scheme. Kiddle, for example, argues that letters one and seven go to churches which lack the appropriate Christian virtues; letters two and six go to healthy churches; letters three, four and five to impaired but not destroyed churches. On Kiddle's theory, the letter to Ephesus is dominated by a lack of spiritual virtue. This does not, however, do justice to this letter in which Christ commends the congregation for its steadfastness (v. 2), patience (v. 2), fidelity to his name (v. 3) and disdain for the Nicolaitans (v. 6).

Corsini argues that the letters are not true letters but represent "a summary of the history of salvation through seven successive portraits." These letters correspond to the structure and

---

17However, the question still remains, "What did John call them?" He called them "letters." Despite all our form-critical analyses, they remained for John letters, special ones but letters nonetheless. As such, he would have understood them to convey specific messages for specific locales and our exegeses of the letters will confirm this fact. It is important to remember that John did not call them prophecies, oracles or edicts, even though they might function as such. Perhaps in this way the research process does not eliminate the need for the substantive answers to the very questions which gave rise to the research in the first place: (1) What do they say? (2) What do they mean?
18E.g., Charles, Rev 1:37; Kiddle, 18; Ladd, 36; Court, 22-25; Mounce, 83-85; Sweet, 65, 77-78; Krodel, 100; Morris, 57-58.
19One might also wonder why John would employ so many names for the same movement.
20Kiddle, 19-20. See also, Morris, 58; cf. Caird, 27 and Ladd, 36.
21Corsini, 109.
message of sevens in Revelation. They all refer not to the end of the world but to the end of Judaism. The specific socio-historical references in each of the letters mentioned previously argue against Corsini's historico-theological interpretation. Corsini stands at the theological extreme; Ramsay, Hemer and Court at the social-scientific. The relevance and meaning of the seven letters is somewhere between the two positions.

Although I have not found the preceding arguments themselves persuasive, for the reasons already mentioned, I believe that the letters do have a universal appeal. This appeal is not centered on the content of the letters but by the fact that there are only seven. Seven functions as a perfect, complete number in Revelation. No other explanation is necessary. In this manner, the content of the letters speaks to the context, while the number of the letters symbolizes their universal appeal. Furthermore, as I stated earlier, each letter ends with an exhortation to hear what the Spirit says to the churches. Thus, the letters are at once specific messages to individual congregations and also communications to all Christians wherever they may be.

Finally, the letters follow the same general structure: (1) an address to the patron angel; (2) the title and presentation of the Christ as the sender and author of each letter; (3) an evaluation of the spiritual life of the church addressed, including exhortations and/or warnings of judgment; (4) a promise to the victors/conquerors; (5) an exhortation to listen to the Spirit.

The exhortations, warnings, judgments, admonitions and promises in Rev 2-3 will consume the bulk of our attention because they are the maintenance strategies employed in order to influence behavior and devotion to the faith. In these words, the fullness of Christ's lordship as the leader of the Christian communities in Asia becomes clear. The letters have the same general purpose: they communicate to each church what it must do in order that the union between Christ and community might be maintained (see 2.5). Moreover, Christ speaks through the letters as the Lord of the cosmos to whom the Christians give homage and divine honors. In this way, the letters conveyed to the Asian Christians that the primary concern of the "one like a son of man," who commissions John to write the letters, was the spiritual well-being of their communities.

---

22Corsini, 105-17.
23I make a distinction here between the position taken and the supporting argument for that position.
24On the significance of seven in Revelation, see, for example, 1.12, 20; 5.1, 6; 8.2; 15.1; Yarbro Collins, Combat, 13-19; Bauckham, Theology, 16-17.
25Cf. Beckwith, 260; Glasson, 23; Caird, 27-28; Sweet, 77-78; Morris, 58; Yarbro Collins, Apocalypse, 13-14; Corsini, 99; Krodel, 100-02; Aune, NTS 36, p. 183-94.
B. The Letters
To Ephesus (2.1-7)

The letter to the Ephesians commends and censures the church, exhorting it to work toward its spiritual maturity. The letter begins with a title describing Christ as the author and sender of the letter (2.1; cf. 1.12-13, 16, 20): "Thus says he who holds the seven stars in his hand and walks among the seven golden lampstands" (cf. Exod 25.31 and Heb 9.2). It is fitting that the series of letters starts with this description for it connotes Christ's lordship over the seven churches and also over the entire universe. The letter continues by depicting Christ as an omniscient, omnipresent divine agency figure. This depiction is a myth aimed at securing their continued allegiance and fidelity to Christ.

Many commentators concern themselves with the identity of the false apostles in v. 2. Moffatt and Beckwith argue for travelling evangelists; Hughes, Judaizers; Hemer, libertarians; Bousset, Charles and Sweet, the Nicolaitans or a similar group; Beasley-Murray, Gnostics. Court postulates that both the Nicolaitans and the false apostles might provide "local opposition" to John. In actuality, the data are so sparse that all these answers, except that of Moffatt and Beckwith, depend upon speculation. Rev 2.1-7 does not provide enough information to identify conclusively the false apostles in any way. At the very least, the so-called false apostles of Rev 2.2 were ministers whose ministry obtained a degree of success. Their ministry differed from John's in some way, probably theologically. John does not decry the use of the title "apostle" to non-members of the 12 but its application to these specific persons.

Christ commends the Ephesians for their endeavors, their steadfastness and resisting evil (v. 2). He reiterates their steadfastness and abiding devotion to be recognized as his followers (v. 3). These verses speak to the social setting of Revelation. If they were complacent or lax, it would be difficult to explain the commendations for their steadfastness and resistance of evil. These words indicate that the social circumstances are the opposite, a setting in which Christians have had to withstand some type of social threat to their spiritual well-being. Verse 6 follows suit.

Other actions, however, receive condemnation. They have fallen from their first love, their first works (vv. 4-5). These two verses confirm that these were genuine letters to a specific community: the original reader knows exactly to what "first love" and "first works" refer. If these letters were merely artificial literary devices, one would expect a more explicit reference to

---

28 Court, 29.
29 Cf. Hemer (40-41) on the difficulty of identifying the "false apostles."
the reader, but since the Ephesians knew to what John referred there was no need for an explanation.

However, scholars have attempted to discern to what “first love” and “first works” referred. Charles claims that brotherly love is referred to here. He argues that, in contrast to the earlier harmonious days recorded in Acts 20.37, controversies had led to censoriousness, factiousness and divisions. 30 Caird, agreeing with Charles, writes that their intolerance of impostors, their loyalty and their disdain for heresy has “bred an inquisitorial spirit which left no room for love.” 31 Indeed, the removal of the lampstand, i.e., excommunication, is an immediate threat which will occur before the eschaton. 32 Given the scant evidence, this is a plausible argument. Some in this church might have become so ardent in resisting evil that they repressed other Christians who were not as zealous as they. On the other hand, the Ephesians might have become lax and the reference to first love is a call to repentance, to return to their previous Christian lifestyle.

Next comes a command to hear (v. 7a) and a promise to the faithful that they might have the right to eat from the tree of life (see Gen 2.9; 3.22, 24; T. Levi 18.11). Rev 22.14 fulfils this promise. Rev 22.2 states that the tree of life produces fruit each month for the healing of the nations (cf. Ezek 47.12). Rev 22.14 states that those who washed their robes have a right to the healing produce of the tree of life in the New Jerusalem. The reference to washing their robes in 22.14 relates to another “New Jerusalem” passage in Rev 7.14: “These are the ones who have come out of the great tribulation and they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.” Thus, the washing of the robes refers to giving one’s life in emulation of the Lamb, Christ Jesus, and attaining victory through suffering as did Christ. This is the means of conquering evil in the world (cf. 5.9-10). The promise in 2.7 attempts to demonstrate the salvific power of the blood of Christ; to show the Ephesians the stringent demands of Christian discipleship; and to persuade them that the salvific rewards will more than compensate them for their sufferings. Thus, Rev 2.7 is a therapeutic maintenance strategy 33 with the purpose of persuading the reader to remain within the sacred cosmos (cf. T. Dan 5.12 and 4 Ezra 8.52). We will find in Part II of this study that the victory-through-suffering motif recurs throughout the book with the Lamb image. Moreover, the use of this imagery suggests a setting where Christians have suffered for their religious convictions. This promise attempts to bring solace to those who are repressed for their beliefs.

30Charles, Rev 1:50.
31Caird, 31; so too, e.g., Ladd, 39; Moffatt, 351; Kiddle 23-24; Beasley-Murray, 75-76; Mounce, 88-89; Krodel, 107-08.
32E.g., Mounce, 89; Yarbro Collins, Apocalypse, 15. Court’s argument that the movement of the lampstand alludes to the necessity of moving the city itself due to political and geological reasons is at best a secondary factor (29).
33See Berger and Luckmann, 128-34 and chap. 1, this study.
Following Ramsay, both Hemer and Court argue that the primary referent of the tree of life was the tree-shrine of Artemis. Hemer writes that the Artemis cult was a perfect analogue with the Genesis tree of life. The tree-shrine served as the point at which divinity and humanity met. If they are correct, the Artemis cult would serve as a negative parallel to Christians to the tree of life imagery from Genesis. As the Artemis tree cult symbolized the connection between heaven and earth for pagans, so too did the tree of life for John's audience. If Ramsay, Hemer and Court are correct, the Ephesian church may be resisting pagan repression and the tree of life imagery might be a means of contrasting the competing symbolic universes.

As stated previously, John’s reader perceives a three-tiered universe. This promise guarantees entry into life's highest tier, healing from suffering incurred at the earthly level and avoidance of the dreaded lowest tier. In this manner, John’s vision connects the beginning of the book with the end, as well as the beginning of the Bible in Genesis and the end presented in Revelation. The reader must also be familiar with the Genesis story to appreciate adequately the vision. This promise would assure the faithful of security in the next age. What then does Christ say to this community?

The exhortation and warning function as powerful maintenance strategies to retain the community under Christ’s control. The loss of their “first love” attempts to motivate the Ephesians to return to their former way of Christian behavior or lose their place in the Christian community. On the negative side, Revelation uses nihilation by threatening to remove the lampstand, i.e., excommunication. On the positive side, Christ offers a reward: eternal fellowship with God Almighty and Christ. This promise, a form of therapy, is also part of the maintenance strategy of Revelation. These strategies may be responding to pagan attacks upon Christianity if the tree of life is being consciously contrasted with the Artemis tree-cult.

This letter contains three main points. First, Christ knows both the good and the bad which has transpired in this congregation. Secondly, Christ's exhortation attempts to re-direct the congregation to its original activities and perspectives. Thirdly, Christ, Lord of heaven, earth and hades, has communicated to John, knows the local situation, is worthy of reverence and has the power to execute judgement. The Lord of the church in Ephesus is also Lord of the universe.

To Smyrna (2.8-11)
This letter responds to a local repression and Christ's victory-through-suffering becomes the model for their victory over it. The letter begins by referring to Christ’s suffering, attempting to

---

34Court, 30-31; Hemer, 41-52.
35I am indebted to seminar lectures on Revelation by Prof. H. W. Attridge for this insight, Perkins School of Theology, Southern Methodist University, 1978 Summer Session.
36Note the different forms of promises in 2.7b, 17b; 3.12, 21, on one hand, and 2.11b, 26-28 and 3.5, on the other.
37On nihilation and therapy, see chapter one of this study.
inspire the Christians in Smyrna to remain faithful to Christ through their trials just as Christ was faithful to God Almighty. The title refers to Christ as “the first and the last, who was dead and was made alive” (see Rev 1.17-18; 2.13). The letter then speaks of the tribulations of the church in Smyrna. This is another example of the connection between Christ and community as envisioned by John, i.e., Christ's faithfulness to God through suffering functions as a model for the church in Smyrna. As Christ overcame death (v. 8), so can they (v. 11b). The letter then states that they will suffer for “ten days.” Some argue that "ten days" refers to a brief local oppression, while others interpret it to refer to a region oppression that may not be brief. Still others offer a third interpretation that the ten days would have designated one's imprisonment prior to one's execution. Indeed, Rev 2.9 makes it clear that Christians experienced some type of oppression from "the synagogue of Satan." Chapter one of this study postulated such action by Jewish opponents to Christianity (cf. 1 Pet 4.4, 14). More traditional Jewish persons have misrepresented the Christians and these false Jewish testimonies will lead to the coming tribulations (v. 10; cf. 1 Pet 4.12-5.11).

Hemer, Court and Sweet argue that the title in v. 8 refers to the rebuilding of Smyrna under Antigonus and Lysimachus. While Rev 2.8 refers back to Rev 1.17-18, it is also possible that local history might have influenced John's choice of title for this letter, as Hemer, Court and Sweet argue, particularly since images tend to be open-ended. The first phrase, “the first and the last,” is an exact quotation of 1.17; the second, an allusion to 1.18.

In this letter, the exhortation and warning again are closely related (v. 10). This is one of only two letters without negative comments (see also 3.7-13). This congregation has suffered and is not prosperous in material terms but is rich. However, nothing is revealed concerning the content of their affluence. Perhaps, the following comment about the so-called Jews and Satan's synagogue, which supposedly makes libelous accusations against Christians, stands in contrast to the followers of Christ. Thus, the reference to the latter's affluence probably refers to spiritual richness.

Spiritual richness defined by suffering and poverty has a long history in some forms of Judaism and early Christianity (e.g., Prov 3.4; Isa 25.4; Jer 22.16; Eccl 4.13; 9.15; cf. James 2.5; 4.6 and 1 Pet 5.5). By turning negatives into positives, the letter prepares the reader/listener for the exhortation and warning in v. 10: “Do not fear the things you are about to suffer. Be

---

39E.g., Charles, Rev 1:58; Kiddle, 28; Caird, 35; Ladd, 44; Court, 30; Morris, 64; Krodel, 113.
40E.g., R. Summers, *Worthy is the Lamb* (Nashville: Broadman, 1951) 113; Mounce, 94; Hughes, 41-42.
41E.g., Hemer, 69-70. Hemer's support for this argument is rather weak.
42Hemer, 60-65; Court, 30; Sweet, 84.
43I am grateful to Canon John Sweet of Cambridge University for this insight in private conversation.
watchful; the devil is about to throw some of you into prison in order that you might be tested and... have tribulation....” The two promises which follow the exhortations point toward a single reward: eternal life with Christ.

The first promise offers to those who are faithful unto death the crown of life (v. 10c). Being faithful unto death also connotes a tense situation where Christians have suffered. While it could function as an exhortation to repentance, the context of Rev 2.8-11 suggests conflicting truth claims. Hemer lists eight possible interpretations for “crown of life.” It could mean (1) a gift presented to a champion at athletic games; (2) an adornment for a presiding Dionysian priest; (3) a civic honor; (4) an adornment for pagan priests; (5) an adornment for the eponymous priestly magistrates of a city; (6) a symbol of spiritual bliss worn by Christians; (7) a symbol for the city of Smyrna and (8) a presentation to a human potentate at his arrival into a city. Hemer himself prefers the first, third and seventh options. I believe the first option is the most probable one for the Christians in Smyrna. Morris states that this promise would have been a fitting image in Smyrna, “a city famous for its Games.” “Crown (stephanos) means a wreath or chaplet, and is to be distinguished from the royal crown (diadema). The stephanos was... awarded to the victor at the games, and the same word was used of the festive garland worn at banquets by all the guests.” Krodel writes that the conditional promise in v. 10 “contains the same life/death contrast as the messenger formula (v. 8). Christ’s fate remains... a source of undefeatable fortitude...” The promises to the “victors” are that their richness increases as their sufferings increase. The hearer/reader living under local religious oppression would recognize this image and would be expected to respond by living faithfully. The crown makes one a victor in the game of life eternal, the central point of the second promise, a promise which is not explicitly fulfilled in Revelation. The unfulfilled promise might not be a part of the book’s theological agenda but a specific promise to a specific situation.

The second promise guarantees that the faithful will escape the second death and thereby attain resurrection to life eternal. Rev 2.11b should be translated, “The one who conquers will certainly never be harmed by the second death.” Krodel notes that this is the only conqueror saying stated negatively and argues that the reason for this is the conflict with the synagogue. Given Rev 2.9 and the fact that a concept of a second death was widespread in Judaism (e.g.,

44Hemer, 72-75.
45Morris, 65.
46Morris, 64.
47Krodel, 113.
48The Greek word ἀνακτώ, the primary verb in each promise in these letters, can mean either to conquer, to overcome or to be victorious.
50Krodel, 113. However, the promise may not be against an opposing religious movement but merely an exhortation to the Christians in Smyrna. The reference to the second death could merely be the employment of a Jewish tradition.
In any event, Jewish repression has misrepresented Christianity to pagans, leading to Christian suffering and clearly demonstrates that the letters reflect Christian suffering.

The second death is discussed in Rev 20.6, 14 and 21.8. In Rev 20.6, the second death is defined in contrast to the eternal bliss of the first resurrection; however, 20.14 explicitly defines the second death as the lake of fire. Rev 21.8 states that the lake of fire, the second death, was reserved for cowards, unbelievers, corrupt persons, murderers, sexually immoral persons, sorcerers and idolaters. Therefore, this second promise simultaneously states the escape from the second death and also affirms their spiritual richness stated in v. 8. The second death denotes complete exclusion “from the incomparable glory and perfection of the new heaven and earth. From this appalling end the Lord’s redeemed have been saved.” This redemption is equivalent to “receiving the crown of life and eating from the tree of life.” Indeed, both promises assure Christ’s followers in Smyrna of their selection, if not election, at the Judgment.

Christ’s message to this church is succinct. First of all, he asserts their spiritual affluence which exceeds their poverty and suffering and encourages them to remain faithful. Next, he gives two promises which have the same purpose: eternal life with God. These exhortations and promises encourage the church to maintain its level of devotion. The letter indicates a social context where Jewish persons persecute Christians. Accusations from Jews, of the kind postulated in chapter 1 of this study, probably led to Christians being imprisoned as social threats of some type. John prophesies that some will be imprisoned but delivered eventually. That is to say, based upon their current problems, John perceives a future crisis. This action seems to be a local conflict, probably similar to the one described in Pliny’s letter to Trajan (Letter 10).

John provides only meager data about the social circumstances of this specific congregation: it is experiencing poverty; it seems to have few, if any, materially affluent members. There are Jewish pressures on them. John contrasts their material poverty with their spiritual affluence; their present suffering with their future bliss; death with life. These therapeutic maintenance strategies are aimed at maintaining the Christian 'sacred cosmos' intact.
and maintaining the union between Christ and community by persuading the Christian community that religious fidelity and life in the New Jerusalem must be their focus, not their present sufferings.  

*To Pergamum (2.12-17)*

This letter mentions in passing the death of Antipas and also the need for religious fidelity. The letter comes from him who has the sharp, double-edged sword (2.12; cf. 1.16; 19.15). The letter contains a distinctive note of judgment in its title and its body (2.12, 16) by describing Pergamum negatively as the place "where the throne of Satan" is (2.13). This could be a reference to the imperial cult and also to the many pagan temples in Pergamum and their extensive influence there. Christians in Pergamum stood firm in the face of intense competition for adherents and against outside oppression. Antipas, "my faithful witness," has even died for the faith (2.13).

We should note several elements at this point. First, the exhortation in the immediately preceding letter to be faithful unto death (2.10) has already been achieved by Antipas (2.13) in Pergamum. Christians living there may have a justifiable concern for their own lives and fear that Antipas might be the first of many. Secondly, Antipas is referred to as "my faithful witness" (ὁ μάρτυς μου ὃ πιστός μου). Μάρτυς (and its cognates) and πιστός (and its cognates) function as technical terms in Revelation. Much attention has been given to μάρτυς as a technical term, little to πιστός. In fact, μάρτυς/μαρτυρία and πιστός/πιστός occur together three times in Revelation (1.5; 2.13; 3.14). In each instance, the words function as synonymous Christian virtues which the Christian must maintain regardless of the cost, even one's life. "By standing faithful to the point of death and suffering martyrdom, the Christian bore his most effective witness to his Lord." Verse 13 clearly states that Antipas has died a faithful Christian witness. The reference to his death is placed between two references to Satan twice. Given the preponderence of Graeco-Roman religions and the importance of the neokorate to the city of Pergamum, "Satan" probably symbolized for John the imperial cult and/or Graeco-Roman religious customs. In either case, the death of Antipas is a sign that the situation is not good for Christians and John only anticipates it getting worse. Rev 2.13 is a clear example that some measure of oppression of Christians existed in Roman Asia at this time.

---

55 On maintaining a sacred cosmos, see "Sociology of Knowledge" in the opening chapter of this study.
56 E.g., Ladd, 45; Sweet, 87-88; Beasley-Murray, 84; Krodel, 114; Morris, 65.
57 E.g., Hughes (43-44) and Lohmeyer (24-25).
59 Ladd, 47. See also 2.19, 13.10 and 14.12.
60 See "The Social Setting of the Book of Revelation," chapter 1 of this study; cf. Ferguson, 93.
The Christian community in Pergamum is not free from fault (vv. 14-15). The community has withstood external threats but succumbed to internal ones. Christ criticizes their acceptance of false teachers and doctrines, as evidenced by the references to "Balaam," "Balak," and the Nicolaitans. The reference to Balaam and Balak is a symbolic employment of Num 22.41-31.24. Balaam represents the prototypical false teacher in second temple Judaism and early Christianity (e.g., Philo, *Life of Moses* 1.53-55; Flavius Josephus, *Jewish Antiquities* 4.6.6). King Balak of Moab hired Balaam to pronounce curses upon Israel. Instead, Balaam blessed Israel four times (Num 22-24). However, Balaam fell into disrepute when, after his counsel, Israelite men committed fornication with Moabite women (see Num 31.16). Swete, for example, notes that in Num 25 and several NT passages (e.g., Acts 15.28-29; 1 Cor 6-10) sexual fornication was associated with idolatry and actions perceived idolatrous, such as eating meat offered to idols. Ladd argues that some in Pergamum had "a lax attitude toward pagan customs, including both temple feasts and sexual immorality." A lax attitude by Christians is possible, given the seriousness with which non-Christian/non-Jewish persons in the eastern Mediterranean region took their religious practices. Some scholars might argue that since the letter only mentions the death of Antipas that no other Christians have suffered in any way and that religious laxity is the issue in the Asian congregations. If, however, other Christians died after Anitpas, Revelation would have gained status as a prophetic book and would have been cherished and retained by the Asian Christian community, a possible reason for its survival. Furthermore, while religious laxity is a concern in Pergamum (vv. 14-15), John gives no indication that Antipas was lax. Rather, John gives the impression that the opposite is the case in regard to Antipas, "the faithful witness."

Other exegetes have argued that the Balaam/Balak movement was Gnostic; still others that "Balaam" and "Balak" were figurative references to the Nicolaitans. Hemer, in an attempt to clarify matters, defined Nicolaitanism as "an antinomian movement like that which Paul had faced at Corinth, whatever else it may have been otherwise."

The passage does not provide enough data to enable us to draw any confident conclusions about the practice and/or theology of the Nicolaitans. John could have misunderstood them, or he could have given a biased report. Further, John is more conservative than other early church leaders on this matter (cf. 1 Cor 8 and Rev 2.14). One could just as easily argue that John is 61Sweet, 36. Note also my comments in chap. 1 of this study on the primary purpose of the letters being internal issues.
62Swete, 36-37.
63Ladd, 48.
64E.g., Bauckham, *Theology*, 12-17.
65E.g., Charles, Rev 1:63; Beasley-Murray, 83-89.
67Hemer, 91.
conservative and the Nicolaitans moderate. Moreover, there is insufficient data to state conclusively if Balaam/Balak and the Nicolaitans are one group or two.

Stimulating though some of these ideas may be, many are speculative. The Gnostic thesis is indefensible given that the scant data in Rev 2 could relate to any number of Graeco-Roman cults or movements. Moreover, while Balaam/Balak may refer to the Nicolaitans, it is by no means certain. It is worth noting that the Nicolaitans are mentioned in the Ephesian letter, but Balaam/Balak is not. One could argue then that the Nicolaitans and "Balaam/Balak" refer to two groups, not one.

This passage tells us something of its reader and, in the turn, the social context of the general readership. The lack of detail regarding John's opponents suggests that the original recipients knew to whom John referred. The reader must be familiar with ongoing first century Jewish exegesis of Num 22-31 and, in this particular case, must be able to apply this negative metaphor to the appropriate group which has forsaken its ancestral traditions. Furthermore, eating meat offered to idols and fornication often referred metaphorically in early Judaism and early Christianity to actions which have led people to religious infidelity (cf. Rev 18.3,9). In sum, John has used two Jewish metaphors to refer to the same, in his eyes, religiously incorrect behavior. These metaphors are therapeutic maintenance strategies, aimed at creating a sense of guilt within the person/persons who have committed this offense and bring about their repentance. Since John has employed standard negative Jewish and Christian metaphors to describe rival groups, one cannot be certain at this point to what degree the passage is purely metaphorical or may actually reflect Christian conduct in Pergamum.

Verse 16 contains an exhortation, indeed a command, to repent immediately. Christ's punishment for non-compliance, a form of nihilation maintenance, would be the sword from his mouth (vv. 12, 16). Nihilation is a maintenance strategy which attempts to eradicate everything outside the sacred cosmos. This would be a fitting punishment if John's competitors actually did eat meat offered to idols, and if John is not using meat-eating as a pure symbol. The first of two promises in v. 17 may confirm this suspicion: the right to eat the hidden manna. This is the second promise not explicitly fulfilled in Revelation (cf. the crown in 2.10), suggesting that it might have been a response to a genuine issue in Pergamum and not a part of Revelation's overall theological message. It could have been suggested by the actions of those who actually ate meat offered to idols and/or by the Exodus episode from Numbers recounted earlier. In a city such as Pergamum, with its many different religious cults, meat offered to idols would be a principal.

---

68 I am indebted to Prof. H. W. Attridge's seminar lectures on Revelation, 1978 Summer Session, Perkins School of Theology, Southern Methodist University, for this insight.
69 See Berger and Luckmann, 130-34.
70 Hemer, 78-87.
source of protein. It is understandable that some Christians might not see any harm in eating such meat since those gods did not exist (cf. 1 Cor 8.4).\textsuperscript{71} It is possible that a real dispute arose among Christians in Pergamum as to whether or not they should eat meat offered to idols. This dispute probably revolved around proper Christian conduct within Greco-Roman society. Some Christians probably believed some accommodation with the broader society was possible, but John felt that any accommodation was apostasy. If they continue to eat such meat, Christ would punish them. If they do not, they would be rewarded with heavenly food. This crisis probably led to the martyrdom of Antipas.

On the other hand, the Balaam-Balak story might have also brought to John's mind Exod 16.\textsuperscript{72} Some traditions stated that Jeremiah had hidden the manna that had been kept in the Temple and that it would re-appear during the messianic era (see 2 Macc 2.4-8; cf. Sib. Or. 7.148-149; 2 Bar. 29.8). Charles, however, argues that the hidden manna refers to "bread from heaven" which nourishes the angels.\textsuperscript{73} The hidden manna of the Jeremianic tradition is the primary referent for Revelation's "hidden manna" because the bread from heaven to which Charles referred was not hidden. Against Charles, Hemer correctly notes that the word κεκρυμμένου clearly refers to the Jeremiah-tradition.\textsuperscript{74} John believed that the messianic age would come soon (1.1, 19; 22.6-7, 10) and that this manna would nourish the people of God.

The reader of this passage must possess a knowledge of the manna traditions, believe in miraculous feedings during the Exodus travels and look forward to a similar experience during the messianic era. It also presumes a strong hope for a messianic era when these things would be fulfilled. The manna-tradition requires an acquaintance with a particular Jewish tradition-history. Such knowledge is not impossible for non-Jews but would be expected more in a Jewish context. The apologies of Philo and Josephus, from Egyptian and Roman contexts, respectively, suggest that rather detailed knowledge of Judaism in Graeco-Roman society was not widespread.

While the hidden manna imagery requires a knowledge of Jewish traditions, the source of the imagery of the second promise, the white stone with a new name, does not and it has provoked substantial debate.\textsuperscript{75} If the white stone image comes from Exodus, as with earlier images in this letter, then the use of Urim and Thummim in reaching decisions is the most probable source of the white stone imagery (Exod 28.30). Glasson mentions a Targum tradition that said God's name was on these stones,\textsuperscript{76} but another tradition held that the names of the 12

\textsuperscript{71}Cf. Sweet, 89; Ladd, 47-49; Krodel, 115-21.
\textsuperscript{72}See Charles, Rev 1:65; Ladd, 49; Beasley-Murray, 87.
\textsuperscript{73}Charles, Rev 1:65.
\textsuperscript{74}Hemer, 95; cf. Philo, Quis Rerum Divinarum Heres? 39.191 and Legum Analogiae 3.59.169; see also 3.61.174-76.
\textsuperscript{75}Hemer provides a helpful list of possible sources for the white stone imagery (96-102).
\textsuperscript{76}Glasson, 29.
tribes were on the stones. Regardless of its source, the white color conveyed purity, blessedness, righteousness and similar virtues (e.g., 6.11; 7.9; 19.11, 14).

Some argue that the secret name reflects the popular religious belief in Graeco-Roman society that to know a deity's name created an intimate relationship between deity and devotee or even power over that deity. This position is supported by Rev 3.12, 14.1 and 19.12. Some commentators argue that the name on the stone is either God's name or Christ's name, while others argue that the new name bestowed upon the conqueror is one given by God/Christ.

However, I prefer a fourth explanation. First of all, Rev 14.1 and 19.12 provide near perfect parallels to 2.17. Both 2.17 and 19.12 contain the words γεγραμμένον ὁ οἶκος καὶ ὁ ἄξων el μῆν. The parallel between them is clear. In 2.17 Christ promises the secret name to the conqueror. Rev 14.1 states that the new name is the Lamb's name and God the Father's name, placed upon their foreheads. In 19.12, God bestows a secret name upon the one who has already conquered. In 2.17, 14.1 and 19.12, γεγραμμένον is a key word. Rev 22.4 is the fulfillment passage: "And they shall see his (God's) face and his name (shall be) upon their foreheads." Rev 22.4, then, restates 14.1. If these passages interpret one another and collectively provide a fuller interpretation of the significance of "the name" in Revelation, and I believe they do, then the name on the white stone would be God's name and Christ's name.

This suggestion requires explanation. If God Almighty and Christ share functions, then one name would designate both. Rev 22.4 would be the fulfilment passage of the promise in 2.17; 14.1 and 19.12, important verses in understanding 22.4. Rev 3.12 says as much: "I will write upon him my God's name and the name of my God's city, the New Jerusalem... and my new name.

Secondly, the victor receives a new name. Revelation associates newness (καινός) with righteousness, holiness and election. The heavenly court sings a new song (5.9); as do the Lamb's followers (14.3). A new creation comes from God (21.1, 2, 5). In all these passages, newness has positive connotations. Thus, the new name conveys the saintliness of the victor. Isa 62.2 and 65.15 may be the source/sources of this image. Interestingly, while the new name recurs in 22.4, there is no further mention of the white stone in Revelation. These promises

---

77 E.g., Charles, Rev 1:66-67 and Corsini, 106.
78 On the color, see also Sweet, 90; Caird, 42; Corsini, 106; Ladd, 49; Beasley-Murray, 88; Mounce, 99; Hughes, 46. Hemer rejects the idea that the color of the stone carries any importance, but the evidence indicates otherwise.
79 E.g., Charles, Rev 1:66-67; Kiddle, 35; Caird, 42; Ladd, 49; Corsini, 106.
80 E.g., Caird, 42; Ladd, 49; Beasley-Murray, 88.
81 E.g., Mounce, 100; Hughes, 47; Morris, 68. In particular, Morris argues strongly for this position, pointing out that there is no reference to Christ's name being secret, the point of Rev 2.17. However, in commenting upon Rev 19.12, Morris states, "John may well be saying that no-one has power over Christ. He is supreme. His name is known only to himself" (223). Is Morris not saying that the name of Jesus is secret and beyond human exploitation? He is indeed.
82 This parallel between Rev 2.17 and 19.12 will be examined more closely in chapter six of this study.
83 Repetition is an important technique in Revelation and I hope at some point in the future to discuss its function in more detail.
function as powerful therapeutic maintenance strategies aimed at motivating Christians in Pergamum to remain faithful. Moreover, the use of the eschatological exodus motif (Balaam/Balak, manna), a therapeutic mythology, identifies the church as the New Israel which will be saved in the new dispensation. These passages suggest that the name "Christian" was a disparaging label in the larger society and that Christians suffered simply because of the name. The significance of the name is hidden from non-Christians and is only known by the Christians. Other early Christian communities had similar experiences (e.g., Luke 21.12; John 15.21; Acts 4.41; 1 Pet 4.14; cf. Tacitus, Annals 15.44; Pliny, Letter 10.96-97), which I noted in chapter one of this study.

How does Christ relate to this community? Initially, he comes as a judge (the sword in vv. 12, 16). He commends their steadfastness against external threats, noting especially the death of Antipas. However, he condemns their succumbing to internal threats (vv. 14-15). He offers two promises. Both contain soteriological imagery and serve the same purpose: the assurance of salvation and eternal life to the faithful, sustaining the bond between Christ and community.

The new name contains an apologetic element which explains the rejection of Christians by the larger society: just as the world did not recognize the Christ, no one recognizes his elect followers. Thus, their rejection by society is explained. This same apologia is behind the unrevealed name in 19.12 (to be discussed in more detail in chapter six of this study). Thus, the reception of the faithful in the new age is assured, a maintenance strategy discussed earlier.

In sum, pressures from both Jews and pagans have had negative effects upon Christians in Pergamum. First and foremost, conflicts with a group deemed satanic by John has been associated with the death of Antipas and posed a real threat to other Christians as well who did not abandon the faith even after Antipas was killed. Pergamum was a center of Graeco-Roman emperor-worship, as well as other Graeco-Roman religious traditions, and it is quite possible that "Satan" also refers to these religious traditions for John. Ladd's comments that this letter refers to a lax attitude toward Graeco-Roman religious traditions (see vv. 14-15) are probably correct. On the other hand, "Satan" could refer to Jewish persons who repress Christians, as in 2.9 and 3.9. The Balaam-Balak imagery could refer to those same Jewish persons who have led some Christians to return to more traditional forms of Judaism, or to Christian Jews who have a different understanding of the faith than John. The Nicolaitans could refer to either Gentile Christians or Christian Jews. The data are too sparse to make a definitive statement. The unknown name image suggests a social context where Christians espouse that they are the elect but society-at-large has little or no esteem for them. This apologetic element explains the readers's social circumstance, making their social status understandable and worth bearing. Whether the pressures are from pagans, or Jews, or from both those groups, Christ becomes the
role-model for those Christians enduring repression in Pergamum. As I argued previously, these comments are all the more important because they are among the few comments upon the relationship between an Asian congregation and its relations with the wider social context. Those relationships are far from pleasant, according to this letter.

To Thyatira (2.18-29)
This letter contains an extensive discussion of an internal struggle between John and "Jezebel." In this letter, the title of Christ, "the one whose eyes are like flames of fire and whose feet are like burnished brass," comes from 1.14-15 ("his eyes are like flames of fire and his feet like burnished brass") and will be repeated partially in 19.12 ("his eyes are like a flame of fire"). Added to it is "ὁ υἱος τοῦ θεοῦ." Rev 1.6 clearly presupposes the title "son of God" ("and he made us a kingdom, priests to his God and Father"; see also 2.27-28; 3.5, 21 and 14.1). 2.18 constitutes the only use of this title in Revelation. Kiddie argues that in the early days of the imperial cult devotees often proclaimed the emperor "Apollo incarnate" (the tutelary god of Thyatira) "and hailed (him) appropriately as the son of God." John might be alluding to the Apollo tradition there while affirming that "Christ is the true son of God." Similarly, Caird writes, "The title Son of God prepares the way for the quotation from Psalm ii, the psalm in which the messiah is addressed by God as 'my son'." I agree with Kiddie and Caird on this point.

The "eyes like flames of fire and the feet like burnished brass" conveyed the power of total and thorough perception (the eyes) and the ability to trounce falsehood (the feet). Krodel adds that the description of the eyes established a contrast with the sun-god Helios. If Krodel is correct, this is another possible contact with Thyatiran culture. If Kiddie, Caird and Krodel are correct, this letter employs images as reactions to Graeco-Roman religion in general and the imperial cult in specific. These are indications that religious tensions existed between Christians and Graeco-Romans.

Hemer provides an interesting discussion of χαλκολιβάνῳ, a hapax legomenon in the entirety of ancient Greek literature. He argues that the term would have been intelligible to its original readers as a high quality metal, a copper alloy with zinc. He believes it was a special product of Thyatira's local smelting industry. If Hemer is correct, John has employed a term with local significance drawn from the economic life and commercial prestige of the community in order to convey Christ's judicial grandeur and strength. The title "son of God," the allusion to

---

84Kiddle, 37.
85Caird, 43.
86Cf. Kiddle, 37-38; Morris, 70; Sweet, 93; Beasley-Murray, 90; Mounce, 102.
87Krodel, 122.
88Hemer, 112-17.
Helios and the reference to burnished brass could provide vivid local images for Thyatiran Christians to contrast their religion with the imperial cult.

The heart of the letter begins in v. 19 with a commendation of the Thyatiran Christians. Their virtues include love, fidelity, service and steadfastness. Moreover, their recent efforts have exceeded their earlier ones. The later works are not mentioned specifically. The Thyatiran Christians, however, have not attained spiritual perfection. They have tolerated the ministry of "Jezebel" (vv. 19-21), clearly a symbolic reference to the wife of King Ahab who was a patroness of the Baal-cult, a Canaanite religion (see, for example, 1 Kings 16-21). John's opponent, like Queen Jezebel, "constituted a threat to the continuance of true religion among the people of God."89 "Jezebel" competes with John on his own terms as a prophetic figure. John does not question her authority to be a prophetess but the content of her prophecies (v. 20). At least in Thyatira, two competing Christian prophetic movements sought adherents, lending support to the earlier suggestion that John operates in a context accustomed to prophetic ministries.90 Jezebel is a false prophetess, comparable to the false apostles in Ephesus (2.2), whose teachings led to fornication and eating meat offered to idols (v. 20; cf. 2.14).

Is John's accusation figurative or literal? Is it describing one or two misdeeds? Thyatira's economic livelihood revolved around its metal industry and that industry, in turn, gave birth to trade guilds. The guilds traditionally required attendance at banquets which served meat that first had been offered to idols. These meals often ended in sexually licentious conduct. Non-attendance and/or non-conformity when attending banquets might result in the loss of income and/or social status. John was probably addressing a genuine issue for the church in Thyatira. Sexual licence and eating meat offered to idols, customary Jewish criticisms of Gentiles, could have become inseparable for him (cf. Acts 15.19; see also 1 Cor 8.1-11.1).

However, it is quite possible that "Jezebel" might not have been the evil person John described. It could have been that "Jezebel" stood closer to Paul and that John considered anyone who was not as rigorous as himself a religious infidel. If the Jezebel-movement is directly related to eating meat offered to idols, it is quite possible that "Jezebel" saw no harm in eating such meat since idols do not exist (cf. 1 Cor 8.4). John, however, may not have made such a distinction and could not separate eating meat offered to idols from idolatry itself.

Sweet argues that in Revelation πλανάω (v. 20) relates "to Satan and his imperial minions" (see 13.14 and 18.23).91 Sweet's argument is sound. I would add 12.9 to the list. In v. 20 it describes how false prophecy has led astray good people into immorality. Jezebel has not won

---

89 Beasley-Murray, 90.
90 See, e.g., Hill, NTS 18 (1971-72) 401-18; Rowland, Open Heaven, 9-22; Bauckham, Climax, 83-91; Aune, NTS 36 (1990) 182-204.
91 Sweet, 94.
over everyone in the church in Thyatira, but it is clear that she has established a prophetic movement that rivals John's ministry. Since John describes both the Balaam/Balak-movement and the Jezebel-movement in similar terms, it is possible that both were prophetic movements. Clearly, insufficient data exist to support this hypothesis. If it is correct, John would have had to compete with one and perhaps two rival Christian prophetic movements in Roman Asia, making the Christians in that social context well-accustomed to early Christian prophetic and apocalyptic discourse. Several commentators identify the Jezebel-movement with the Nicolaitans. Since we know nothing of the teachings or practices of either movement, such an identification is highly speculative. What is clear is that two opposing prophetic movements exist in Thyatira. Further examination elucidates this fact.

Christ has given the Thyatiran prophetess an opportunity to repent, but she has chosen not to do so (v. 21). Judgment (remember the title of v. 18) is rendered. First, she will become ill, her sympathizers will suffer mercilessly, if they do not repent, and her followers will die (vv. 22-23). Many have noted that "to throw on a bed" is a Hebraic expression meaning to cause an illness as a form of punishment for sinfulness. This expression is followed by the parallel expression "(to throw) into great tribulation" which also connotes suffering as a result of one's sins. A third expression then follows: "I will kill by means of death," a Hebraism found in Ezek 33.27 LXX. It means "I will kill with pestilence." Several interpreters have also noted the double entendre wherein the bed of pleasure becomes a bed of pain. These images are examples of nihilation: if all else fails, the evildoers will be eradicated. This form of maintenance suggests a considerable degree of enmity between John and "Jezebel." Charles argues that "those who commit adultery with her" and "her children" referred to her sexual partners, in the first instance, and her actual offsprings, in the second. It is more likely that "those who commit adultery with her" represented those who sympathized with her and "her children" were her disciples. That would explain why the followers die while the sympathizers merely suffer mercilessly. These judgments come about so that "all the churches" might know that Christ is the one who examines human motivations and he will "give to you individually according to your works (or deeds)" (v. 23b; cf. Rev 18.6; 20.12-13; 22.12; see also Matt 16.27 and Rom 2.6; 14.12; 2 Cor 5.10; cf. 1 Cor 3.13; Eph 6.8). Christ wants all the

92Cf. Krodel's three Thyatiran groups (126-27).
93Cf. Bauckham, Climax, 83-91; Theology, 17-22.
94E.g., Hemer, 122; Beasley-Murray, 90; Charles, Rev 1:70; Ladd, 52; Caird, 43-44 and Mounce, 103.
96See Beasley-Murray, 91; Sweet, 95; Ladd, 52; Morris, 72.
97E.g., Krodel, 125; Hughes, 49.
98On nihilation, see Berger and Luckmann, 130-34.
100Cf. Krodel, 126.
churches to recognize his omniscience and his role as eschatological judge (cf. v. 18 with Jer 11.20; 17.10; 20.12 and Ps 7.9). This letter contains another example of privileges previously associated only with God Almighty now associated by John with the messiah, again an example of the manner in which in Revelation Christ participates in divine honors. One might compare, for example, Rev 2.23b with similar prophetic oracles in Isa 14.22-27, Ezek 37.1-14 and Joel 3.9-17.

On the other hand, a different judgment awaits those persons who have not associated or affiliated with the Jezebel-movement. These persons will not suffer any punishment (v. 24) and are admonished to remain consistent in their beliefs until the parousia of Christ (v. 25). Some exegetes argue that “another burden” (v. 24) refers to the requirements of the Apostolic Decree in Acts 15.28-29. However, the letter makes no appeal to any church teaching or agreement to resolve the situation but receives direct instruction from its risen Lord mediated through John (cf. Rev 1.9-20). Mounce accurately states, “It is possible that the apostolic decree (Acts 15:28-29) is in mind, although apart from baros there are no linguistic parallels: the verb is balle rather than epitithemi, and is followed by eph hymas rather than hymin.” Not experiencing another burden means that those who have remained faithful will not encounter the punishments visited upon Jezebel and her followers and sympathizers, in addition to the oppression from local residents who adhere to Graeco-Roman religious traditions.

This brings us to the promises to the victors. Christ promises (1) authority over the nations (v. 26) and (2) the morning star, two maintenance techniques. Mythologically, they depict life in the new age. Theologically, they relate directly to soteriology. The first promise in vv. 26-27 is a free rendering of Ps 2.8-9 LXX. Ps. Sol. 17.23-24, a first century CE Jewish writing, interpreted Ps 2 messianically. Ps 2.9 in the HB reads, “You shall break them with a rod of iron; you shall shatter them like earthenware.” Ps 2.9 LXX reads, “You shall shepherd them with an iron rod; you shall shatter them like an earthen vessel.” The context of the Thyatiran letter requires us to translate ἀνευρήξει “will rule.” Thus, Christ promises to share his authority with the conquerors. The fulfillment passage is Rev 20.4-6 (also see 19.15).

Here is another example of an exodus motif in Revelation in the reference to priest-kings in the new age (Exod 19.6). Most importantly, Christ promises to share his dominion with his faithful followers, a means of sustaining the bond between Christ and community in Revelation.

The second promise is a slightly different version of the first. Krodel correctly notes, “The emphasis in Christ’s (first) promise . . . does not lie on the fate of the nations but on the privilege

---

101 E.g., Charles, Rev 1:74; Ladd, 53; Morris, 73; Sweet, 95-96.
102 Mounce, p. 105, n. 63.
103 For a text-critical history of this psalm, see Charles, Rev 1:75-76.
104 Cf. Mounce, 106-07, and Caird, 45-46. Chapter 6 of this study will discuss Ps 2.9 LXX in more detail.
granted the conquerors to be co-regents with Christ (20:4-6)."¹⁰⁵ In agreement, Hughes writes, "What is promised . . . here is really union with Christ in his universal authority, as is plain from the explanation even as I have received authority from my Father" (emphasis as in the text).¹⁰⁶ The morning star is Christ himself: "I am . . . the bright morning star" (Rev 22.16). To possess the morning star, the fulfillment of the second Thyatiran promise, means to have an intimate fellowship with the Lord. Thus, both promises would have conveyed to the reader the certainty of fellowship with Christ. The expected response would be repentance and faithfulness to Christ and the Christian gospel in its proper form.

This letter promises co-regency with Christ to the victor (vv. 26-27). This promise comes from the sovereign Son of God, the eschatological judge (v. 18). Christ commends (v. 19), but he also reproves (vv. 20-23) and exhorts (vv. 24-25). In all, Christ functions as an omniscient being who promises eternal life with God to the faithful victors, a maintenance strategy employed to maintain an unbroken relationship between Christ and community.

What social details are revealed in this letter? The religious metaphors employed as maintenance strategies suggest a culturally mixed context. The title "Son of God" would probably be more familiar in non-Jewish settings where persons either considered some past worthy a son of a god or goddess or in cultures (including Judaism) where the ruler was considered in some way a son of the national god.¹⁰⁷ The description of Christ's feet as a high quality metal might reflect knowledge of Thyatira, a city where the smelting industry was a major part of the economy. "Jezebel," the reference to fornication, eating meat offered to idols, and the expressions used in describing the punishment of the Jezebel-movement, however, have been correctly identified by many commentators as distinctly Jewish expressions. Their use strongly suggests that John's original audience understood this imagery and its punitive implications. Moreover, the Thyatiran church has two competing prophetic movements. John's is less accommodating to Graeco-Roman culture than Jezebel's. The central issue is probably whether and/or to what degree Christians should accommodate to Graeco-Roman culture (e.g., the imperial cult, trade guilds, eating meat offered to idols). John employs various maintenance techniques to persuade people to continue their Christian practices. These maintenance strategies are aimed at Graeco-Roman and Jewish persons, suggesting either attacks from both these groups or an ethnically mixed church in Thyatira, or both attacks from two sides and a mixed Christian congregation. In chapter one of this study, I argued that we should expect such social tensions in an eastern Mediterranean Roman province.

¹⁰⁵Krodel, 129. For a different position, see Caird (45-46).

¹⁰⁶Hughes, 52.

At the center of this conflict is the question of how best to witness in a larger non-Christian society, an issue we also noted in our discussion of 1 Peter (5.1-2). Religious laxity is a genuine issue, as several letters make plain, and it probably developed as a response to pagan and Jewish repression.\textsuperscript{108}

\textit{To Sardis (3.1-6)}

Again, we note that a letter in this series addresses an internal issue. In this case, it is the spiritual life of the congregation. Accommodation and laxity are the key elements in this debate.

The letter to Sardis describes Christ as the one who has complete authority over the spiritual representatives of the seven churches in Asia. Thus, this title asserts the complete cosmic lordship of Christ and would expect appropriate acknowledgement by the original audience.\textsuperscript{109}

Most commentators state that the titles of Christ in the letters come from the vision in Rev 1.9-20, but I have argued that they come from the entirety of Rev 1. This title is a perfect example in that "he who has the seven spirits of God" comes from Rev 1.4,\textsuperscript{110} not the vision in 1.9-20. The seven stars imagery comes from vv. 16 and 20. Thus, this title demonstrates the unity of Rev 1-3 as one series of interrelated visions. The introduction and salutation (1.1-8), the vision of the "one like a son of man" (1.9-20) and the seven letters (chaps. 2-3) comprise the first major section of the book.

The body of the letter begins forthrightly. "I know your works; that you have a name that you are alive, but you are dead." Sardis has traded on its name, not its works (v. 1). Kiddle correctly argues that this verse refers to spiritual life and death. Through the seven spirits, Christ has looked beyond their reputation to their deeds. They are exhorted in v. 2 to become alert and strengthen those areas of their spiritual life that are about to die, for their deeds fall far short of completion.\textsuperscript{111} Scholars argue that their fault was quiescence and accommodation in the presence of Jewish and Roman oppression.\textsuperscript{112} Others argue that Christ does not censure Sardis for its lack of action but for its pseudo-spirituality.\textsuperscript{113} Instead of the virtues of faith, love, service and patient endurance, commendable Thyatiran traits, the Christians in Sardis possess false piety and substandard religious morals.

\textsuperscript{109}Hemer notes that both this letter and the one to the Ephesians both mention Christ holding seven stars; both congregations have fallen; and both promise life (141).
\textsuperscript{110}Krodel correctly argues that this title forms an interlock with the next major section at 4.5 and 5.6 (130-31).
\textsuperscript{111}Several note how appropriate an exhortation to alertness would have been in Sardis, a city captured twice because its defenders were taken by surprise (e.g., Court, 36; Mounce, 110-11; Ladd, 56 and Morris, 75).
\textsuperscript{112}Kiddle, 44-45; cf. Caird, 47-48 and Ladd, 56.
\textsuperscript{113}Krodel, 131-32; Hughes, 53-54.
The first position espoused by Kiddie and others has merits that its exponents have failed to articulate. If quiescence and accommodation to Jewish and/or Gentile religious pressure has caused Sardis’s downfall, vv. 3-5 contain expressions which might substantiate that argument. In v. 3, Christ exhorts Sardis to "remember in what way you have received and heard...." What they have received and heard is most likely the Christian gospel. This verse may contain, therefore, an exhortation to not accept or tolerate Graeco-Roman religio-political practices in any manner. Conversely, those who have not "soiled their garments" (v. 4) could refer to persons who have not compromised their Christian beliefs. Thus, Christ's confession in v. 5 on behalf of the conquerors would have had a very powerful impact in Sardis. As they had confessed him on earth, he would confess them in heaven; if they have not, he would not (a form of maintenance). We have here a beautiful image of the Christ witnessing in the heavenly court concerning the fidelity of earthly beings. Normally, one expects the reverse: the human confession of faith in Christ on earth. It is noteworthy that Christ is the role-model for Christian conduct. This is a poignant means of maintaining the connection between Christ and community. The desired response from the reader would be one of increased love and devotion to this Lord, of whom one should bear witness, who witnesses for the faithful on earth in the heavenly court of justice. We must point out that the promise of Christ's confession is not fulfilled in Revelation. This differs from the promise of the white stone with the new name (2.17) which is partially fulfilled in 22.4. Christ's confession, therefore, probably is not a part of the theological interlocks of the vision, but a specific message to the church in Sardis which spoke to an actual issue in that Christian community: public Christian confessions of faith or the lack of same. This letter may contain another reference to a need for a more faithful witness in the greater society. If this hypothesis is correct, witnessing in a hostile setting is at the foundation of the conflict. Indeed, if this is not an issue in some way, why is it an issue for John at all?

On the other hand, because the letter lacks more explicit details, this reconstruction could possibly "over-interpret" the data. For this reason, the caution shown by Krodel and Hughes is warranted. As they argue, "works" and "name" in v. 1 could refer to their shallowness. If that interpretation is correct, then the phrase "for I have not found your works completed before God" (v. 2) would mean that their Christian efforts have been woefully inadequate. However, against this hypothesis, no data exist to support it. One could just as easily argue (correctly in my opinion) that inscription in the book of life and Christ's confession of their names in heaven actually constitute one promise to combat a laxness with regard to public confessions of faith by Christians in Sardis. Whatever the case, the church in Sardis receives a severe judgment from its Lord and an exhortation to witness more faithfully and completely.

At another level, this letter includes some of the most striking and well-coordinated images in the entire book. First, those who appear to be spiritually alive are actually spiritually
dead (v. 1). Christ expects them to keep the faith and repent or he will come "like a thief" to judge them. Two things are noteworthy here. First and foremost, the life/death imagery in vv. 2-3 is a means of sustaining the sacred cosmos, attempting to persuade Christians in Sardis to live up to their name and remain in communion with their Lord. Secondly, the thief-image continues that strategy by exhorting the church to adhere to Christ's command. This unexpected comparison of the messiah to a thief makes this image all the more striking. The reversal of expectations is a key motif in Revelation (e.g., 5.4-10). Another reversal appears in v. 4 where the "deserved names" who have not soiled their garments stand in contrast with the "undeserved name" of Sardis. The deserved names will walk with Christ in white garments "because they (i.e., the people, not the garments) are worthy" (vv. 4-5; cf. 6.9-11; 7.9 and 19.14). Those who deserve a name "shall never be stricken from the book of life" (v. 5). This promise is fulfilled in 20.11-15 (see also 13.8; 17.8; cf. Exod 32.32-33; Ps 69.28; Dan 7.10; 10.21; 12.1-2; Mal 3.16-18; Luke 10.20; Heb 12.23; Mart. Isa. 9.19-23). Those who deserve a name shall have their names confessed by Christ in heaven (v. 5). Several have noted a possible allusion to the Asian custom of striking a convicted criminal's name from the citizenship roll. Hemer correctly notes that the same technical term, ἐξαλειφω, is used. The use of this technical term demonstrates John's familiarity with the local setting and supports the argument that Rev 2-3 are genuine letters to real situations.

The color white also plays a key therapeutic role in this letter. The color white occurs 15 times in Revelation, more frequently than any other NT book. In every instance except 6.2, it has positive associations with the elect community (e.g., 7.9-14; 19.11, 14). Its function within this letter is to persuade the hearer/readers to remain within the sacred cosmos.

Central to this letter is the significance of "the name." We have noted this issue on earlier occasions in this study. The situation in Sardis appears to be slightly different. While in Pergamum Christians have withstood social pressures because of the name, the Christian community in Sardis has a reputation for religious faithfulness which it does not deserve. Christ says that it is better to have a name confessed in heaven, inscribed forever in the book of life (v. 5), than to have an outstanding reputation on earth which is not valid (v. 1). If the church in Sardis does not change, most of the names of its constituents will not be recorded in the book of life (cf. Rev 20. 11-15). Indeed, if they do not confess Christ's name on earth, Christ will not confess their names in heaven. For these reasons, I favor the interpretation that Christ censures them for their unchallenging and accommodating attitude toward local religio-political social

114 See similar imagery in Matt 24.43-44; Luke 12.39-40; 1 Thess 5.2-4; 2 Pet 3. 10 and Rev 16.15. For a discussion of the nuances involved, see also Moffatt, 448; Charles, Rev 1:80-81; Sweet, 100; Morris, 75-76. Moffatt (448) and Charles (Rev 1:80-81) insert Rev 16.5 between the two sentences in v. 3. Beasley-Murray (96-97) and Hemer (145-46) point out the weaknesses in their positions.

115 Hemer, 148-52; see also Moffatt, 365; Sweet, 100.
pressures. Christ also exhorts them to live up to their reputation. Since the issues are rather understated, the reader must possess a detailed knowledge of the situation and the issues to which the letter alludes. Nevertheless, the mixing of exhortation and condemnation serves as a powerful maintenance strategy to ensure proper, faithful Christian witnessing in Sardis.

To Philadelphia (3.7-13)
The letter to the Philadelphians begins with a title of Christ ("The Holy One, the True One, who has the key of David, who opens and no one will close, and closes and no one opens") that does not explicitly connect with Rev 1. Rather, it reflects Jewish traditions (e.g., Isa 22.22; 40.25; Hab 3.3) which John employs for this specific letter. Charles correctly notes the double epithet in Rev 3.7 and its similarity to those in 1 Enoch 1.3, 10.1, 14.1 and 84.1. Multiple epithets also play key roles in Revelation (e.g., 1.5, 8; 6.10 and 19.11). Charles states that v. 7 ascribes to Jesus the qualities "holy and true," which 6.10 ascribes to God Almighty. "Hence, δικαιότατος implies that God or Christ, as true, will fulfil His word." As in many other passages in Revelation, Christ shares God Almighty's powers and privileges. Secondly, the remainder of the title in v. 3.7 appears to paraphrase Isa 22.22 in the HB. Rev 1.18 might have influenced the seer to employ this quotation. On the other hand, the message itself might have brought the quotation to mind. Quite possibly, both Rev 1.18 and the situation might have jointly brought this passage from Isaiah to mind.

Kiddle argues that point-by-point the letters to Smyrna and Philadelphia are complementary. They should be read side-by-side. He identifies seven parallels. (1) Both confirm the faithfulness of each community. (2) Both communities must confront slanderous allegations from the synagogue. (3) Each church faces Roman persecution. (4) Each letter describes the Jewish opponents as satanic. (5) Christ promises spiritual security to both. (6) A final reward, in the form of a crown, awaits the faithful from each church. (7) Although both churches have socially inferior statuses, their lowliness actually enhances their spiritual statuses. Krodel accepts these observations but correctly stresses that though the two letters contain similar features, they have different emphases. While the letter to Smyrna focused upon political tensions, the one to Philadelphia discussed theological issues.

Morris, who also rejects Kiddle's position, states that a conflict with the Jews was not the central issue. "More probably it is admission to the city of David, the heavenly Jerusalem, that is in mind, and this Christ alone gives or withdraws." One might ask Morris how one might

---

116 Charles, Rev 1:86.
117 Kiddle, 48; cf. Ladd, 58-64; Mounce, 116; Wall, 84.
118 Krodel, 136-37.
119 Morris, 78.
engage in a dispute over entrance into "the city of David," a thoroughly Jewish concept and term, and not do so by engaging Jews? What other ethno-religious group would care enough to debate the subject seriously?

Similarly, Hemer finds no evidence of a Jewish community in Philadelphia. He states that "Jew" was an honorable title usurped by John's opponents. Against Hemer, who but Jewish persons would engage in such a debate and to whom but Jewish persons would "Jew" be an honorific term? The apologies of Artapanus, Philo, Josephus and other Jewish writers during the second temple period suggest strongly that "Jew" was something less than an honorific title.

This letter reflects a conflict between Christians and Jews. The latter half of v. 9 ("Look! I will make them bow down before your feet, and learn that I have loved you.") suggests that the struggle has been intense. The next verse contains a prophetic promise, a pledge aimed at keeping the Philadelphian church faithful and within the symbolic universe. In v. 10, John acknowledges the Philadelphians' endurance under Jewish pressure and he prophesies a worldwide conflict in the near future. However, he also foresees that Christ will protect them during these trials. References to present trials, visions of perceived future crises and a promise of protection from the Messiah (cf. 7.13-14; 14.1-3) and the employment of Jewish terms strongly suggest that Christians in this church are being repressed for their beliefs by Jewish persons.

The open door mentioned in v. 8 has caused an extensive debate among NT commentators. According to Moffatt, it refers to Christ himself. Moffatt reads this verse in light of Ign. Phld. 9.1 ("he was the door of the Father" [translation mine]) and John 10.7, 9 ("the door of the sheep"). Moffatt's interpretation has two weaknesses. First, Ignatius's letter may reflect only the fourth gospel and not Revelation, or alternatively Ignatius could be reading Revelation in light of the fourth gospel and not on its own terms. Even if the Gospel of John and the Revelation to John come from the same John, that would not preclude John from using the same image differently. Secondly, Revelation may not depend upon the fourth gospel tradition for this image.

Kiddle offers two other possible interpretations. The door may symbolize access to God either through martyrdom or through prayer. Several argue that the door symbolizes missionary opportunities. However, the letter does not develop either theme. Finally, Bousset argues that the door represents entry into the messianic age (see Isa 26.2 and 60.11). I agree with Bousset that the letter develops this vein of thought.

120Hemer, 159-64.
122Kiddle, 49-50.
123Ramsay, 404-05; Swete, 54; Charles, Rev 1:87; Caird, 51-52; Hemer, 162-65; Court, 38 and Hughes, 59.
124Bousset, 226-27.
The open door of v. 8 parallels the image of Christ opening and closing solely on his own discretion in v. 7. In v. 7, Christ possesses the authority to control who enters or cannot enter into the heavenly kingdom. In v. 8, Christ has chosen to admit the Philadelphians because "you kept my word and did not deny my name." Here again is a confirmation statement, a synonymous parallel. We note further the central issue is witnessing to Christ, as in previous letters (2.3, 13; 3.5; cf. 2.25; 3.10). Two expressions confirm this position. The first phrase, "you kept my word," is essentially the same as "(you) did not deny my name," connoting to the readers the correctness of their unswerving fidelity to Christ. We have already noted how the phrases "the word of God" and "the testimony of Jesus" function in the same manner in 1.2 and 1.9 (see similar expressions in 2.13, 6.9, 12.17, 14.12, and 20.4). Again, we note "the name" is a central concern, suggesting that Christians have suffered simply because of their religious affiliation.

The remainder of the letter supports my argument. Verses 9-10 contain three prophetic promises. The Philadelphians will be vindicated in front of their opponents (v. 9), delivered through their trials (v. 10), and protected in the coming age (v. 10). Although the synagogue closed its doors to the Christians (v. 9), Christ opens the door to eternal life that none can close (see vv. 9-10). Why does Christ make these promises? "Since you kept the word of my steadfastness, I will also keep (i.e., protect) you from the hour of testing that is about to come upon the entire world to test the earth's inhabitants" (v. 10). In other words, their past faithful witness has insured Christ's future protection (cf. Mark 13.14-23 and 2 Thess 2.1-12). The Philadelphians are exhorted to maintain their present level of faithfulness in order that they might sustain their place in the sacred community. Krodel states that this crown "is a metaphor for the redemption already achieved (cf. 1:5-6) in distinction from the future crown of 2:10." I concur completely. Christ will come soon, conveying to the hearer/reader that the trials from which he will protect them will come soon as well. This is a strategy intended to assure the Philadelphians of their ultimate reward in the next age and to motivate them to maintain their level of religious devotion in the present one. At the very least, these passages indicate a setting where Jewish repression has had negative effects for Christians, some of whom might have been tempted to become more open to other ways of being religious.

Verse 12 constitutes a single promise expressed in two ways. First, Christ promises that he will make the conqueror a pillar in God's temple which will never be removed from God's presence. This conveys to the hearer/reader that an eternal fellowship with God and his Christ

125 See Beckwith, 480; Beasley-Murray, 100; Mounce, 117-118; Krodel, 137-38; cf. Morris, 78.
126 One finds seven such "faith" confirmation statements in Revelation. This number may not be accidental.
128 Krodel, 139.
awaits the faithful. Christ expects a faithful response in both practice and belief. This promise reverses the earthly exclusion of the Christians from the synagogue with inclusion in heaven as a guarantee of permanence in the presence of God Almighty.

Secondly, Christ promises to provide a new name for the conquerors. In Ezek 9.4, God directs an angel to place a protective mark on the foreheads of the faithful so that they will be shielded from the coming catastrophe.\textsuperscript{129} Similarly, this sealing in Rev 3 protects the Philadelphians from eternal damnation. The reader would understand this new name to signify the legitimacy of the witness of the Philadelphian church on earth and that their witness has ensured their citizenship and entry into the gates (cf. vv. 7-8) of the New Jerusalem (see 22.4).\textsuperscript{130} The reader would also understand the sealing of the saints to be an act of God's salvific love. This letter attempts to encourage the reader to respond courageously and hopefully when pressed by Jewry concerning his/her religious affiliation. Both promises are strategies to maintain the Christian sacred cosmos.

The reader must possess a sound knowledge of Jewish Scripture and understand how characteristics formerly attributed to God Almighty have now been attributed to Christ, another example of Christ acting as God's agent in Revelation. Such a reader would understand that this theology would not be welcome in many Jewish circles. Therefore, the person who would make this claim about Jesus must be aware of the difficulties to be faced from Jewish persons. The promises would, then, attempt to enable the Christians in Philadelphia to look beyond the problems which their religious affiliation would cause to the promise of eternal fellowship with their Lord. This Lord holds the key of David, perhaps the key to the New Jerusalem, which determines who will or will not enter that city (cf. 13.8; 17.8).\textsuperscript{131} This is another example of the relationship between Christ and community in Revelation and the maintenance strategies employed to keep that relationship intact.

To Laodicea (3.14-22)
In the letter to the Laodiceans, the key intramural concern is not external pressure upon the church but the loss of religious zeal within it.

The title of Christ in this letter contains one unparallelled aspect in Revelation and another from Rev 1.5 (cf. 2.13). Christ identifies himself as "the Amen, the faithful and true witness" (cf. 19.11; 21.5; 22.6). The first expression, "the Amen," may reflect the influence of Isa 65.16, "the God of Amen," rendered "the true God" in the LXX (cf. NASB, NIV). Normally, "amen"

\textsuperscript{129}The sealing of the saints may be a transformation of the passover tradition found in Exod 11-12. If so, it is an example of the transformation of older traditions and would connote to the reader that the Christian community is on an eschatological exodus with its destination the New Jerusalem.

\textsuperscript{130}Cf. Mounce, 119-21; Krodel, 138-40; Beasley-Murray, 101-03.

\textsuperscript{131}Cf. Wall, 83.
denotes that which is authentic and obligatory. The Isaianic passage conveys God's faithfulness, reliability and trustworthiness. Thus, "the Amen" is defined by the words "the faithful and true witness." Faithfulness can refer to Christ's witness (1.5; 19.11) and to Antipas' witness (2.13). In all three instances, each witness has given his life for his religious convictions. One who bears witness in this same manner and has this same name will come as a Divine Warrior and eschatological judge in 19.11. In this way, John exhorts his readers to be willing to witness as Christ and Antipas have witnessed. The concluding titular phrase, "the first of God's creation," probably goes back to 1.5, too ("the first-born of the dead and the ruler of the kings of the earth").

Next, Christ addresses the spiritual state of the Laodicean church. Since they are neither hot nor cold, i.e., lax in their devotional life, Christ is about to spit them out of his mouth (vv. 15-16), excommunication imagery. Furthermore, although they describe themselves as materially affluent, they actually are spiritually miserable, pitiable, poor, blind and naked (v. 17). Krodel astutely notes the contrast with the Christians in Smyrna who are materially poor but spiritually rich and those in Laodicea for whom the reverse is true. He further notes an admonition which seeks a transformation by the hearer/reader. Poverty, blindness and nakedness allude to Laodicea's influential roles as a financial center, a noted center of ophthalmological research and an outstanding clothing industry. Christ exhorts the Laodicean Christians to purchase from him gold refined by fire so that they might acquire the spiritual goods and obtain spiritual affluence. These images, with clear local socio-historical references, communicate to the reader that spiritual prosperity comes only from Christ, the one who provides the true salve which enables them to live by heavenly standards and not earthly appearances, and who also provides the means to purchase the true garments of salvation which cover their shame. In love, Christ exhorts his church to live zealously and repent (v. 19; cf. Prov 3.11-12).

Sweet argues that v. 20 contains three "interlocking allusions." First is the allusion to the crisis of the final judgment (cf. Mark 13.29 and James 5.9). Next is the allusion to the synoptic bridegroom parables (Luke 12.35-48 and Matt 25.1-13). Finally, there is the allusion to the bridegroom of Cant 5.2 LXX. Sweet might be correct. However, the first two allusions might merely be current symbols and/or metaphors in first-century Judaism and Christianity conveying fellowship with God in the next age. This purpose would be to assure the Laodiceans

---

133 Hemer has an outstanding discussion of the neither hot-cold image and its referent in the locale (187-91).
134 On the affluence of Laodicea, see Hemer (193-96).
135 Krodel, 143.
136 Many have made this same point (e.g., Krodel, 144; Court, 40-41; Sweet, 100; Mounce, 126; cf. Hemer, 196-201).
137 Sweet, 109. See also p. 110.
that if they turn to Christ and from the world (vv. 18-19), that Christ will reward them for their obedience.

Exegetes are divided almost evenly on the question of whether or not the salvation offered in v. 20 is individual and present, or communal and eschatological. The first interpretation reads v. 20 in light of v. 19, connecting v. 20 with the call to repentance in the preceding verse.138 The eschatological interpretation reads v. 20 in light of the eschatological promise in v. 21 to reign with Christ at the end of time.139 In fact, vv. 19-21 have both individual and communal, present and future connotations and must be read as a unit. The "anyone" in v. 20 clearly has implications for the individual in the present as well as the future. If enough individuals come together, a community will exist, a fact which vv. 19-21 do not preclude. Verse 19 speaks of election, a communal concept in biblical times, and the idea of an elect people held present and future implications. While v. 21 speaks of one person sitting on the throne with Christ, it clearly has implications for "anyone" and everyone in the community. John would not have made the distinctions which his recent interpreters have made.

Finally, the promise to the victor (v. 21) continues the previously mentioned soteriological theme (v. 20) and assures the reader that as Christ conquered evil through suffering (cf. 1.5) so too could she/he. Again, we note that Christ is the role-model for Christian deportment. The throne symbolizes a royal honor, an honor which Christ will share with the faithful conquerors (see fulfillment in 20.4-6).140 Sharing Christ's throne is another example of the connection between Christ and community in Revelation. The purpose of this letter's maintenance strategy, the promise of co-regency, is to encourage the Laodiceans to follow Christ with their entire being and, in so doing, obtain spiritual goodness. As Christ conquered through suffering, so will they. As God shares his reign with Christ, God and Christ will share their reign with the victorious saints who witness faithfully to the word of God and the witness of Jesus. Again we note that witnessing is a central issue and that co-regency with Christ and/or God plays a key role in maintaining the sacred cosmos by relating Christ and community in Revelation. However, in this instance, the central concern is not local oppression but religious laxity.

A Summary of the Letters
First and foremost, the letters assume the lordship of Christ, the "one like a son of man," to give directions and to judge these communities. The letters are natural extensions of Rev 1.13-20. While 1.13-20 present the task, Rev 2-3 comprise the task itself. To study the letters in isolation from the call and commission of John, or vice versa, misses a vital part of the total vision.

138 E.g., Charles, Rev 1:100-01; Beasley-Murray, 107; Mounce, 129; Morris, 83; Ladd, 67-68.
139 E.g., Moffatt, 373; Beckwith, 491; Swete, 63-65; Kiddle, 60; Krodel, 145.
140 Cf. Mounce, 83-84.
Furthermore, the letters incorporate mythology, theology, therapy and nihilation as maintenance strategies in order to maintain a Christian sacred cosmos. The letters were written primarily to strengthen the inner spiritual lives of the churches. A faithful witness would bring co-regency as priest-kings in the new age. This promise, an exodus motif, is a maintenance strategy aimed at sustaining the union between Christ and community.

Mythology and theology are inseparable in Revelation. Both describe the connection between the divine and human realms, a key concern of this study. In Revelation, the mythological framework contains the theological message. First, as stated previously, every letter assumes the lordship of Christ. Christ is God's divine agency figure who sends God's message through John to the churches (1.9-20). He is the Son of God (2.18), possesses the Spirit of God (3.1), maintains a faithful and true witness to God and rules the universe (3.14). Christ, God Almighty's co-regent, stands at the apex of the cosmos. Christ has supra-human powers. He is omniscient, able to see past, present and future (e.g., 2.20-23). He judges and administers justice (e.g., 3.9-10, 19). Yet, Christ does not force anyone to repent (e.g., 3.20). As their Lord, Christ evaluates the behavior of the churches and applies different therapeutic strategies in order to correct different situations. He exhorts (e.g., 2.5, 7, 9-11, 12, 17, 19; 3.13, 18, 22), chastens and warns (e.g., 2.4-6, 14-16; 3.1-2, 15-17), praises (e.g., 2.2-3, 6, 13; 3.4, 8) and promises to save (2.7, 10, 11, 17, 26, 28; 3.5, 12, 21, 26-28; 3.5, 12-13, 21). His purview of the community is complete; his authority to act, unquestionable. Furthermore, the letters contain a promise of a co-regency in the New Jerusalem as priest-kings with Christ. Christ's life is the prototype for this promise (2.26-26; 3.21). Possibly, John understands God Almighty to share divine honors with Christ and Christ similarly shares authority with the faithful in the New Jerusalem.

Maintenance strategies were aimed at bolstering the faith of those Christians pressured by Jewry; on one hand, and local adherents to Graeco-Roman religious traditions, on the other, and to encourage others who had gone astray to return to the fold. Faithful Christian witnessing is the key issue in each letter and each letter expounds what form a faithful Christian witness should take in each context, whether facing Jewish or Graeco-Roman pressures.

Our sociological examination of the letters has indicated some other possible social details. First and foremost, our exegesis has demonstrated that six of the seven letters addressed issues internal to the church. The exception, the letter to Smyrna, speaks to Jewish oppression of Christians. It appears as though the Christians in Smyrna have been mis-represented to Roman authorities as a social menace and John anticipates the Christians's eventual imprisonment. In chapter 1 of this study, I argued that such actions by Jews during this period are intelligible given the religio-political context. Additionally, I argued that Roman political concerns and the indigenous religious traditions of the eastern Mediterranean would contribute to the repression of Christians.
by local inhabitants and Roman authorities. The reference to imprisonment might constitute an awareness of Roman attitudes, local religious suspicions and the religio-political reality of the situation (see 2.10).

This is a regional oppression of Christians by Jews and pagans. From the pagan side, it centers on the lack of participation by Christians in Graeco-Roman religio-political activities and practices, what Pliny and Trajan would call "obstinance"; Sherwin-White, "contumacy". The laxity identified in some of these settings could well be a response to pagan social pressures (e.g., 2.10, 13; 3.1-3, 15-17). More than once, the letters identify Jewish oppression as a cause for concern and appropriate witness (2.9; 3.9-10). From the Jewish perspective, Christians are polytheists because in Christian doctrine Christ shares divine honors with God Almighty. From the Christian perspective, it is a matter of remaining faithful to one's religion. Against pagans and Jews, the letters exhort Christians to remain faithful. This occurs in several ways. First, it occurs in the heart of the letters themselves (2.5, 10, 16, 24-25; 3.3-4, 10-11, 18-20). Secondly, it occurs through the promises to the victors (2.7, 11, 17, 26-28; 3.5, 12, 21). Finally, it occurs through the emphasis upon the significance of name. For example, Christ says to Ephesus "you have perseverance and have not become weary because of my name" (2.3); to Pergamum, "you hold fast to my name and did not deny my faith" (2.13); to Sardis, "I shall certainly never strike his name from the book of life and I shall confess his name before my father and before his angels" (3.5). These passages suggest that "Christ/Christian," or a similar form of identification of Christians, had become a social stigma. The first instance has a commendation for not denying one's convictions even in the face of oppression. The second is associated with the death of Antipas, a faithful witness. The third is an exhortation to those Christians who have not been as faithful as Christians in the preceding two instances. In each case, fidelity to the name is central. Finally, the letter to Pergamum is an example of a letter which addresses both pagan (2.13) and Jewish (2.14) threats to and/or attacks upon Christianity.

Moreover, John is a prophet in these communities, but his is not the only Christian movement in the region. Rival groups, the Balaam-Balak movement (2.14), the Nicolaitans (2.6, 15) and the Jezebel-movement (2.20-24) differ from John's. The letters give no clear, definitive information concerning the first two movements. John describes the Jezebel-movement as a prophetic movement and John saves his most extended comments for it. If the Balaam-Balak movement and the Nicolaitans are also prophetic movements, these seven churches would be accustomed to prophetic-apocalyptic preaching and the original recipients would be accustomed to this form of discourse. At the very least, this can be said for the Thyatiran Christians where

141 At some point, I hope to develop a more detailed study of the significance of name in Revelation.
two prophetic Christian movements compete for followers. It is interesting to note that Jezebel is not condemned for her gender but for her message.

If nothing else, the letter to Smyrna at once proves my points that the letters address internal problems and that Christians were oppressed in the region. The oppression in Smyrna is itself an internal problem that requires instruction from the Lord of the church (2.10-11). Moreover, if the Christians and the Jews saw themselves related in some way, they could understand their disputes to be internal to some degree. Secondly, it has shown that in three of the seven communities laxity, complacency, compromise and/or accommodation to Graeco-Roman religions are some key issues addressed in Pergamum, Sardis and Laodicea. Quite possibly, they respond to various forms of repression and pressures placed upon Christians to conform by Jews and pagans. There is no extant evidence that Christianity received a degree of social acceptance in the late first/early second centuries CE. In fact, the Roman sources which we examined in chapter 1 of this study indicate that the Christians received little to no social esteem during this period.

Previously, we noted five features associated with the human-like messiahs in 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra. We find these same features in Rev 2-3. First, the messiah introduced by means of a descriptive comparison in 1.13 and 14.14 is the sender of the letters in Rev 2-3. Secondly, the messiah functions as an eschatological judge (e.g., 2.5, 12, 14, 16, 18-19, 22-24; 3.1, 17; 14.14-16). Thirdly, the messiah gathers together an elect community by exhorting the Christians to hear the Spirit (e.g., 2.7, 17; 3.13, 22) and by promising blissful communal life in the New Jerusalem (e.g., 2.7, 10-11, 17; 3.12, 21). Fourthly, Christ makes war against the enemies of God (e.g., 2.6, 14-16, 20-23). Finally, there is an element of mystery associated with the messiah (e.g., 2.17). Rev 2-3 also shares christological features with other early Christian literature: (1) Christ has cosmic authority (e.g., 2.1; cf. John 1.1-3); possesses power over death (e.g., 2.7-11; cf. 1 Cor 15); is omniscient (e.g., 2.2, 18; cf. Mark 8.31 and 9.7); is a divine agency figure (e.g., 3.7; cf. Phil 2.5-11); provides salvific benefits for the human community (e.g., 2.18-23; cf. Heb 10.19-21). In sum, in Rev 2-3 Christ speaks as the Lord of the churches who instructs, commends, censures and promises in order to communicate to the churches what they must do in order to enter the New Jerusalem.

This chapter would be incomplete without an examination of the other "one like a son of man" passage in Rev 14.14-16.

C. Rev 14.14-16

Rev 14.14-16 is the second “one like a son of man” passage in Revelation. In it, the figure is transported via a cloud (see Dan 7.13 and 4 Ezra 13.3) and is harvesting the earth. Who is this being and what does the harvest symbolize?
Some argue that the figure on the cloud is Christ. For example, Prigent argues, “The person who appeared initially is clearly the same one from the inaugural vision (Ap 1,13): the same words are employed in both cases.” Agreeing with him, Lohmeyer concludes, “Therefore, any doubt about the identity of the figure here (in 14.14) and there (in 1.13) is indefensible.” Similarly, Mounce argues that the figures in 1.13 and 14.14 both depend upon Dan 7.13. The golden wreath, also worn by the 24 elders in Rev 4, singles out the “one like a son of man” as the messiah who has conquered and achieved judicial authority. The son of man’s use of the sickle symbolizes righteous retribution. Most who hold to this position also identify several NT passages where transportation on a cloud connotes Christ’s messianic glory.

Others argue that in 14.14 the “one like a son of man” is an angel. The determinative factor for this interpretation is the angel’s command to the figure on the cloud (14.15). They argue that it would be inconceivable for an angel to address the messiah in this manner. Morris adds that Revelation refers to “a son of man” and not the synoptic “the son of the man.”

The “one like a son of man” in Rev 14.14 is the messiah. Along with the arguments put forth above, I would add that the figure being transported on a cloud in Rev 1.7, the human-like figure standing among the lampstands in Rev 1.13 and the human-like figure being transported on a cloud in Rev 14.14 are all representations of the messiah which depend upon Dan 7.13. One finds a similar messianic representation in 4 Ezra 13.3. Moreover, the command in 14.15 comes from God Almighty in the temple, God's heavenly residence. The angel is merely a messenger. Furthermore, Revelation does not confuse angels and divine agency figures (see 19.10 and 22.8-9). To employ the same description to refer to Christ and an angel would confuse the matter unnecessarily. It is noteworthy that the being in 14.14 is not identified as an angel. Finally, against Morris, Revelation does not read “son of man” but “one like a son of man.” The use of these descriptive comparisons for heavenly beings has been discussed in chapter two of this study and will not be repeated here.

The human-like being on the cloud is the messiah, but are his actions positive or negative? Commentators usually take one of four positions to explain the harvesting of the earth. Many argue that the harvest symbolized the gathering of the saints in early Christianity (e.g., Matt 9.37). John has implied this in 14.4 by referring to the 144,000 as the “first fruits.” The song of Moses and the Lamb, a song of salvation (15.3-4), follows the harvesting. In addition, vv. 14-16 contain no references to God’s wrath or to a horrific judgment upon the unjust. All these details

---

142Prigent, 233; Lohmeyer, 127. See also Corsini, 267-75; Morris, 199; Mounce, 279; Schüssler Fiorenza, Revelation, 90; Wall, 187-88; cf. Giblin, 143.
143E.g., Kiddie, 284-95; Yarbro Collins, Apocalypse, 103-106; Morris, 178-79.
144Cf. Mounce, 279.
indicate that 14.14-16 relate the eschatological harvesting of the saints, while vv. 17-20 describe the punishment of the unjust.  

Another view holds that frequently John's symbols and images cannot be interpreted easily. Rev 14.14-20 would be one such passage. This passage incorporates Joel 3.13, a description of the punishment of a people for their wickedness. These commentators argue that vv. 14-16 do not refer to the saints, indicating one judgment upon God's enemies in vv. 14-20.  

A third view argues that vv. 14-16 and vv. 17-20 constitute two presentations of the same message. The one message would refer to the eschatological judgment of saint and sinner alike. The harvest would then include all human beings.  

A fourth approach argues that 14.14-20 comprises a prolepsis of 20.4-6, 11-15. The 144,000 are also the saints who reign with Christ for a millennium. They are not subject to the judgment in 14.14-20 or 20.11-15. Thus, the harvest in 14.14-16 and the vintage in 14.17-20 are for everyone except the followers of the Lamb. They come alive during the first resurrection.

I believe that Rev 14.14-20 contains two visions. Verses 14-16 describe the ingathering of the saints; vv. 17-20, the punishment of the enemies of God. While vv. 17-20 use language which in Revelation conveys the punishment of the enemies of God (14:19: τὴν ληφθῇ τὸν θυμὸν τὸν θεοῦ; cf. 14:10: τὸν ὀλίβου τὸν θυμὸν τὸν θεοῦ . . . τῆς θρησκείας αὐτοῦ; 19:15: τὴν ληφθῇ τὸν ὀλίβου τὸν θυμὸν τῆς θρησκείας τοῦ θεοῦ), it is noteworthy that vv. 14-16 contain none of this language but employ harvest language as an image of salvation for the saints, a practice consistent with other NT witnesses (see Matt 9.37; Mark 4.26-29; Luke 10.1-12, esp. v. 2; John 4.38). Furthermore, the LXX rarely uses θειοκτίω or θειοκτισμός to connote judgment against the unjust (e.g., Isa 63.1-6 LXX). Rev 14.14-16 is a prolepsis of 20.4-6, 11-15, the ingathering of the elect community of saints, a messianic function in Revelation that also is found in 1 Enoch 48.4 and 4 Ezra 13.12-13. Moreover, the preceding exegeses have demonstrated that the overall function of the "one like a son of man" passages has been the pastoral oversight and care of the churches so that they might obtain an eternal fellowship with God and Christ in the new age. In keeping with that role, 14.14-16 contains a proleptic vision of the eschatological ingathering of the saints.
D. Conclusion to Part I

Part I has identified several common features among Ezekiel, Daniel, 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra and Revelation which have been only partially noted previously. Especially in 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra and Revelation, the principal purpose of these features is to maintain the spiritual well-being of the community addressed by the individual books. This has been demonstrated in several ways.

1. Chapter 2 examined the "one like a son of man" of Dan 7.13, concluding that Ezekiel's use of descriptive comparisons to describe heavenly beings in human-likeness was the source for Daniel's descriptions of God and angels in Dan 7-12 in human-likeness. Chapter 3 examined the exegesis of Dan 7.13 in Jewish and Christian pseudepigraphical writings roughly contemporaneous with Revelation (1 Enoch 37-71, 4 Ezra 13, ApAb 10 and Mart. Isa. 4) and discovered that the first three interpret Dan 7.13 by using descriptive comparisons, i.e., describe heavenly beings in human-likeness. While 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra describe the messiah, the Apocalypse of Abraham and the Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah describe angels. While the functions of these beings so described showed a degree of variety, five features common to 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra were identified: (1) the use of descriptive comparisons in presenting the messiah; (2) the messiah as judge; (3) the messiah as one who gathers a community to himself; (4) the messiah who makes war against the enemies of God; (5) the messiah as one surrounded by an element of mystery. Subsequent study in chapters three and four of this study revealed these same features in Rev 1-3 and 14.14-16, along with others held in common with each individual writing. The additional messianic features unique to Revelation were identified as distinctively Christian elements.

2. Chapter 3 also demonstrated that in Rev 1.1-8 Christ became for John the author and guarantor of the vision, a role formerly held by God Almighty in Jewish apocalypses. We also noted other ways that Christ participates in divine honors with God Almighty. Christ has received these honors because he has died for human sin and has faithfully re-presented through his witness the will of God. In this manner, Christ has provided a model for Christian witnessing in the Roman province of Asia. Rev 1.1-8 attempt to elicit a faithful response from the readers/hearers of the book which is consistent with the word of God. Christ, through his prophet John, exhorts them to be true to their calling and to remain firm in their faithful witness, even unto death (2.5, 10, 13, 25; 3.2-3, 8, 18).

3. Rev 1.9-20 reports the calling and commissioning of John to write to the seven churches in Asia. These passages accomplish four things. First, they establish Christ's role as the Lord of the churches, one who has the authority to direct human behavior within the churches. Secondly, they establish John as Christ's authentic spokesman over against John's
opponents. Both Christ and John have suffered for their witnesses (e.g., 1.5-7, 9) and Christ is a role-model for John. John might be attempting to convey to his readers that his life best emulates the life of Christ. Thirdly, Christ is not only lord of the churches but lord of the universe and human history as well. His authority is comprehensive (1.13-20). Fourthly, Christ is the one who will redeem the saints and lead them in the New Jerusalem (e.g., 2.7, 10-11, 17; 14.14-16; cf. 20.4-6). These passages are maintenance strategies aimed at convincing the readers to listen to prophets like John who proclaim Christ's message among them. The book of Revelation assumes that the churches knew whom those prophets were.

4. Christ is the messiah described in human-likeness (v. 13) who authorizes the seven letters and gathers, protects and leads the faithful at the eschaton (e.g., 3.12, 21; 14.14-16; cf. 7.13-17). The titles in six of the seven letters explicitly refer back to Rev 1 where Christ's authority has been established as lord of these churches (vv. 1-3, 5, 7, 11, 17b-20). Christ performs many of the same messianic functions we have noted in 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra. First, he judges these churches (e.g., 2.5, 12, 14, 16, 18-19, 22-24; 3.1, 17). Secondly, he gathers together the churches through his exhortations to all the churches to hear the Spirit (e.g., 2.7, 17; 3.13, 22), through his promises to the conquerors (e.g., 2.7, 10-11, 17; 3.12, 21) and through his harvesting the saints in the end-time (14.14-16), constituting an elect Christian community. Thirdly, he makes war against his enemies (e.g., 2.6, 14-16, 20-23; cf. 14.17-20) and, fourthly, possesses an element of mystery (2.17). Finally, the author employs a descriptive comparison to present the messiah (1.13; 14.14). Thus, we have noted the same five common features in Rev 1-3 and 14.14-16 which we found between 1 Enoch 37-71 and 4 Ezra 13.

Rev 2-3 also has other messianic features peculiar to it. The messiah has cosmic authority (2.1; 3.1; cf. John 1.1-3); power over death (2.7-11; John 11.28-44); is an omniscient being (e.g., 2.2, 18; cf. John 22.23-25; Matt 21.23-27) who participates in divine honors (cf. 3.7 and 6.10; cf. Phil 2.5-11) and holds the keys to salvation (e.g., 3.5, 9-10, 12; cf. John 6.22-33) or damnation in his hands (e.g., 2.18-23; cf. John 14.6-7). Again, the features peculiar to Revelation were central elements of early Christian preaching.

5. The "one like a son of man" christology relates directly to the saints' priestly co-regency with Christ (2.26-28; 3.21), establishing through the promises, for all who remain faithful to the Christian witness, an unbroken link between Christ and community. The promises are the primary means through which the churches remain in the symbolic universe and sustain the union between Christ and community in Revelation. Priest-kingship, the basic means of maintaining the union, is an eschatological exodus motif which goes back to Exod 19.16.

150 The fullest christological expression of making war is found in Rev 19.11-21, the focus of chapter six of this study.
These observations provide valuable information concerning the book’s readership and the social setting of the Christian communities. First, the reader understands second temple Judaism in general and its messianic expectations in particular, as well as the distinctive content of early Christian witnessing. One merely familiar with Judaism or with Christianity would not have been able to understand all the allusions. Secondly, the reader is open to the possibility of God revealing Godself and/or God’s will to human seers. Such a reader need not be a seer but must believe that seers exist who faithfully proclaim God’s word. Thirdly, the reader expects a vision detailing Christ’s imminent second coming as the messiah of the world. The community hopes that Christ’s parousia will soon end their trials (1.3). Fourthly, a basic issue, if not the basic one, is who is the ‘True Israel.’ Christians argue that they are the True Israel but more traditional Jewish persons disagree. Jewish persons also have mis-represented Christian doctrine to pagans (2.9; 3.9), causing Christians problems in the larger society (cf. 1 Pet 4.12-5.11). Fifthly, these churches are also oppressed by local residents who probably resent the Christians for not participating in their religious activities. It is possible that more traditional Jews have misrepresented the Christians’ beliefs and practices, identified Christians as a social threat (cf. Pliny, Letter 10), leading to the imprisonment of some Christians and the death of Antipas (e.g., 2.9-11, 13; 3.8-11). As noted previously, the significance of remaining faithful to the name indicates “Christ/Christian” had probably attained some form of public derision. Tensions between Christians and non-Christians on this issue are aspects of the social context in which John ministers. Thus, being faithful to the name was stressed as a primary witness and means of strengthening the bond between Christ and community. Finally, several competing movements vie for followers in these churches. At least two are prophetic movements. If the Balaam/Balak movement and the Nicolaitans are also prophetic, the Christians in Roman Asia would have been accustomed to prophetic-apocalyptic preaching. They would have attained a familiarity with its means of expression and would have been able to interpret apocalyptic visions. In any event, Revelation itself presupposes such a setting.

The letters also provide evidence of religious laxity and/or accommodation by some Christians. The hoped for response would be repentance where it is needed and continued faithfulness among the faithful. John employs mythology, theology, therapy and nihilation to achieve his ends. Within this setting, Christians experienced Jewish and Graeco-Roman oppression. The letters reflect the different responses that Christians in Asia gave to the socio-religio-political pressures of their day. Religious laxity became an option for some Asian Christians. For others like John, however, the only true mode of Christian deportment was a total rejection of non-Christian religio-political customs.

What is the cosmology implicit in Revelation 1.1-3.22 and 14.14-16? In brief, Christ is the Lord of the universe (i.e., heaven, earth and hades) who has come as Jesus, who now speaks
through John and will come at the end of time to protect the faithful and condemn the wicked. His primary concern is the *internal spiritual welfare* of the Christian community in order that the community might remain in accord with its Lord and be spiritually strong enough to withstand the envisioned apocalyptic trials which comprise Rev 4-19. All people will see him as he comes to save his elect community and condemn the rest to the second death, imagery which suggests that Christians have experienced public humiliation.

What modes of behavior would this one-like-a-son-of-man christology advance? It would make it easier for these Christians to accept their suppression as a natural consequence of witnessing faithfully in a hostile world. This would not be a docile acceptance but would require a great deal of religious commitment and inner spiritual strength. "Faith" for these persons would not be a belief or doctrine, but the essence of their very existence. Moreover, the very medium itself would make the life of a practicing visionary and/or prophetic figure a live option for some persons. At the very least, one would be more open to prophetic messages and visions as a way of being religious.
PART II: THE LAMB AND THE DIVINE WARRIOR

CHAPTER 5:
THE CHRIST AS THE LAMB

This chapter will examine the role and function of the slain Lamb as a major, if not the major, christological image employed in Revelation. The exegetical discussions which follow will demonstrate that the most prominent christological functions center around the Lamb as the communal leader and role model whose sacrificial death provides many positive benefits for Asian Christians.\(^1\) An important benefit is priesthood and co-regency with Christ and/or God Almighty in the New Jerusalem, a key aspect of Revelation's understanding of the connection between Christ and community and also a major maintenance strategy in Revelation. In so doing, Revelation employs an eschatological exodus motif to portray the followers of the Lamb as the new people of God.\(^2\) The eschatological exodus motif probably derives from Exod 19.6: "You will be for me a kingdom of priests and a holy nation" (NIV).

A. The Lamb as a Symbol

The Lamb-symbol is the most pervasive means of transmitting the christological message of the book of Revelation. Several other writers have also begun with Revelation's symbols and images and come to similar conclusions.\(^3\) Those who employ this approach work with the understanding that the Lamb is Revelation's central christological image which controls and interprets the other major themes. Laws, for example, states that the Lamb interacts with two other major christological images: the son of man (1.12-18) and the rider on the white horse (19.11-16). Laws identifies three common elements between the son of man image and the Lamb images: (1) both are messianic images; (2) both understand Christ "in terms of the character of God" (p. 26); (3) both the christological images relate specifically to the historical Jesus, especially the crucifixion and resurrection.

The rider on the white horse shares the first two elements. However, with the rider the emphasis shifts from the present to the future where judgment and victory will

---


\(^2\) I am indebted to Prof. H. W. Attridge for initially bringing this motif to my attention (Revelation seminar, SMU, summer 1978) and to the Revd. John Sweet of Cambridge University for reminding me of it in private conversation. See also Bauckham, *Theology*, 70-72.

become complete and thus this image does not display the same concern to relate specifically to the historical Jesus.

I concur with Laws for the following reasons. First, this approach recognizes that in Revelation one encounters christological images as well as christological titles and that the former are as important as the latter. This is so because Revelation is primarily a book of visions. Secondly, this approach perceives the relationship and common elements among the three major christological images. This current study will identify more common elements. Finally, the emphasis upon images, not titles, is important because images have the ability, more than titles, to grip the imagination and to re-present a message succinctly. Images are symbols which enable a reader or a hearer to appropriate a message quickly, both cognitively and emotively. Our discussion now turns to the different strands of Judaism which contributed to the Lamb-imagery in Revelation.

B. The Jewish Background

The Greek word δρακόν appears 29 times in 27 verses in Revelation. All but one appearance (13.11, which refers to the beast from the sea) refer to the Christ-Lamb figure. The Lamb as a christological image in Revelation has several similarities with other NT books (cf. John 1.29, 36; Acts 8.32-35; 1 Cor 5.7; 1 Pet 1.19).

However, some have argued that the Lamb in Revelation comes primarily from Jewish apocalyptic traditions rather than early Christian usage. In 1 Enoch 90.9 horned lambs represent the Maccabees and in 90.37 their leader is portrayed as a white bull with horns. However, these horned lambs are not messianic figures. In T. Jos. 19.8-9, a lamb, as a messianic figure, destroys the enemies of Israel. Revelation incorporates this latter motif more than the former and adds the Christian witness of faith (cf. John 1.29-34; 1 Pet 1.17-21), the Lamb who conquers through suffering, a motif that is noticeably absent from the passages in 1 Enoch and the Testament of Joseph.

Others have argued that the names and/or titles bestowed upon Jesus provide the key to understanding the christology of Revelation. Following Charles, Mounce argues that the name "the Lamb" derives from a merger of the traditions which portray the Lamb as victim and the Lamb as leader. The latter has been mentioned in the discussion of

---

45.6, 8, 12, 13; 6.1, 16; 7.9, 10, 14, 17; 12.11; 13.8, 11; 14.1, 4, 10; 15.3; 17.14; 19.7, 9; 21.9, 14, 22, 23, 27; 22.1, 3. See also, C. K. Barrett, "The Lamb of God," NTS 1 (1954-55) 210-18.
5E.g., B. Lindars, "A Bull, a Lamb and a Word: 1 Enoch 90:33," NTS 22 (1975-76) 483-86; Charles, Rev 1:141; Lohmeyer, 54-55; Beasley-Murray, 124-25; Mounce, 145 and Christology; D. Guthrie, "The Lamb in the Structure of the Book of Revelation," Vox Evangelica 12 (1981) 64-71, esp. 64, n. 7. For other positions, see Swete (76) and Moffatt (44).
I Enoch and the Testament of Joseph. While not totally disagreeing, I believe that "the Lamb" is more than a name or a title but is an image, a representational symbol of something greater than what it might normally represent. While a name/title carries with it definition, an image/symbol conveys definition and a pictorial concept of that which is defined. Symbols and images have the power to affect both cognition and emotion.

A final position espouses that the Lamb must be understood primarily as the focus of Christian worship. Ellul, for example, argues that the preponderance of Lamb-passages occurs in worship contexts and that this fact reflects the importance of the Lamb to the worshipping community to which the apocalypse was sent. Guthrie also sees the significance of the Lamb in worship settings and emphasizes the victory through sacrifice and suffering motif associated with the Lamb. Further, he notes other significant christological roles played by the Lamb in Revelation (eschatological judge, shepherd, redeemer figure, divine warrior, co-regent with God).

Ellul and Guthrie have made some important contributions to this topic, in particular the emphasis upon the Lamb as an important symbol of victory through suffering. They are also sensitive to the other roles attributed to the Lamb in Revelation. Furthermore, they correctly note the important cultic role of the Lamb. On the other hand, they have not recognized how other christological images have contributed to the concept of the Lamb. The present chapter will demonstrate how the "one like a son of man" image has contributed to John's image of the Lamb.

As helpful as all these discussions are, only the position espoused by Laws and others correctly recognizes the shift from one image/symbol to another and thus helps the modern reader to ascertain something of the nuances and messages sent to the original readers. The christological images gave the original readers something with which to relate their own experiences in a meaningful way, i.e., John has chosen particular images that have achieved a certain degree of meaning because of the experience of Asian Christians. What was that meaning and how did John employ and/or modify traditions?

The HB contains approximately 400 references to rams, sheep and lambs. The terms used most frequently are ἁμάρτωλον ("sheep," 114 times); Ἠμ ("ram," 106 times) and ἐρικ, ("sheep," 100 times). The passages can be divided easily into two categories: (1) generic references to these pastoral creatures and (2) sacrificial references to religious offerings. Neither category has messianic dimensions (e.g., Gen 30.32; Deut 32.14; Job 31.20; Ps 114.4, 6; Prov 27.26; Isa 5.17; 11.6; 40.11 and 65.25).

---

8 On the different types of symbols, see chapter 1, this study.
The sacrificial references contain theological dimensions, but the rams, sheep, and lambs do not cease being rams, sheep and lambs. Rather, they take on the additional role as an expiation for human sin (e.g., Exod 12.5; Lev 1.10; 1 Chr 29.21; Isa 1.11 and 34.6). NT writers found the sacrificial elements appropriate to explain the role and mission of Jesus, an unprecedented development. The concept of a sacrificial lamb as an expiation for sin is an exodus motif, relates directly to the passover lamb in Exodus and served as an aspect of the Christian concept of Jesus as a sacrificial lamb. 11

Extant second temple Jewish literature in general exhibits the same two categories, the generic and the sacrificial, without any hint of messianic implications. 'Apvlov appears four times in the LXX in Ps 113.4 and 6 (114.4 and 6 in HB) for πᾶς and also in Jer 11.19 for ἔλαφος and additionally in Jer 27.45. In each instance, dpvlov has no messianic role. In the Apocrypha/Deuterocanonical writings, dpvlov is found in Sir 46.16 and 47.3; the Pr Azar 17 (also known as Dan 3.39 LXX) and 1 Esdr 6.28 (v. 29 in REB and NRSV), 7.7, 8.14 and 8.63 (8.66 in REB, NRSV). None of these passages has messianic features. For example, Sir 46.16 reads, “And he called upon the Sovereign Lord, when his enemies pressured (him) on all sides, by sacrificing a suckling lamb.” This passage clearly falls within the sacrificial category, as do Pr Azar 17 and all the passages from 1 Esdras. Only Sir 46.16 has a solely generic, non-sacrificial context. 'Apvlov functions similarly in the Pseudepigrapha. Three (Sib. Or. 3.578; 3.626 and 5.354) of the four (T.Gad 1.7) occurrences relate to animal sacrifice. Flavius Josephus, a Jewish apologist and contemporary of John the Seer, uses κριάς and dpvlov in sacrificial contexts similar to those mentioned above and distinguishes between the adult sheep (κριάς) and the less than full-grown lamb (dpvlov). 12 It appears that by the middle of the first Christian century dpvlov was used more and more by Jewish writers to refer to sacrificial animals. 13

The Lamb in Revelation has developed from different traditions in Judaism. From Jewish apocalyptic traditions, it gained the concept of the messianic warrior-lamb. The sacrificial lamb has its roots in Exodus and the sacrificial system of Israel. The crucifixion and exaltation of Jesus provided a final element: victory through suffering.

11 Many Christian writers have claimed that Isa 52.13-53.13, one of the Servant Songs, predicts and/or anticipates the role of Jesus as a sacrificial lamb. For a balanced discussion of the issues surrounding the Servant Songs of Deutero-Isaiah, see J. L. McKenzie, Second Isaiah (AB 20; Garden City: Doubleday, 1968), pp. XXXVIII-LV.

12 Jewish Antiquities 3.221 and 3.251. Compare the use of the same two terms in Dan 3.39; 1 Esdr 6.28; 7.7; 8.14, 63 in the LXX.

C. The Lamb in Revelation

Although δρυλος appears 29 times in Revelation, it occurs in only 12 contexts:

1. 5.6-14;
2. 6.1-17;
3. 7.9-8.1;
4. 12.7-12;
5. 13.8;
6. 13.11;
7. 14.1-5;
8. 14.10;
9. 15.3-4;
10. 17.14;
11. 19.7-9;
12. 21.9-22.5.

It is no surprise to find parallels between the Christ-as-one-like-a-son-of-man and the Christ-as-Lamb. First, God Almighty shares divine honors with the Lamb and the Lamb possesses the seven spirits of God (5.6; cf. 1.2 and 3.1). God and the Lamb receive adoration jointly and function together (e.g., 5.13; 6.16-17; 7.9; 14.1; 21.22-25; 22.1, 3). Secondly, the Lamb’s blood is salvific and is the basis for his worthiness (e.g., 5.9-10; 7.14-15; 12.11; 14.1-4; cf. 1.5-6). Thirdly, the book of life is under the purview of the Lamb (e.g., 13.8; 14.1; 21.26-27; 22.1; cf. 2.11; 3.5). Fourthly, the Lamb gathers to himself an elect community (e.g., 7.9-17; 14.1-4; 17.14; 21.9-22.5; cf. 1.6; 1.11, 19-20). Fifthly, as God has given the revelation to Christ (1.1) and as each letter in Rev 2-3 contains a revelatory element in it, so too the breaking of the first six seals in Rev 6 reveals God’s plans for humanity. Finally, the Lion/Lamb scene reverses expectations by replacing the mighty Lion with the slain Lamb. In addition, this scene places Christian suffering within the wider context of God’s overall plan for creation.

These are but the similarities between the two christological metaphors; they demonstrate the intrinsic unity of the book as a whole and point toward its consistent christology. However, John develops the Lamb imagery extensively and creatively. Let us now examine the key passages in more detail.

I. 5.6-14

a. Introduction

Any examination of the introduction of the Lamb in Rev 5.6 must begin with Rev 4.1 and continue to Rev 5.5. Rev 4 and 5, one of the most significant visions of Revelation, relate directly to each other and introduce the major apocalyptic sections (6.1-22.5). The setting in these two chapters moves from heaven to earth.

Although Rev 4 and 5 provide the hermeneutical key to the remainder of the book, these chapters constitute a vision in its own right by assuring its readers that God's purpose for the universe will indeed transpire, and by asserting that the God of creation is also the God of redemption. This redemption is for the entire human community and comes not through military and/or political might but through humility, through a Lamb who has been slain. While Rev 4 focuses attention upon him who sits upon the throne (v. 3), chapter 5 shifts the focus to the Redeemer who has "conquered," is worthy to receive the book and, in so doing, inaugurates God's plan for humankind. The vision ends with all creation praising both God and the Lamb.

Rev 5 is an enthronement scene. The Lamb is exalted to God's throne over the universe, the new domain of the Lamb. The Lamb's exaltation actually began with the crucifixion. Beasley-Murray correctly notes three movements from the exaltation of the Lamb (v. 5); to the presentation of the Lamb; to the enthronement of the Lamb (v. 7). He also notes a progression in praise from the four creatures and the 24 elders (vv. 8-10); to myriads of angels (vv. 11-12) and, finally, to the entire creation (vv. 13-14). The events in heaven are in the past, while those on earth are in the future.

b. Exegesis

Rev 5 begins with the introduction of the scroll with seven seals (v. 1). A search ensues for someone worthy (διὸς) to open the scroll's seals and inaugurate God's plan for the world (v. 2), but no one is found worthy in all creation (v. 3). John weeps. One of the 24 elders (see 4.4) comforts John, saying, "Do not cry; look, the lion of the tribe of Judah, the root of David (see Rev 22.16; cf. T. Judah 24; 4 Ezra 11-12), has conquered in order to open the scroll and its seven seals" (v. 5). 4 Ezra 11 and 12 also employ the lion

15Cf. Beasley-Murray, 108; Krodel, 152; Sweet, 131-32; Mounce, 131.
17For a slightly different argument, see Prigent (102-03).
18Cf. Krodel, 149-50; Beasley-Murray, 110.
19Beasley-Murray, 110-11. As a small corrective to Beasley-Murray, the praise on earth begins and ends in 5.13. Rev 5.14 contains the concluding praise of the four creatures and 24 elders in heaven. This establishes an inclusio between 4.4 and 5.14.
as a symbol of the messiah. Thus, both 4 Ezra and Revelation independently attest to this messianic symbol and the expectation in some Jewish quarters for a conquering messiah (υἱὸς δυνατός in v. 5; cf. 2.6, 11, 17, 26; 3.5, 12, 21; cf. I QM 1, 15-19). However, in light of the Easter experience, this expectation has been turned on its head. The messiah is not a conquering lion but a conquered Lamb. "And I saw between the throne and the four living creatures, on one side, and the elders, on the other, a Lamb standing like it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes that are the seven spirits of God sent into all the earth" (v. 6; cf. 1.4, 12; 3.1). This is the prime example of the reversal of the expectations mentioned previously. The messiah is not a conqueror but the conquered. However, this is part of God's plan and leads to victory through suffering, an important motif in Revelation. In order to conquer through suffering, one must first suffer. This image strongly suggests that Asian Christians were oppressed and needed to make sense of their plight.

The seven horns should probably be viewed separately from the seven eyes. If so, the seven horns would symbolize complete power, usually royal power (e.g., Num 23.22; Deut 33.17; Ps 18.2; 112.9; Dan 7.7, 20; 8.3; 1 Enoch 90.12-13 and Rev 12.3; 13.1, 11; 17.3, 7, 12, 16). The seven eyes represent the Lamb's complete omniscience (1.4; cf. Zech 3.8-10 and 4.10).

Rev 5.7-8 brings a transition. The Lamb takes the scroll from the right hand of him who sits on the throne (v. 7) and this action actualizes Rev 1.1 where the Christ becomes the authenticating revelatory figure. It also inaugurates three acts of praise directed toward the Lamb. It should be noted that prayers are offered to the Lamb in v. 8, a practice normally reserved for God. These three acts of adoration reveal a good deal of information about the christology of the book of Revelation.

The first act of praise (vv. 9-10) is described as "a new song" (cf. Ps 33.3; 144.9). This song describes the reasons why the Lamb is worthy to open the scroll:
"for you were slain and redeemed (persons) to God from every tribe, tongue, people and race with your blood." (v. 9). As with the one-like-a-son-of-man christology, it is Christ's sacrifice which exalts him to the status of God's eschatological agent (5.9; cf. 1.5). Rev 5.10 follows with the same ideas which follow the reference to Christ's sacrifice in 1.5: "and you made them a kingdom and priests to our God and they will reign on the earth" (5.10); "And he made us a kingdom, priests to his God and father" (1.6; cf. 20.6). The ideas of Christ's sacrifice, God's kingdom, co-regency with God and/or Christ and human priesthood are inseparable for Revelation. Christ's sacrifice creates the kingdom of God wherein every person would be a priest with direct access to God, fulfilling the promise in Exod 19.6.28 Revelation describes an intimate and close fellowship between God and the Asian churches. This possibility would provide spiritual assurance, comfort and encouragement to the real readers/hearers. This imagery suggests a context where Christians need some assurances of their salvation. John would use another image, perhaps Christ as judge, if religious laxity were an issue here (cf. 2.16). However, such is not the case. Roles often bestowed upon messianic figures in early Judaism are here given to the followers of the messiah to assure them of their salvation (e.g., Zech 4.3, 11-14; IQS 9.8-11; T. Judah 24; T. Dan 5.10-13; cf. Rev 2.26-27; 20.4; 22.5).29

The hymn in vv. 9-10 parallels a similar one to God Almighty in 4.11. Both begin with the words "δόξα ἐστίν."30 While the hymn in 4.11 celebrates the worthiness of the Creator, the one in 5.9-10 celebrates the worthiness of the Redeemer-Lamb. The new song in 5.9-10 which ushers in a new era also parallels the new name (2.17; 3.12), the new Jerusalem (3.12; 21.2), the other new song (14.3), the new heaven and new earth (21.1) and God's proclamation to make all things new (21.5).31 New things connote salvation and restoration in Revelation, a point noted earlier in this study. Those who sing new songs, receive new names and inhabit the New Jerusalem will experience a new quality of life free from death, illness and grief in the new age (Rev 20.1-22.5).

The second act of praise to the Lamb begins in v. 11 and concludes in the next verse. This act of praise begins with "δόξα ἔστω." This is a variation on 4.11 and 5.9, but the content of the praise is similar to the praise offered to God in 4.11. Rev 4.11 reads,

28Cf. Ladd (92-93) and Sweet (129).
29Mounce comes to similar conclusions (148-49).
30The expression "Worthy are you" may have had a role in the imperial cult (see, e.g., Krodel, 167). For a contrasting view, see Thompson, 95-115.
31Prigent writes, "Le grand moment du renouvellement attendu est venu avec le Christ" (101); cf. Hughes, 82.
"Worthy are you, our Lord and God, to receive the glory and the honor and the power, for you created all things, and by your will they came into being and were created."

Rev 5.12 reads,

"Worthy is the Lamb who has been slain to receive the power and riches and wisdom and might and honor and glory and blessing."

The Lamb receives seven attributes, or predicates, symbolic of his perfection, while God Almighty only received three in 4.11. However, one should not place too much weight on those numbers and deduce that the Lamb is the superior figure. Rather, John probably has intentionally overemphasized the participation of the Lamb in divine honors.

Many argue that the presence of the article before the first noun in 5.12 indicates that the seven predicates should be taken together as a unit. However, this argument ignores those ascriptions to God and Christ in Revelation which have more than one article (e.g., 4.11 and 5.13). How are they to be taken? In fact, there is little difference. Morris suggests, correctly in my opinion, that in some cases each attribute has its own article probably to give more emphasis to them individually. The first four predicates (power, riches, wisdom and strength) are qualities the Lamb possesses and relate directly to his praiseworthiness. The final three (honor, glory and blessing) constitute the nature of praise offered to the Lamb by angels and humans as an appropriate expression (cf. 1 Chr 29.10).

The third song of praise (5.13) brings the praise to a fitting conclusion in three ways. First, we note the increasing numbers from the four creatures and 24 elders (vv. 9-10), to the angelic host (vv. 11-12), to all creation (v. 13). Secondly, v. 13 refers to all creation and thus actualizes the reference to every tribe, language, people and race in v. 9. Thirdly, the third hymn is a fitting conclusion for it praises both God Almighty and the Lamb together for the first time in Revelation. These two chapters have molded

32 Lohmeyer correctly notes that this second hymn is in the third person while the first (vv. 9-10) was more in the second (57; cf. Beasley-Murray, 128).
33 Cf. 7.12 where there are also seven attributes with "thanksgiving" instead of "riches" in that list.
34 For similar comments, see Kiddie 105; Ladd, 93.
35 E.g., Charles, Rev 1:149; Mounce, p. 149, n. 31.
36 Morris, 99.
37 Cf. Bousset, 261-62; Charles, Rev 1:149; Krodel, 167; Morris, 98; Mounce, 149-50; Beasley-Murray, 128. For a different perspective, see F. Spitta, Die Offenbarung des Johannes (Halle, 1889) 285.
38 Cf. Ladd, 93.
the hymns in a very deliberate pattern. The first two hymns praise God (4.8 and 4.11), the third and fourth praise the Lamb (5.9-10 and 5.12), while the last hymn praises both (5.13).\(^{39}\) The close identification between God Almighty and the Lamb is a consistent dimension of the theology of Revelation.\(^{40}\)

The vision ends in 5.14 with the worship of the four creatures and the 24 elders. The four creatures and the 24 elders symbolize all manner of living beings.\(^{41}\) The "Amen" of the four creatures and the worship of the elders establishes an *inclusio* with 4.4-8: the vision of the heavenly court in Rev 4-5 begins and ends with the four creatures and 24 elders worshipping.\(^{42}\) This *inclusio* attests to the unity of Rev 4-5.

c. Conclusion

I have given a more detailed analysis of the first Lamb-passage in Revelation because it is so crucial to understanding what follows.

Rev 4-5 introduces what is to come and gives a focus to the book. These chapters form theological center of the book by asserting that for God Almighty creation and redemption involve one beneficent process. The Lamb is the symbol of God's love for humanity and conveyed to the original audience that the decisive victory had already been won in heaven (5.9-12), a victory which has future consequences on earth (5.9-10, 13; cf. 1.5-6; 12.7-12). Worship then begins in heaven with the four creatures and 24 elders and continues until the entire creation joins it. In Rev 5.6-14, the Christ-Lamb participates in divine honors with God Almighty by receiving prayers (5.8), praise (5.12) and standing at the height of the cosmos as God's co-regent (5.13). Rev 5.13 is the first explicit statement where Christ receives honors alongside God Almighty. Others will follow. Finally, Rev 5.6-14 promises a high status as priest-kings upon the faithful followers of God, wrought through the sacrifice of Christ. These images would convey to the hearer/reader that God Almighty desires an intimate relationship with his people in the new age (5.9-10; cf. 1.5-6; 21.3-4).\(^{43}\) These features will recur in our examination of the remaining Lamb-passages.

These two chapters provide some significant social details. The victory-through-suffering motif suggests that some Christians have suffered for their beliefs. Nothing in Rev 4-5 suggests that these passages describe a lax attitude among Christians or in some way function as examples of the judgments which await Christians. Moreover, there is

\(^{39}\) Charles (Rev 1:151) places the first hymn in 4.9.

\(^{40}\) Morris (99) has noted this relationship between God and Christ in 6.16; 7.9, 10, 17; 14.1, 4; 21.22, 23; cf. Charles, Rev 1:151. I would add 3.21, 7.12, 22.1, 3.

\(^{41}\) Cf. Beasley-Murray, 117, n. 4; also 129; Hughes, 73-76, 83.

\(^{42}\) Cf. Morris (102) and Mounce (150).

\(^{43}\) Cf. Krodel (168-69).
little here to indicate that Christians live free of any sort of repression or discrimination. In fact, Rev 4-5 indicate tensions between Christians and non-Christians and point toward the judgment awaiting the non-Christians. Moreover, the worship of Christ alongside God could have been the point of pain between Christians and Jewish groups. However, the refusal of Christians to participate in the imperial cult or any other Graeco-Roman religious activities, coupled with the Christian focus upon Jesus as one worthy of divine honors, would have infuriated many pagans, as it did Pliny (Letter 10). Thus, suffering on two fronts, the Christians in Asia would have had little social esteem and their envisioned status as priest-kings in the future might constitute an attempt to reverse their present lowly status. Further, the seven horns and seven eyes of the Lamb and the promise of becoming priest-kings in the next age would be a therapeutic means of persuading persons to remain within the sacred cosmos against external repression. Within such a social setting, the Lamb imagery could be a meaningful apologetic tool and maintenance strategy.

The exegeses of the following passages will demonstrate that the image of the Lamb functioned as a deliverer, a concerned pastor and a role model to help the churches in Asia to endure the things that will happen soon (1.3; 22.6-7).

2. 6.1-17

Rev 6.1-17 and 7.9-8.1 both fall within the seven seals sequence (6.1-8.1), but since they comprise distinctive types of visions, I have chosen to address them under two different headings.

The opening of the first four seals constitutes the well-known “four horsemen of the Apocalypse” sequence (6.1-8). The fifth seal differs from the first four in not detailing an earthly catastrophe but a heavenly scene (6.9-11). The sixth seal returns to an earthly setting and brings more geological, cosmic and sociopolitical upheavals (vv. 12-17). 44

The opening of the seals constitutes the Lamb’s only action in Rev 6. Since the Lamb is the chief messianic figure of this section, the opening of the seals takes on more importance. Zech 1.8-11 and 6.1-8 provide the biblical background for the first four horsemen. John characteristically transforms the images to suit his own purposes.

Vv. 1-2. “And when the Lamb opened one of the seven seals, I looked and I heard one of the four living creatures saying, like the sound of thunder, ‘Come!’ And I looked and behold, a white horse and he who was sitting on it had a bow; a crown was given to him and he went out conquering, in order that he might conquer.” Several argue that the

44See Charles (Rev 1: 154-61) and Walvoord (Revelation, 124-38) on the various methods that have been employed in interpreting the historical meaning of the seven seals.
rider on the white horse symbolizes Vologeses, the Parthian leader who won an impressive victory over the Romans in 62 CE. They note that Parthian kings wore crowns as a symbol of victory and rode white horses into battle. The white symbolizes judgment. Still others argue that the passage refers to Rome; some argue that this horseman represents the advance of the Christian faith through history, while others argue that the rider is the anti-Christ. Others argue that the rider is Christ and that the same rider is found in Rev 19.11-16.

The rider on the white horse does not symbolize Christ, the anti-Christ, Vologeses, or any other individual, or the Roman Empire. The rider is not the primary symbol in Rev 6.2. The primary symbol in each of the first four seals is the horse and its color, not the rider. The rider is, at best, a secondary symbol. Each horse has a different color and brings a different aspect of the message with the breaking of the first four seals. In contrast, in 19.11-21 the rider on the white horse is the primary symbol; he receives symbolic names, not the horse, and represents God in human history. White is a salvific color (see comments on 2.17) and usually is worn by the saints (e.g., 6.9-11; 7.9-10). In 6.2, it represents righteous judgment upon the nations.

Mounce correctly notes that the rider in 6.2 cannot be Christ because he wears a στέφανος, not a δίδαξ, a royal symbol. "The context in 6.2 is conquest while that in 19:11ff is righteous retribution." Additionally, Mounce notes the confusion that would result if Christ is both the one who opens the seal and the first horseman. Caird concurs and points out that John used ἐδόθη more frequently to denote "divine permission granted to evil powers to carry out their nefarious work" (see Rev 9.1, 3, 5; 13.5, 7, 14, 15).

The first horse symbolizes the negative effects of war (e.g., the deaths of loved ones [both civilian and military]; the destruction of public and private property; the disruption of everyday life). In the HB, God's breaking the bow often symbolized breaking military power (e.g., Ps 46.9; Jer 51.56; Ezek 39.3; Hos 1.5). John has probably

---

45See, e.g., Charles, Rev 1:163-64. Charles also has representative interpretations of this passage.
46E.g., Spitta, 260.
47E.g., J. Weiss, Offenbarung des Johannes (FRLANT 3; Göttingen: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1904) 59-60.
49E.g., B. Weiss, 445; Sweet, 136-40; Ladd, 96-100.
50Many Romans held to the Nero redivivus myth that Nero was not dead but would return to defeat Rome with a Parthian army. See Suetonius, Nero 57; Tacitus, History 2.8; Sib. Or. 4-5. On the different forms of the Nero myth and their influence upon Revelation, see Bauckham, Climax, 384-452. Also, the first horse and its rider alludes to the Parthians, fierce warriors who mastered the use of the bow and arrow in battle. The Parthians defeated the Romans in 53 BCE, 35 BCE and 62 CE.
52Mounce, 153.
53Caird, 81.
combined imagery from the HB and recent events to convey the image of military destruction as a means of divine judgment. The white horse brings the message that war brings pain and suffering. The remaining three horses reiterate this point.

Vv. 3-4. A second living beast speaks with the breaking of the second seal and a red horse comes forth and removes peace from the earth. This horse represents the blood that will be shed by many persons during the last days. Its rider has been given a sword, not a bow. Both, however, are weapons of war and the message of the first seal continues in the second. The first horse brings war; the second removes peace. The first two horses represent two halves of the same coin: war as a means of punishment.

Vv. 5-6. After the breaking of the third seal, the third living creature speaks and a third horse comes forth. The third horse is black. Black usually had negative connotations in the ancient world. The rider also held a balance scale in his hand in v. 5, indicating an economic theme. That is precisely what follows in v. 6. An unidentified voice, a common mystical element in Revelation, announces that a quart of wheat will cost a denarius, a day's wage. With the same amount of money one would be able to buy barley and feed three persons. However, nothing would be left over for the next day. The price of olive oil and wine would remain the same.

This horseman and his horse symbolize economic hardships which often accompany war, especially the conquered. Whether buying wheat or barley, food would cost a great deal of money. This would mean that people would live constantly on the edge of deprivation.

Vv. 7-8. The breaking of the fourth seal brings a rider on a pale horse. The horse's color connotes death. Indeed, its rider is named "Death" and Hades, the place of the dead, follows closely (cf. 1.18; 20.13-14). They have the authority to kill one-fourth of the earth through war, famine, pestilence and wild animals (cf. Ezek 14.21).

This is the only rider given a name and with a companion. The fourth horse and rider complete this series. Its point is that war and aggression ultimately bring suffering to all humanity and one-fourth even die. It is fitting that the fourth rider is called Death.

54 Cf. Mounce, 154.
55 Cf. Charles, Rev 1:163-64; Kiddle, 106-14; Morris, 100-02; Mounce, 152-54; Yarbro Collins, Apocalypse, 43-45; Schüssler Fiorenza, Revelation, 62-65; Krodel, 171-74; Hughes, 84-85; 109-10. The four horse mini-cycle may be related in some way to the synoptic apocalypse in Mark 13 par. (e.g., Charles, Rev 1:158-61; Harrington, 120; Beasley-Murray, 129-30), or the two passages may drawn upon the same tradition for their imagery (cf. Zech 1.8, 6.2-6; Isa 3-4; Jer 14-15; Nahum 1-3; 2 Bar 27 and 53). In either event, it has little effect upon the interpretation of Rev 6.1-8.
56 Cf. Harrington, 123; Ladd, 100. On war as a form of divine judgment, see Jer 14-15 and Nah 1-3.
57 Charles has researched the cost of bread in the Roman Empire in the first Christian century and has shown the economic crisis which the price scale in Rev 6.5-6 would engender (Rev 1:166-68).
58 The reference to pestilence may be an exodus motif (cf. Exod 8-11).
for he personifies all the misfortune and suffering that John has envisioned in the three preceding riders. How do the four horsemen relate to the Christ-Lamb in Revelation?

The Christ-Lamb has come and has inaugurated the eschaton by opening the seals. This is a prophetic act because the scroll contains the will of God for humanity. With regard to its cosmological message, it conveys to the reader that what occurs in heaven will be paralleled on earth (cf. 12.7-12 and 19.11-21). Only the Lamb is worthy to open the scroll, i.e., the Lamb functions as a revealer (cf. 1.1, 5, 19). By opening the scroll, the Lamb sets into motion the divine plan. The first four seals bring about the eschatological woes common to Jewish apocalyptic literature (e.g., 2 Bar. 27 and 53). Three more seals must be broken.

Vv. 9-11. The opening of the fifth seal provides something of an interlude from the eschatological calamities. While the first four seals relate to the future and the plight of God's enemies, the fifth seal relates to the near past and the suffering of God's elect. Sweet correctly notes that this passage employs two standard apocalyptic themes, the cry of innocent blood for revenge and the limited amount of wickedness and suffering which must transpire before the end of the world. "To this final deliverance their sacrifice contributes invisibly, not piecemeal but as part of God's total plan: they must wait for their visible vindication till their number is complete."60

1 Enoch 47.4; 4 Ezra 4.33, 35-37 and 2 Bar. 23.4-5, all written about the same time as Revelation, have very similar statements.61 1 Enoch 47.4 states that the angels are joyful because the number of the righteous, which God has pre-determined, has been reached and no more righteous ones will suffer unjustly. 4 Ezra 4.33, 35-37 asks when will the new age come and how long will the souls of the righteous remain in their chambers. Jeremiel replies, "When the number of those like yourselves is completed." 2 Bar. 23.4-5 states that God determined before time how many persons would be born and how many would die. "No creature will live again unless the number that has been appointed is completed."62 In all three contexts, the seer is primarily concerned with the question of theodicy and how long the unjust will go on unpunished. In each case, the seer is assured that God determined before time the extent of evil.

In Rev 6.9-11, the saints ask a similar question and they receive a similar answer: They ask when will their deaths be avenged and are told to wait until the number of sufferers reaches a predetermined number. This apologetic tradition attempts to explain

59 Mounce argues that the first four seals comprise one mini-cycles, the last three another (157). I disagree because the sixth seal is more like the first four and also because the seventh seal relates directly to the seventh trumpet (11.15-19) and the seventh bowl (16.17-21), as will be demonstrated in the discussion of the seventh seal (8.1-5).
60 Sweet, 141.
61 Translations are from Charlesworth, OTP.
62 On the dates of 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra and 2 Baruch, see Charlesworth 1:6-7, 520, 616-17.
why the righteous suffer at the hands of the unrighteous and it also attempts to assure the community its suffering will not last forever. This seal is an example of determinism, a maintenance strategy intended to assure the original audience of its ultimate liberation and salvation and to assure them that their suffering also is part of God's plan. Since John had many apocalyptic motifs at his disposal, his use of this specific motif probably reflects a context where Christians are repressed.

Vv. 12-17. The sixth seal shifts the scene again. These verses can be divided into two separate parts. In the first, vv. 12-14, we have another vision of the eschatological woes which include an earthquake, a solar eclipse, a lunar eclipse (v. 12), a falling star (v. 13a) and a receding sky (v. 14a). Every mountain and island is dislodged (v. 14b). These events are signs to the reader that the end is near. Jewish and early Christian literature have many such examples (e.g., Isa 13.10 and 34.4; Hag 2.6-7; Nah 1.5; Sib. Or. 3.75-92 and 8.413-428; 2 Bar. 70.8; 4 Ezra 5.8; Mark 13.24-25; 2 Pet 3.11-12). In the second scene (vv. 15-17), the kings, the upper-class, the generals, the rich, the strong, every slave and freedman have hidden themselves (v. 15; cf. “the inhabitants of the earth” [v. 10]) because they have recognized the eschatological signs (vv. 12-14) and attempt to avoid the wrath of the Lamb (cf. Isa 2.10, 19, 21; Joel 2.11, 31; Zeph 1.14-18; Mal 3.2-3). In most instances in the HB and the pseudepigraphical writings, God alone causes the end-time to come. The messiah is merely an agent of God in the process (e.g., 4 Ezra 11-13). In Revelation, however, the Messiah-Lamb joins God as an associate.

3. 7.9-8.1

Rev 7.9-8.1 concludes the opening of the seven seals begun in 6.1. Whether or not 7.9-8.1 recapitulates 7.1-8 is not a central issue for our study. Suffice it to say that both visions describe an eschatological community. While 7.1-8 describes the sealing of God's elect 144,000 persons from the 12 tribes of Israel, 7.9-8.1 contains a vision of an international exodus community.

Rev 7.9-8.1 mentions the Lamb explicitly four times and the Lamb opens the seventh seal in 8.1. In 7.9, an innumerable culturally inclusive eschatological Christian community stands before the heavenly co-regents, God and the Lamb. They wear white garments and receive palm branches, both emblematic of their salvific victory (cf. 1 Macc 13.51; 2 Macc 10.7). This might be the same group which John saw under the altar (6.9-11). Rev 7.9-17 builds upon 6.9-11 by adding that God's care for the saints, as well as

63 On determinism in apocalyptic literature, see Russell, Method, 205-34.
64 In 6.9-11, the saints receive white garments; in 7.9, they wear white garments and receive palm branches, both symbols of their salvation. The additional details in 7.9 is a common feature in Revelation where later visions often provide additional details not in earlier ones. In this way, the later visions are not unchanging icons but renewed media of revelation (cf. 7.1-8 and 14.1-5; 7.9-17 and 21.1-8).
God's punishment of evildoers, is part of God's plan, too. The exchange between one of the elders and John in vv. 13-17 confirms my argument.

In many prophetic and apocalyptic books, an otherworldly being guides the human seer and/or explains enigmatic visions (e.g., 1 Enoch 68; 4 Ezra 12.31-39; ApAb 15-17). Often the heavenly guide does not answer questions but asks them. I refer to this feature as "the unsolicited question." The unsolicited question is not a test for the seer but a means of imparting information to the reader/hearer. Rev 7.13 reads, "And one of the elders addressed me, saying, 'These persons who are dressed in white robes, from where have they come?' And I said to him, 'My lord, you know.' And he said to me, 'These are they who have come out of the great tribulation and washed their robes and cleaned them by means of the blood (ἐν τῷ ἀλματὶ) of the Lamb.'" This vision recalls to the mind of the reader the reference to Jesus "who loved us and freed us from our sins by means of his blood (ἐν τῷ ἀλματὶ αὐτοῦ)" in 1.5. Rev 5.9b reads similarly, "for you were slaughtered and . . . by means of your blood (ἐν τῷ ἀλματὶ σου) you ransomed for God saints from every tribe and language and people and nation." All three passages state that the messiah died on behalf of humanity. In all three passages, the death of the messiah provides positive benefits for the Christian community: (1) freedom from sin; (2) founding of an international Christian community; (3) means of entry into the new age. We have already noted that the first two passages associated these benefits with the members of the community becoming priest-kings in the new age. Rev 7.14 provides yet another means by which the followers of the Lamb who suffer identify with their Lord and his passion. In this way, suffering became for these Christians an acceptable modus vivendi.

Rev 7.9-8.1 also provides another example of the reversal of expectations. Instead of the Lamb's blood staining the robes, it cleans them. Instead of death leading to defeat, it leads to victory and salvation. The saints have come through the "great tribulation." John employs present and past verbs in v. 14b, indicating that for John the great tribulation is ongoing.

One might counter that these images of judgment are primarily aimed at the Christian community, or at least would include wayward Christians. However, none of the critiques on Christian laxity found in the letters is found here (see 2.4-5, 14-16, 20-23; 3.1-3, 9, 15-19). Rather, 7.13-14 describes those who have died for the faith, emulating Christ's example.

John then encourages his readers to remain faithful by stating that the victim-victors of v. 14 stand before God in the heavenly court presently. This imagery may have

---

65 The unsolicited question has its roots in the prophetic tradition. Ezek 37.3 provides an excellent example: "Son of man, can these bones live?"
a prophetic element in it. Verses 15-17 are prophecies. Every verb is in the future tense. God will shelter them (v. 15). They will not hunger, or thirst, or suffer from the sun's heat (v. 16) but will be led by the Lamb to springs of living water (cf. John 4.10-15). God will personally wipe away their tears (v. 17). These images continue the therapeutic functions identified in v. 14 by promising the readers God's providential care in the new age. It appears that the threat of social ostracism and deprivation have made accommodation, complacency and compromise appealing to some persons. Rev 7.13-14 do not indicate that Christians lead relatively prosperous lives and want more of it. To the contrary, 7.13-14 reflect Christian suffering.

This hymn communicates several other important details. First and foremost, it states their genuine devotion to God as the protector of the community from worldly pressures (v. 14a). Conversely, it connotes that the original recipients had genuine worldly woes (v. 14b; cf. v. 17). These persons expect their sovereign God to intervene soon and bring solace soon (e.g., Rev 1.3; 22.7-12). Moreover, the victim-victors are assured that their troubles in this age will be reversed in the next and that they will not suffer from the elements. This suggests that some Christians suffered materially and that is why protection is coupled with means of sustenance (v. 16). The Lamb/Shepherd shares a role often reserved for God Almighty (e.g., Ps 23). Revelation has developed the concept from a distinctive Christian perspective (cf. Luke 15.3-7; John 10.1-30; 21.15-17; 1 Pet 1.19, 2.25). The one who was the means of salvation now functions as the mode of protection and sustenance. Verse 16 speaks of the cessation of bodily needs, but it is the Lamb who enables this cessation to occur (v. 17a). Consequently, John manifestly conveys God's intimate and caring relationship with the victim-victors with the image of God wiping away their tears (v. 17b; see also 21.1-4). God wiping away tears would carry little weight if the crisis were only in the social location of their minds or if religious laxity were the only authentic problem for these churches. Indeed, John's visions often perceive a worldwide crisis which did not transpire as John believed (e.g., 22.7-12), but this perception is based upon present realities (see, e.g., 2.8-11, 13; 6.9-11; 16.6; cf. 5.9-12). John writes to people who have shed real tears under real oppression and who desire real consolation.

Finally, Rev 7.9-17 is a prolepsis of the fuller account in 21.1-8, the vision of the New Heaven and the New Earth. In both visions, God dwells with his people (cf. 7.15; 21.3 [twice]); wipes the tears from their eyes (cf. 7.17; 21.4) and the people of God drink from "living waters" (cf. 7.17; 21.6). It is important to note that God does in 21.6 what

66"The idea of the Lamb as the shepherd of God's flock is an intriguing exchange of roles" (Mounce, 175). If Mounce is correct, the Lamb/Shepherd imagery may be yet another reversal of expectation.
67Cf. Thompson, 186-97; Bauckham, Theology, 12-17.
the Messiah-Lamb did in 7.17, another example of Christ acting as God Almighty's divine agency figure. This maintenance strategy is intended to assure the original readers of God's enduring love and their ultimate reward in the new age, a counter to their low social status in the present age.

The seventh seal in Rev 8.1 has brought about extensive discussions and interesting comments but no consensus among NT scholars. Rev 8.1 reads, "And when he (the Lamb) opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven for about half an hour." What does this silence signify? I shall examine the major positions, evaluate them and then offer an answer to the question of the role and function of silence in Rev 8.1.

Mounce writes that the silence forms a significant pause in a quickly moving narrative. He also argues that during this approximately 30-minute period the angels were preparing for their work in 8.2-5. Mounce reads too much into 8.2-5. Indeed, the seventh seal creates a significant pause, but is this the totality of its function? Why are there not similar pauses after the seventh trumpet (11.15-19) and the seventh bowl (16.17-21)?

Agreeing with Mounce but going beyond him, Walvoord and Morris argue that the silence indicates an important event is about to occur. "It may be compared to the silence before the foreman of a jury reports a verdict; for a moment... everyone awaits that which will follow." Similarly, Morris argues that the silence signifies a time of suspense before the final cataclysm. Again, if silence is so important as an introduction to significant events, why is it not used more often in Revelation? Its absence indicates that silence in and of itself is not important in the manner which Walvoord, Morris and others argue.

Rissi offers a totally different explanation. In light of 2 Esdr 6-7 and 2 Bar. 3, he argues that the silence in Rev 8.1 represents the Jewish expectation that the world would return to its primeval chaos and from this chaos a new world would come. He points to first century CE Jewish exegesis of Gen 1.3 to support his argument and he notes that silence precedes creation in 2 Esdr 6.39 and 7.30 and 2 Bar. 3.7. He also finds other works roughly contemporaneous with Revelation which give silence a significant role (Wis 18.14-16; John 1.14; Ign. Magn. 8.2). Though carefully argued, Rissi's position is not without its weak points. Silence in Rev 8.1 does not precede a new creation as in 2 Esdr 6.39, 7.30 and 2 Bar. 3.7. Rather, silence precedes the trumpets which judge and

68Mounce, 179.
69Walvoord, Revelation, 151.
71Rissi, Time and History, 3-6; cf. Krodel, 189.
devastate the old creation. The remainder of Rissi’s argument has value but fails to provide a comprehensive explanation.

Corsini argues for a theological rationale for the silence in Rev 8.1. He states that the answer lies in John’s interpretation of the death of Christ. The death of Christ established “a line of demarcation” between Judaism and Christianity for the book of Revelation. The 30-minute silence “corresponds to the period between the death and resurrection of Jesus.” 72 Unfortunately, Corsini does not discuss the relationship between this period of silence and the christology of the book as a whole, nor does he identify parallel traditions in either the Jewish or Christian traditions which would support, complement or augment his argument.

Krodel 73 argues the silence might constitute a sign of reverence to God; serve as a contrast to the sixth seal (6.12-17) as well as the seven trumpets; demonstrate that the seal visions are completed (cf. 4 Ezra 7.30) and that the trumpet visions develop from the seal visions. The seventh seal then provides a means of preparation and transition from one numbered series to another. Krodel, however, does not provide a central function which elucidates the function of silence in the entire book.

Bauckham, following Charles and yet correcting him at certain points, provides the best explanation for silence in Rev 8.1. Charles makes two points in his analysis of this passage. 74 First, v. 1 relates directly to vv. 3-4 in that the incense burning in heaven occurs while the saints pray on earth. 75 According to Charles, v. 2 is an interpolation. Secondly, Charles notes rabbinic traditions which taught that the angels praised God by night, but they were silent by day so that God could hear the prayers of the saints.

Bauckham notes several Jewish traditions which lend support to Charles’s argument (Hekhalot Rabbati, Gen. R. 65.21, Tg. Ezek 1.25; 4QShirShabb [4Q405 20-21-22]; Tg. Cant 1.1; b. Hagigah 12b and T. Adam [the Horarium]). Although most parts of the T. Adam have been edited by a Christian, T. Adam 1.12 is an exception. Bauckham dates the non-Christian traditions pre-70 CE. 76 The testament mentions the burning of incense by the priests at dawn each day after the lamb has been sacrificed (see Exod 30.7; Philo, Spec. Leg. 1.171, 276; m. Tam. 3.2; 4-7; cf. m. Yom. 3:5). Bauckham notes that this is the time of prayer for Jews everywhere. When the incense is burned, symbolizing the

72 Corsini, 162-63.
73 Krodel, 188-89; cf. Wall, 122.
74 Charles, Rev 1:223-24; so too, Caird, 106-07; Beasley-Murray, 150-51; Bauckham, Climax, 70-83; Theology, 40-43; cf. Harrington, 133. For a different perspective, see H. B. Swete (107) who argues that the silence in heaven symbolized an eternal rest. Swete does not support his argument very well.
75 Cf. Mounce, 179.
76 Bauckham, Climax, 70-83; Cf. S. E. Robinson in Charlesworth, OTP 1:990.
ascent of the prayers of Israel to heaven, there is no activity in heaven, according to T. Adam 1.12. There is silence. For Bauckham, the parallel with Rev 8.3-4 is undeniable (cf. Tob 12.12, 15; 1 Enoch 47.1-2; 99.3). He states that worship at this time usually took about thirty minutes.

Furthermore, Bauckham argues that the seventh event in each numbered series presents the final judgment which destroys evil and gives birth to the kingdom of God. He notes that the “flashes of lightning and rumblings and peals of thunder” in 4.5 are expanded three times in 8.5, 11.15 and 16.17-21. “The progressive expansion of the formula corresponds to the progressive intensification of the three series of judgments.”

Bauckham has shown convincingly the Jewish context of silence in heaven. Even if some of the rabbinic traditions which he cites are post-Christian, there is no reason to believe that the rabbis would appropriate a Christian belief or practice. Farrer has also noted the progression from the seventh seal to the seventh trumpet and I had noted the progression from the seventh seal to the seventh trumpet to the seventh bowl. Additionally, I had noted a cosmic progression from heaven to earth in the seventh seal, trumpet and bowl. Bauckham also states that the cosmic progression intensifies the judgment upon sinful humankind. I concur with Bauckham.

The silence in heaven in 8.1 is part of a literary technique of Revelation. Specifically, it is part of a pattern of quantitative and cosmic progressions. These two patterns work together in the cases examined in this study. The quantitative pattern of progression raises the dramatic element of the narrative; the cosmic one conveys to the reader/hearer that what occurs in heaven must recur on earth, both the good and the bad, and touch the life of every creature in the cosmos. The progressions are part of the maintenance strategy of the book as a whole, communicating to the original audience that the divine plan will be fulfilled in heaven and also on earth.

4. 12.7-12

Rev 12.7-12 begins with war breaking out in heaven between the archangel Michael and his angels, on one side, and Satan and his angels, on the other (v. 7). In many second temple Jewish traditions, Michael served as the patron angel of Israel (e.g., Dan 10.13, 21; 1 Enoch 20.5; IQM 13.10 and 17.7-8; Jude 9; cf. T. Dan 6.2; T. Levi 5.5-

77Bauckham, Theology, 42. I first heard a similar argument on the three numbered series as judgements in seminar lectures by Prof. H. W. Attridge, Perkins School of Theology, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA, summer 1978.

78Farrer, Rebirth, 181. I have explored this further in a paper which I hope to publish in due course (“Silence in Heaven: An Examination of Rev 8.1,” Centre for Advanced Biblical Studies, New Testament Seminar, Day Conference, King’s College London, Friday, 29 October, 1993).
6; 1 Enoch 40.8; T. Mos. 10.1-2). Dan 10.13, 21 refer to Michael as the heavenly "prince" of Israel. Michael and his angels defeated Satan and his angels and cast them from heaven to earth (vv. 8-9). The vision concludes with a hymn celebrating the victory in heaven but lamenting the eschatological woes to come on earth (vv. 10-12).

We focus our attention on the hymn in vv. 10-12. Verse 10 celebrates Michael's victory but attributes it not to Michael but to Christ and his followers. Verse 11 states that Michael and his angels "were victorious (ἐνέκρησαν) through the blood of the Lamb (διὰ τὸ αἷμα τοῦ ἀρμόνου) and through the word of their witness (διὰ τῶν λόγων τῆς μαρτυρίας αὐτῶν) (cf. 12.17b). It is noteworthy that νικάω is the key term in vv. 10-12, the promises in the letters (2.7, 11, 17, 26; 3.5, 12, 21) as well as Christ's victory over sin, death and evil (Rev 5.5). Moreover, "through the blood of the Lamb" and "through the word of their witness" are confirmation statements, discussed earlier in chapter two of this study, which would have conveyed to the reader that Christ's actions accurately and faithfully represented God's plan for humanity and those who lived in faithful accord with Christ would receive their reward. The message is that armaments did not defeat and expel Satan from heaven but the blood of Christ and the witness of the saints defeated Satan. John parallels Christian witnessing and Christ's sacrificial death and then adds that Christians were willing to die for their religious beliefs. Rev 12.10-11 admonishes the faithful on earth to persevere in the faith in the midst of the coming trials (12.13-17). Again, Christ's death, as with the one-like-a-son-of-man christology (see 1.5-6), becomes the model for Christian behavior and also the key to understanding Christian suffering. These images communicate to the reader/hearer that faithfulness unto death has already defeated Satan in heaven and his forces, and calls upon those who yet live on earth to remain faithful if they also wish to defeat Satan on earth. This battle in heaven is a prelude to the scenes in Rev 19.11-21 and 20.7-10 when Satan will be defeated and cast down twice.

Parallellism is a central feature of Jewish poetry where a succeeding line or two are synonymous, complementary or antithetical to the first line. In Rev 12.11, "through the blood of the Lamb" and "through the word of their witness" are parallel. It is difficult to discern if they are synonymous or complementary parallels. They are not antithetical since they jointly contribute to the defeat of Satan. If they are synonymous, Jesus' death and the witness of the saints are inseparable in Revelation. If they are complementary,
the two statements are closely related. The third statement strongly suggests that the first two are synonymous by mentioning the saints' willingness to die for their religious convictions. If the three lines are synonymous parallels, this is another vision which reflects a social setting where Christian lives have been lost for their confession of faith.82

5. 13.8

Rev 13.8 is an integral part of Rev 13.1-10, the vision of the first of two beasts. This beast in 13.8 ascends from the sea. It has 10 horns, symbols of its power, and 10 diadems on seven heads, symbols of its royalty.83 The heads had a blasphemous name, or names,84 upon them (v. 1). John compares the beast to a grotesque monster with leopard-like, bear-like and lion-like features (v. 2).85 The first beast is not a leopard, or a bear, or a lion but has features like each of these animals and receives power from the dragon (v. 2). These grotesque features are meant to convey the beast's utterly corrupt nature.

One of the seven heads has a mortal wound which had healed and everyone on earth followed the beast in amazement (v. 3), worshipped the dragon and asked who might be compared to the beast and dare make war against him (v. 4). The beast with the mortal wound is the anti-type of the Lamb who has been slain and conquers by sacrifice and suffering (5.6). The beast has spoken blasphemously toward God and those who reside in heaven and he made war with the saints and conquered (νικήσαντι) and ruled over every nation (vv. 5-7). Then comes the point of our interest in v. 8.

"And everyone who lives on the earth, whose name has not been written from the foundation of the world in the book of life of the Lamb who has been slain, will worship him" (v. 8). This verse contains two important christological elements: (1) the Lamb as the recorder of those to be saved; (2) apocalyptic determinism. These passages are intended to exhort the original hearers to remain within the sacred cosmos in spite of the beast's oppressive actions toward Christians.

References to heavenly records, an eschatological exodus motif, go back to Exod 32.32-33, a passage which might be John's source. The Exodus passage refers to the book as God's book. Ps 69.28 and Phil 4.3 refer to "the book of life" but do not attribute it to God directly. Isa 4.3; Ezek 13.9; Dan 7.10; 10.21; 12.1, 4; Luke 10.20; Heb 12.23; T. Abr 12-14 and Mart. Isa. 9.19-23 also mention heavenly records. Rev 13.8 and 21.27

82See Pliny, Letters 10.
83The image of the seven-headed beast may go back to descriptions of Tiamat in Babylonian mythology (cf. Yarbro Collins, Combat).
84The textual variants in 13.8 have no influence upon its exegesis. Those interested in the variants should consult the most recent editions of Nestle-Aland and/or GNT.
85We note the presence of ἐμπορίσας in v. 2 which supports my earlier argument in chapter 2 of this study concerning the role of descriptive comparisons.
are two of the few extant witnesses in early Judaism and early Christianity which state that the messiah has oversight of the heavenly records. This means that in Revelation one who was judged unjustly in this age will judge justly and decide who may be admitted into the next age. Giving this role to Jesus implies that the messiahship of Jesus was a key element in a dispute between Christians and non-Christians. Most probably, these non-Christians were Jews who resented the fact that Christians bestowed divine honors on Jesus, for it is difficult to imagine for whom else such a claim would matter.

Rev 3.5; 17.8; 20.12, 15 and 21.27 also mention "the book of life." Many have recognized that 17.8 parallels 13.8 in that both refer to those whose names have not been included "in the book of life from the foundation of the world." While 20.12 and 20.15 refer to the book of life in contrast to "the books" for those who meet eternal damnation, Rev 21.27 is important because it is another negative reference. Both 13.8 and 17.8 use the same wording, with the exception that only 13.8 refers to the Lamb. It is this last aspect that 13.8 and 21.27 have in common. Both refer to the Lamb's book of life, the second important element in Rev 13.8. This second element in 13.8 relates directly to the deterministic element in that it is the Lamb who has pre-recorded the names in the book of life. It conveyed to Asian Christians that their place in the New Jerusalem has already been secured.

Determinism is a key element in many apocalyptic writings (e.g., 1 Enoch 85-90; As. Mos. 2-10; 2 Bar. 53-74).87 This passage is deterministic by its reference to the names not in the book of life from the beginning of creation, implying that some names have been in the book since the beginning of creation. Sweet correctly argues that this passage implies that "the Lamb's atoning death has its place in God's plan from the beginning, in contrast with the death of 'the beast that was slain' in v. 3."88 Charles notes cogently that according to the As. Mos. 1.14 Moses was ordained by God to be the mediator of God's covenant "from the foundation of the world." He argues that early Christianity gave a similar role to Christ (cf. 1 Pet 1:19-20).89

Although many deterministic statements have as their primary goal the unwavering assertion of the sovereignty of God, the central concern in Rev 13.8 is to assure the faithful, albeit in contrast to their oppressors, of their ultimate salvation. While this includes an underlying belief in God's sovereignty, its primary purpose is to comfort those suffering from oppression. The writer feels no obligation to resolve philosophical or theological tension, only to assure the elect of their victory-before-the-fact. In so

---

86E.g., Prigent, 206; Ladd, 181; cf. Charles, Rev 1:353.
87See also Russell, Message, 205-34.
88Sweet, 212.
89Charles, Rev 1:354.
doing, John allows conflicting statements to stand in the text as different witnesses to the glory of God.\textsuperscript{90} The deterministic element finds reinforcement in vv. 9-10. First century Jewish/Christian versions of determinism, like Roman Stoicism, did not resolve completely the tension between determinism and human responsibility.\textsuperscript{91} Indeed, John does not perceive the tension. While John may speak of behavior affecting one's salvation (cf. 2.5; 20.12-13), in 13.8 he speaks as if human fates have been preordained "from the foundation of the world." Rev 13.4 suggests that whether or not to participate in the imperial cult is the key issue in this vision. John might not have been able to separate the Roman state from the worship of the Roman emperor.\textsuperscript{92} "In ancient thought political institutions and the spiritual powers behind them were inseparable."\textsuperscript{93}

The reader of this verse must be acquainted with the concept of a heavenly record, mentioned five times in Revelation, and the soteriological meaning it conveys for one's name to be included in that record. He or she would find assurance in the fact that the discredited chief victim, the Lamb, would protect the other victims, the followers of the Lamb. This concept of a record book has a rather extensive history in all types of Jewish literature, the Law (e.g., Exod 32), the Prophets (e.g., Isa 4) and the Writings (e.g., Dan 12). Revelation adds the Lamb's supervision to this tradition.

\subsection*{6. 13.11}

Rev 13.11 reads, "And I saw another beast coming up from the land and he had two horns like a lamb (δύο ἄμνων ἄθρωμον) and he spoke like a dragon." This verse introduces the second beast of chap. 13. This beast is neither a lamb nor a dragon but possesses characteristics of those animals. Again, John employs a descriptive comparison, but in this case he intends a contrast between the one like a lamb, the beast from the land, and the true lamb of God, the Christ. Earlier contrasts for the reader have included the first beast with the outlandish names (13.1) contrasted with the true God (1.8; 6.10); the beast with the healed mortal wound (13.3) with the slain Lamb (5.6); temporary earthly victory (13.7) with eternal, heavenly victory (5.9-14). This verse would convey to the hearer/reader that this second beast has the appearance of the Lamb but the spirit of a dragon. This beast, despite its grandeur and power, has no intention of saving the world but exploiting it. This beast cannot be trusted. Sweet notes that this beast represents

\textsuperscript{90}Cf. Krodel, 251-52; also 164; Prigent, 206; Sweet, 211-12; also 125; Mounce, 255-56.
\textsuperscript{92}Cf. Sweet, 206-09; Price, 197-98.
\textsuperscript{93}Sweet, 208.
pagan religion and propagandists of the imperial cult. Price concurs. "The beast from the sea clearly represents the power of Rome, and the second beast symbolizes a local authority concerned with the worship of the beast from the sea," i.e., the first beast represents Roman imperial power; the second, the imperial cult in Asia.

I concur with Sweet and Price. Rev 13.4 is a reference to the imperial cult. Price suggests that the establishment of the cult of Domitian in Ephesus "which involved the participation of the whole province, as attested by the series of dedications by numerous cities, led to unusually great pressure on the Christians for conformity." He lists Rev 14.9-11, 15.2-4, 16.2, 13; 19.20 and 20.4, 10 as passages which support his argument. Additionally, vv. 15-17 allude to economic and religio-political dimensions that would fit an eastern context where Nero was regarded highly, giving support to Sweet's position.

7. 14.1-5

In this passage, John sees the Lamb and 144,000 of his disciples on Mt. Zion. The Lamb's disciples "had his name and his father's name written upon their foreheads (v. 1)." A loud, unidentified sound comes from heaven, a common feature in Revelation which lends an aura of mystery to the visions (v. 2; e.g., 1.10; 4.1; 19.6), and the saints sing a new song which only the 144,000 know, for they are those "who have been redeemed from the earth" (v. 3). They are male virgins who "follow the Lamb wherever he goes. They were redeemed from humanity as first-fruits to God and to the Lamb" (v. 4). Their veracity is unimpeachable (v. 5). This is a prophetic, eschatological exodus vision set in heaven.

As we have discussed the significance of the divine name written upon the followers in the preceding chapter of this study, suffice it to say here that the bestowal of the name establishes for the reader/hearer an unbreakable bond with the deity. We note especially that the placing of God's name upon the foreheads could mean that the saints are priests. Thus, 7.3 and 14.1 express the same reality for John in different ways.

Several details make it clear that Rev 14.1-5 is an eschatological exodus vision set in heaven. First, "Mt. Zion" symbolized the place of deliverance (e.g., Ps 2.6-7; 4 Ezra 13.34-38; cf. Heb 12.22). In Rev 21.9-22.5, the place of deliverance and God's heavenly residence descend to earth from heaven. Moreover, the followers of the Lamb number

---

94Sweet, 213-19.  
95Price, 197; see also my discussion of the social setting in the introductory chapter of this study.  
96Price, 198. Against many Christian commentators, Price argues that sorcery and trickery were not issues for these communities but are seen by John as manifestations of divine power.  
97See the discussion of the divine name in the preceding chapter's exegeses of the letters to Pergamum and Philadelphia.  
98I have argued in Part I of this study that placing emblems on the foreheads is a maintenance strategy in Revelation.
144,000. They signify a select group which possesses knowledge, symbolized by the new song, not available to all. This is an element of mystery which elevates this group's status. Their election is an example of an exodus motif: the Christians are the people of God, the new Israel on an eschatological journey to the New Jerusalem (see Rev 7; 14.1-5; 21.1-7). Further, they have been redeemed "as first-fruits to God and the Lamb." "First-fruits" carried with it a specific connotation in the Jewish tradition. It represented the best of the harvest, or of animal husbandry, or of the spoils of battle, which would be offered to God (see Exod 23.19; Neh 10.35; Prov 3.9; cf. Jas 1.18). Thus, this term connotes to the reader that (1) the 144,000 constitute the best of the best and (2) their giving of their lives was an integral part of their qualitative difference. Furthermore, their distinctiveness is symbolized by their ability to sing a song which only they know (14.3; cf. 5.9), clearly setting them apart from those who do not know the song. Indeed, their purity is beyond reproach. They are "virgins" who have not "defiled themselves with women" (v. 4). Finally, the names upon their foreheads (v. 1) may symbolize that the 144,000 will be priests in the next age.

Many have attempted to explain the ascetic element in v. 4. Caird, for example, argues that this imagery comes from a military-like consciousness which employs the regulation for holy war when soldiers abstained from sexual intercourse before a battle to maintain ceremonial purity (Deut 23.9-14; cf. 1 Sam 21.5; 2 Sam 11.11). Others argue that the Bible clearly endorses sexual relations in marriage (e.g., Matt 19.1-6; 1 Cor 7.1-7) and that, therefore, this verse must be interpreted symbolically. For example, Wall writes that the women in this passage represent only "the evil women of Revelation." I agree with Caird and others that 14.5 symbolizes the 144,000 as righteous, celibate soldiers prepared for a holy war. Significantly, the passage does not refer to marriage. Moreover, even married soldiers were required to abstain from sexual intercourse with their wives during a military campaign (1 Sam 21.4-5; 2 Sam 11.11). Exod 19.15 is probably the source of this tradition for John, since the other elements in this passage show connections with exodus traditions. A comparison with a parallel passage might prove helpful. Rev 14.1-5 parallels 7.1-8 in three ways. First, both refer to emblems on the saints which distinguish them from others (cf. 7.3 and 14.1). These emblems might be symbols of their priesthood. Secondly, both recount the deliverance of

100Caird, 179; so too Sweet, 222-23; Yarbro Collins, Apocalypse, 100; Bauckham, Theology, 76-80.
the saints from the great tribulation (cf. 7.15-17; 5.9-10 and 14.3). This is probably an eschatological exodus for John similar to the emancipation from Egypt and the deliverance from Babylon. Indeed, in Exod 15 and Rev 14 the liberated sing a song of deliverance. Finally, both relate how the saints have faithfully followed the Christ-Lamb and even given their lives for their religious convictions (cf. 7.14 and 14.4). However, they differ in one significant way in that only 14.1-5 mentions male virgins. This is a vision of the Lamb and his followers depicted as an army on an eschatological military campaign, a prolepsis of 19.14. In neither case does the army actually engage the enemy in battle.

In order to interpret fully this passage, the reader needs a knowledge of Jewish traditions concerning "Mt. Zion," "first-fruits," numerological speculation, and spiritual purity and celibacy, all thoroughly Jewish concepts which would require a broad knowledge of Judaism. Moreover, this holy war is a messianic war with the messiah leading his heavenly host against the forces of evil (cf. 17.14; 19.16). 102

In Rev 14.1-5, the Lamb gathers to himself a select community of saints whose discipleship is unquestionable and whose purity is undeniable, reiterating the message of 7.1-8, a strategy to assure the reader/hearer that the faithful will hold positions of honor in the new dispensation. 103 Instead of suggesting Christian accommodation, the use of military imagery strongly suggests intense, and perhaps hostile, relations between Asian Christians and their pagan and/or Jewish neighbors.

8. 14.10

Rev 14.10 relates the torment to be suffered eternally by the followers of the beast. "And he will drink from the wine of the wrath of God (τοῦ Οίνου τοῦ θυμοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ) which is mixed in full strength into the cup of his anger (τῆς δραπής αὐτοῦ), and he will be tormented with fire and brimstone before the holy angels and before the Lamb." "The holy angels" could be a periphrasis for God Almighty. If this were the case, both God and the Lamb would view the punishment of the oppressors of God and the Lamb's elect. 104 However, Rev 14.10 could mean exactly what it says, that the holy angels and the Lamb view the punishment of the damned. 105 The Christ-Lamb, in either view, will witness the punishment of those who oppressed him and his followers. The message to the Asian Christians is that the Christians who suffered in public would view the eternal suffering of their former oppressors; similarly, the evil ones who opposed the

102 Bauckham, Theology, 67-70, 76-80.
103 Cf. Schüssler Fiorenza, Followers, 129-34.
104 So argues Beasley-Murray (226).
105 So argues Mounce (275-76).
Lamb would see him and recognize too late his messianic status. This vision may be a reversal of scenes in many local courts where Christians stood trial solely because of their confession of faith (cf. Pliny, Letters 10). This vision, a form of nihilation, does not indicate Christian laxity, but the desire to avenge Christian suffering (see 6.9-11). Rev 14.10, and other passages which depict the suppression of Christians, also supports my argument in Part I of this thesis that the letters, in general, spoke to issues within the churches, while the apocalyptic visions, in general, reflect the plight of Christians in the broader society.

9. 15.3-4

These verses fall within the vision of the angels with the last plagues (15.1-8). The song of Moses and the Lamb celebrates God's eschatological exodus of his people. It is similar to the song of Moses in Exod 15 in this regard. Both songs are sung along a seashore. The reference to the Lamb could remind the reader of the Passover Lamb of the Exodus tradition (Exod 12). However, unlike Exod 15 which celebrates the deliverance of a single nation, the event in Rev 15.3-4 celebrates the deliverance of a racially and culturally mixed Christian body (cf. 7.9-10). Finally, both Moses and the Lamb function as deliverers of a religious community.

10. 17.14

Rev 17.14 falls within a larger section (17.1-17). John sees a vision "of the great prostitute" (v. 1). The references to adultery and intoxication are metaphors for the prostitute's sinfulness (v. 2) and for the repression of Christians (v. 6). The prostitute receives the name "Babylon the Great," a symbolic reference to Rome and its rulers (see 17.9). The Roman Empire "will make war against the Lamb and the Lamb will conquer (νικήσει) them, for he is Lord of lords and King of kings and the ones with him are called and elect and faithful" (17.14). Verses 15-18 continue with cryptic descriptions of the Roman Empire. Rev 17.14 conveys to the Christians in Asia Minor that the victory over the Roman Empire has been won already by the Christ-Lamb. Christians remain faithful even in tribulations. These tribulations are in the future, as the verbs make clear. Thus, 17.14 is a prophecy and provides instructions to Christians how they should behave during the coming crisis which John envisioned.

106 Ellul has a similar position (Apocalypse, 176).
108 "Babylon" was a code name for Rome in other Jewish and Christian writings roughly contemporaneous with Revelation (e.g., 4 Ezra 1.1, Sib. Or. 5:155-61 and 1 Pet 5.13).
The expression "the called and elect and faithful" confirms the elite status of the group mentioned in 17.14. This war will occur in the future, as the future active indicative forms of πολεμεῖν and νικᾶν indicate. This vision will be realized in Rev 19.11-21 through the Christ-Divine Warrior image, not the Christ-Lamb. Both 17.14 and 19.16 refer to the messianic figure with the same title of "Lord of lords and King of kings." Rev 17.14 also has a word of assurance for the community. The followers of the Lamb are special persons who have been called (κλητοὶ) and elected (ἐκλεκτοὶ) by God, terms often applied to Israel as the people of God. Πιστὸς refers to their steadfast loyalty to God.

Those three adjectives serve important roles for the emotional well-being of the seven churches in Asia. The first two adjectives connote strong deterministic elements in John's theology. We noted earlier the priest-king status for the victors of this book and how the book's determinism assures the Christian community of its eventual salvation. In this verse, that assurance continues themes expressed earlier in Revelation (e.g., 3.5 and 17.8). The term "faithful" denotes that the saints remained true to their calling and election. These three terms tell us that the Christians saw themselves as special persons whom God will reward in a special way; their fidelity and loyalty has assured their status as God's chosen. Those terms also communicated to the hearer/reader that God cares in a special manner for the followers of the Lamb who have suffered (see 17.1-6). The passage suggests that this oppression was begun by persons who supported the imperial cult since it depicts the beast (Rome) as the opponent of the saints.

This passage reflects a social context where the faithfulness of Christians has led to their repression. Within this type of context, the selection of the predicates 'called,' 'elect' and 'faithful' are intelligible as modes of exhortation and apologetics. As exhortation, they encourage the readers to believe that their faithfulness is the proper behavior and will ultimately be rewarded. As apologetics, it explains to the Christians that their suffering is part of the divine plan. Rev 17.14 does not convey to the reader a judgment against the Church because of its religious laxity, but, rather, the propriety of Christian fidelity which has led to trials and tribulations (see 16.6; 17.6). Rev 17.14 addresses the oppressive context in which Asian Christians lived and suffered.

11. 19.7-9

Rev 19.7-9 falls within the vision of the Lamb's marriage supper, or wedding banquet (19.5-10). The bride of the Lamb is the community of Christian saints. This is
an example of the closeness of the relationship between Christ and community in the book of Revelation: a distinction or separation does not exist between Christ’s witness to God and the Christian community’s witness to Christ (cf. 6.9 and 20.4). His word is their word; his fate, theirs; his victory is theirs as well. That is to say, one link between Christ and community in Revelation is the consistency between their faithful witness to Christ and Christ’s faithful witness to God. It is within this type of social context that Christ’s lordship of the churches and the seven letters must also be understood.

Rev. 19.8 refers to the wedding garment as "pure, bright, fine linen (βύσσινον λαμπρὸν καθαρὸν); for the fine linen (βύσσινον) is the righteous deeds of the saints." Bright, radiant linen had established roles symbolizing purity and was worn most often by heavenly beings and priests in the HB and Jewish writings into the second century CE (e.g., Lev 16.4; Ezek 9.2-3, 11; 10.1-8; Dan 10.5-6; 1 Enoch 62.15-16; 104.2; 2 Bar. 51.5, 12; Ap. Ab. 13.15; m. Yoma 3.6-7; Philo, The Life of Moses 2.17; Josephus, Jewish War 5.230-237). Indeed, both Philo and Josephus describe the high priest’s attire with βύσσινος. Rev 15.6 describes angels "dressed in pure, bright linen (λινὸν καθαρὸν λαμπρὸν)." Rev 19.14 uses similar words to describe the saints which accompany the Divine Warrior (βύσσινον λευκὸν καθαρὸν). Linen connotes the purity and election of the Asian Christian community. This is a significant passage since it does not depict Christian apostasy or even laxity and supports my earlier argument that the apocalyptic visions primarily concern themselves with the relationship of the church to Graeco-Roman society. In this prophetic vision of the future, John sees an undefiled church entering into the new age (cf. 7.13-14; 14.1; 20.4-6). This vision presupposes that the churches have followed the instructions of their Lord (Rev 2-3) and are thoroughly prepared to enter the New Jerusalem.

The words of assurance in Rev 19.9 conclude with an angelic witness to the faithfulness of God: "These are the true words of God" (see 21.5; 22.6; cf. 17.14 and 19.11), affirming the authenticity and certainty of the vision.

12. 21.9-22.5

This last vision of Revelation describes the New Jerusalem more fully than any other sections of the book111 and mentions the Lamb six times (21.14, 22, 23, 27; 22.1, 3).112 The Lamb plays a key role in securing and maintaining the spiritual and physical welfare of the Christian community.

---

111 Proleptic visions of the New Jerusalem are found throughout the book (e.g., 7.1-17; 14.1-5; 19.1-10).
112 Many argue that this vision has many parallels with the description of Babylon in 17.1-19.10 (e.g., Krodel, 352-56); others note the parallels with Ezek 40-47 (e.g., Harrington, 254-56), while others see links with Qumran (B. Gärtner, The Temple and the Community in Qumran and the New Testament [Cambridge: CUP, 1965]; cf. Ladd, 283-84. Although interesting, these questions cannot detain us.
Rev 21.14 connects the ministry of the historical Jesus of Nazareth with the christological Lamb of Revelation by referring to the twelve foundations of the New Jerusalem with "the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb." This reference to the apostles follows mention of the 12 tribes of Israel in 21.12. It is John's way of conveying to the original recipients the antiquity of Christianity within Judaism, the elect people of God. The reference at this point to Jesus as the Lamb connotes that the Lamb who has been slain (5.6) is the primary christological image that governs Revelation (cf. Matt 16.21, 17.22-23, 20.17-19 and 26.2; Rom 5.6-11; 1 John 2.1-2) and that the community has longstanding traditions. Graeco-Roman society respected ancient religious traditions and tended to suspect newer ones, as Pliny's Letter 10 attests. John's point is that Christianity is the most faithful form of Judaism.

Rev 21.27 states that "only those whose names that have been written in the Lamb's book of life" shall enter the New Jerusalem. The importance of the Lamb's connection with the book of life and its deterministic function have been noted repeatedly in this study. This passage conveyed to its original readers an assurance of their entry into the new age.

Rev 21.22, 23 and 22.1, 22.3 must be discussed together, for all four passages present the Lamb as God Almighty's vice regent. This relationship between these two figures has been noted several times previously in this study. Moreover, all four passages relate Christ to the life of the community in the New Jerusalem. These two factors tell the reader that God Almighty and the Christ are concerned deeply with the quality of life in the New Jerusalem and it strongly suggests that the quality of life on earth for Christians has been poor. It discloses to the reader the Lamb's concern for the well-being of the community, a link between Christ and community.

The New Jerusalem has no temple (21.22) for God Almighty and the Lamb are its temple. This is a reversal of expectations (cf. Ezek 40-46). The New Jerusalem has no heavenly luminaries either (v. 23) for God and the Lamb provide its illumination (cf. John 1.4-5; 8.12; 9.5). These two verses signify that the temple was no longer necessary because God and the Lamb, the heavenly co-regents, dwell among humanity and have become the center of life in the community. The residents of the New Jerusalem would have direct access to God and to the Lamb, i.e., they will be priests (see 1.5; 5.9; cf. 7.15). God and the Lamb will provide light for the inhabitants of the New Jerusalem.

Rev 22.1-5 confirms the preceding comments. The river of the water of life flows from the throne of God and the Lamb (v. 1). The river provides nourishment for the tree of life which in turn heals the nations (v. 2; cf. 21.27). Only the pure will enter the city.

113Cf. Caird, 272; Mounce, 379; Ladd, 281; Sweet, 304; Morris, 243; Krodel, 357-58.
114Cf. Harrington, 260-63; Caird, 278-79; Mounce, 383-84; Ladd, 283-84.
and the throne of God and the Lamb will be in it (v. 3). Verse 4 contains the key
element: “And they will see his (God’s) face and his (God’s) name will be upon their
foreheads,” i.e., they will be priests (another exodus motif; see 1.5; 5.9; cf. 7.14-15) and
God’s emblem will be on them, designating their election and separating them from the
unjust (see 3.12; 7.3; 14.1). Verse 5 reiterates 21.23. These verses provide yet another
example of the Lamb’s providential oversight of the Christian community.

In sum, the New Jerusalem will be the eschatological home for God, the Lamb
and their faithful disciples. The eschatological exodus ends in the New Jerusalem. The
New Jerusalem will establish an intimate, familial relationship among God, the Lamb and
the followers of the Lamb. A symbol of this intimacy is the reference to the priestly
nature of the elect in the eschatological community which will have direct access to the
God and the Lamb.115 God and the Lamb, in turn, will provide the highest quality of life
possible and the servants of God will worship them (22.4; cf. 7.14-17; Ezek 47).116 The
New Jerusalem will be a community full of joy and without illnesses, founded by God
and the Lamb. The reference to healing the nations (v. 2) might be a message of solace to
the Asian Christian churches since Gen 2.9 makes no mention of healing the nations.
This passage has several eschatological exodus images in the office of priest, the end of
the exodus, the New Jerusalem community and the election of the New Israel.

This ends our exegesis of the Lamb-passages in Revelation and we turn now to a
concluding statement.

D. Conclusion

1. The Lamb and the Community

The Lamb performs several important functions in Revelation, but the Lamb’s most
important christological function involves leading an eschatological Christian community
whose destination is the New Jerusalem (e.g., 7.9-17; 14.1-5; 21.9-22.5). The numerous
uses of Exodus traditions suggests that John perceives an eschatological exodus with the
Church constituting a new people of God. Moreover, the variety of functions associated
with the Lamb indicates that the Lamb is the most comprehensive christological image in
Revelation.

The Lamb is King of kings and Lord of lords (17.14). His domain is universal.
The image of the Lamb ruling the cosmos might convey to the reader that the Lord of the
universe gained the ultimate victory through suffering and that those who follow his
example will be redeemed by him at the judgment. This image has a social function: it

115 I am grateful to the Revd. Peter Beetham, a British Methodist pastor in the East Anglia District, for
reminding me of this fact.
116 Cf. Sweet, 311-12; Krodel, 362-68; Morris, 248-50; Mounce, 386-88; Ladd, 286-89.
maintains the union between Christ and community through visions which enable the original readership to relate the Lamb’s suffering to their own. This imagery would expect the readers to respond with a faithful conviction to remain true to the Lamb no matter what the consequences.

a. The Lamb gathers, leads, provides benefits for the eschatological Christian community and protects it from Satan and his forces. First, the death of the Lamb brings salvation to the faithful. The Lamb redeems to God persons from every tribe, linguistic group, nationality and ethnic group through his sacrificial death (5.9). The Lamb saves persons, especially the saints (7.14). These two verses must be compared to the reference to the work of Christ in freeing persons from sin in 1.5 through his blood. Priest-kingship is offered in all three passages (see 1.5-6; 5.10; 7.15). Rev 12.11 is similar in that it states that the defeat of Satan in heaven by Michael and his angels came about because of the blood of the Lamb. The sacrificial death of Jesus has positive ramifications for the righteous on earth and the expelling of the unrighteous in heaven (a part of the apologetic agenda of Revelation). The Lamb’s sacrificial death is synonymous with the witness of the saints (12.10-12). Finally, the saints “are the called and elect and faithful” (17.14). The first two predicate adjectives relate to God’s action, the last to the saints’ response.

Secondly, the Lamb protects the community and defeats its enemies. The community will no longer suffer from the natural elements but will find eternal sustenance under the Lamb’s pastoral guidance (7.16-17). He seals the elect and protects them from the eschatological woes (14.1-5; cf. 7.1-8) and watches the eternal punishment of those who have persecuted the people of God (14.10), thereby assuring the earthly community of its security. He bestows positions of honor for those who have suffered the most for their religious convictions (14.1-5; 17.14; cf. 11.18; 12.11; 16.6; 17.6).117

b. Revelation shows concern for the community in its initial presentation of the Lamb. Only the Lamb is worthy to open the scroll which contains God’s eschatological plans. By opening the scroll, the Lamb inaugurates the events which will lead to the ultimate salvation and victory of the people of God (5.9-10; cf. 7.9-10; 19.5-10). Although the seals-cycle functions as a revelatory action, it will bring about a soteriological result for Christians. Indeed, the Lamb is worthy because he has died a sacrificial death that becomes for suffering Christians a means of identification with their lord and also a symbol of victory over sin and evil. One purpose of the Lamb imagery

117Cf. Bauckham, Theology, 94-98.
would then be to encourage Christians to remain true to their faith and thus overcome as the Christ-Lamb overcame.\textsuperscript{118}

c. Many Lamb-passages contain a deterministic element. The Lamb's book of life which contains the citizenship roll for the New Jerusalem is the principal medium of determinism in Revelation. The image of the book of life assures the Christian community of its salvation and the condemnation of its opponents. At once, it connotes assurance and judgment. Names have been included in the book of life "from the foundation of the world" (13.8; 17.8; cf. 3.5; 20.12, 15; 21.27). This would have been a re-assuring message to those yet suffering for their Christian beliefs. This form of determinism indicates some type of repression which the deterministic motif attempts to nullify for the oppressed.

d. The Lamb makes war against the enemies of God on earth and defeats them (12.10-12 and 17.14). These passages are prolepses of the Divine Warrior scene in 19.11-21 which underlies these visions. Suffice it to say that the Divine Warrior image is only developed fully in 19.11-21. The use of military imagery suggests two uncompromising parties in a heated conflict. Revelation's military imagery does not imply that Christians were lax in any way, but that they were suffering in some way. For John, the Roman Empire represents the threat.

e. God Almighty shares divine honors with the Lamb. All creation worships them together (e.g., 5.13; 7.10; cf. 7.15-17 and 21.6). The elect are sealed with both their names (14.1; cf. 22.4). In the New Jerusalem, God Almighty and the Lamb constitute the center of life and religious activity (21.22), illumine the city (21.23 and 22.5), and provide the sustenance for life and eradicate all diseases (22.1-5). John never totally separates God Almighty and the Lamb from the people of God, the followers of the Lamb (cf. 12.10-12), but relates both intimately through various symbols (e.g., the seal/emblem on the saints [14.1; cf. 7.3]; the wedding banquet [19.5-10]; God wipes away tears [7.17; 21.4]).

In Part I of this study, I identified five common messianic features of the one-like-a-son-of-man tradition in 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra and Revelation. The messiah (1) acts as a judge, (2) gathers to himself an elect community, (3) makes war against his enemies, (4) possesses an element of mystery and (5) is described by means of a comparison. Revelation associates the first three elements with the Christ-Lamb: (1) he judges and determines both those who will be saved and those who will be not saved (13.8; 17.8; 21.27) and even views the punishment of the latter group (14.10); (2) he gathers to himself an elect

community upon which he bestows salvific benefits (5.9; 7.9-17; 14.1-5; 17.14; 19.7-9) and (3) he makes war against his enemies and defeats them (17.14; cf. 14.10). Additionally, as with the “one like a son of man,” the Lamb functions as God's divine agent and receives adoration alongside God (5.13; 7.10; 14.1; 21.22-23; 22.1-5). Furthermore, a strong deterministic element is associated with the Lamb. The Lamb has written in the book of life the names of those who have been saved from the very moment of creation (13.8 and 17.8). In this manner, Revelation joins creation and salvation as two aspects of the divine plan. Finally, the death of the Lamb provides salvific benefits for the followers of the Lamb and serves as a model for Christians to follow (e.g., 5.9; 7.9-17; 12.10-12). The Lamb as God's divine agency figure, the deterministic role of the Lamb, and the salvific benefits of the Lamb's death are central features of the christology of the book of Revelation.

The use of these images suggests that John chose these images because Christians were experiencing repression. The purpose would be to persuade Christians to remain faithful by depicting the slain Lamb as the Lord Supreme (17.14). Some might argue that these images refer to wayward Christians. This is possible, but one would expect more explicit references if that were the case, as one finds in 2.14-16 and 2.20-23, and fewer references to the shed blood of the saints, as in 16.6 and 17.6.

2. The Impact of the Lamb Imagery

The image of the Lamb-Christ would have had a wide range of social possibilities for its intended readers/hearers. Some possibilities naturally overlap. I have identified six possible social dimensions. The first three are negative; the final three, positive.

a. The image of the Lamb achieving victory through suffering would have bolstered the faith, courage and sense of hope of those persons to whom John wrote (Rev 5; 7.13-14; 12.7-12; 14.1-5). Revelation, as does the entire NT, reinterprets the cross positively. Some strands of second temple Judaism expected a messiah (or messiahs) who would have judicial and political powers. Revelation retains this picture in 19.11-21, but the initial presentation of the messiah celebrates his meekness (in contrast to the lion imagery) and suffering as a means of conquering (5.7-9). His method of conquering speaks to those who would conquer in the seven churches (Rev 2-3) and establishes the model for emulation (7.13-14). Indeed, when Michael and his heavenly entourage expel Satan from heaven, it is the blood of the Lamb and the testimony of the saints which has made their victory possible (12.7-12). “The testimony of the saints” probably also

---

119 E.g., Bauckham, Theology, 11-17.
alludes to their dying for their beliefs. Finally, those who conquer through suffering form an eschatological community beyond reproach (14.1-5).

This victory-through-suffering motif tells us something of the social context from which the work comes. The Christians to whom John wrote seemed to have experienced some type of regional repression. Participants in the imperial cult probably saw Christians who refused to participate in that cult as threats to their social wellbeing, fearing natural disasters and/or political disorder. The only hope of the recipients of Revelation lay in the next age. No reprieve exists in this one. Thus, the punishment received in this age becomes a salvific means of entry into the next. In such a social context, Christians and the Christian message would come under suspicion, have little social value and be viewed as rather novel. To non-Christians, Christ's crucifixion was justified and necessary as a means of maintaining order in the Empire. To the Christians, it was unjustified but necessary to bring divine order into the world.

While their refusal to participate in traditional Graeco-Roman religious practices would have led to tensions with pagans, by bestowing divine honors on Jesus, Christians would have come into conflict with more traditional Jewish groups who might argue that Christianity was a form of polytheism. For both reasons, the Christian witness would have encountered hostility in Roman Asia by its very nature. At the crux of many passages is the connection between faithful witnessing and suffering that leads to one's salvation (e.g., 7.9-17; 12.7-12; 17.12-14).

b. This brings us to our second motif: revenge upon the oppressors (6.9-11; 14.10). Those who have already died for their religious convictions seek revenge. They receive assurance that their deaths will be avenged but only after the number of persons to die for the faith has been completed. Thus, many in John's community of churches have died and many might yet die. Their cry for retribution by God indicates the helplessness felt by those Christians. Thus, when the saints actually witness the eternal punishment of their persecutors in 14.10, this scene is understandable. They seek a reversal. This quest for vengeance reflects a social setting where Christians have suffered public ridicule and want to see the punishment of their oppressors in the next age just as their oppressors witnessed their suffering in this one.120 1 Enoch 47.1-2, 4 Ezra 4.35-37 and 2 Bar. 23.4-5 come from similar social settings and ask similar questions. In all four books, the question of theodicy and divine justice are of uppermost concern for the seer and his community. The desire to see the opposition suffer while the saints sit in heavenly bliss reflects a social context where the powerless in this dispensation seek privilege in the next. Rev 6.9-11 reflects the deep enmity which exists between two

groups who have mutually exclusive worldviews. Conversely, it is difficult to discern how these verses reflect some form of dissonance or religious laxity. The next motif confirms this point.

c. The Lamb is often associated with military imagery (e.g., 12.7-12; 17.14). The purpose of this imagery, developed more fully in 19.11-20.14, is to avenge the saints. Military imagery dominates the first four seals. The Lamb's control of these events is symbolized by his worthiness to open the seals. Moreover, the heavenly victory of Michael and the angelic host comes about "because of the blood of the Lamb and because of the word of their (i.e., the saints) witness and they did not love their lives even unto death" (12.11). The technical phrase "because of the blood" (cf. 1.5; 5.9; 7.14) and the confirmation statement "because of the word" create a synonymous parallel which further elucidates the fact that dying for the faith is the ultimate sacrifice which is simultaneously the ultimate victory over evil. Again, dying for the faith leads to victory, providing an unexpected reversal. However, more importantly, this reversal, coming within a warring context, provides the means for victory through victimization. At the very least, this image implies an intense struggle by Christians in Asia who are virtually defenseless. They possess no military armaments. They do not resort to guerilla warfare. Their rhetoric falls upon deaf ears. Their only weapon is their shed blood.

Rev 17.14, which contains elements of faithfulness and determinism also set within a warring context, confirms the point just made. Those who oppose God and God's people make war with the Lamb, but the Lamb conquers them because he is the Lord Sovereign of the universe. A special group of persons accompanies the Lamb on this campaign. They are the called, the elect and the faithful (cf. 19.14; 20.4). Referring to them as "the called" and "the elect" echoes references to Israel as the people of God (an eschatological exodus motif). Moreso, it represents God's pre-determined selection of the saints for salvation, a theological feature of Revelation with an aim to exhort the community during its time of trial (cf. 13.8). "The faithful" represents the human response to God's saving action. This passage reflects a social context where the community has been faithful to God and Christ, expects its Lord to punish its oppressors and to liberate the faithful just as the Lord had done in the first (from Egypt) and second (from Babylon) exoduses. The deterministic predicates, "called" and "elect," probably reflect a life setting of immense suffering and deprivation where the oppressed need assurance and re-assurance of the correctness of their religious convictions and the certainty of salvation. The election imagery, coupled with the military defeat of their oppressors, provides the needed means of assurance, a form of therapy. This brings us to

---

121 My expression "military imagery" is similar to Bauckham's "messianic war" (Climax, 210-37; Theology, 67-70).
our next motif, determinism, and takes us from the negative to the positive aspects which accompany the Lamb-imagery.

d. **Determinism** in Revelation assures the community of its salvation. Apocalypticism used determinism to convey to a community God's unending love, concern and care for it. Revelation consistently employs deterministic elements in this way. In so doing, it also joins the Lamb's sacrifice with eschatological salvation. These are maintenance strategies found principally in 13.8; 17.14 and 21.27-22.2.

In 13.8, comfort comes to the oppressed by means of the image of the slain messiah who records the names of the saints in the book of life "from the foundation of the world." The slain one becomes the eschatological judge who will adjudicate who may or may not enter the New Jerusalem. He has gained this role through his faithful witness unto death. The names of those who follow his example have been recorded before time began. Their victory is assured. No uncertainty exists concerning their status.

Since 17.14 has been discussed above, nothing more need be said and we shall move on to 21.27-22.2.

Initially, Rev 21.27-22.2 might appear to be an appendage to the New Jerusalem section (21.9-22.5). In actuality, it serves two purposes. First, it assures the elect and faithful of their inclusion in the New Jerusalem. The purpose of this assurance would be to encourage them to remain even more steadfast in the face of oppression, a prime example of a therapeutic maintenance strategy in Revelation. Secondly, in contrast with the cowardly, the impure, the despicable and the deceitful who are excluded (21.8), the saints are courageous, pure (cf. 14.1-5), praiseworthy and honest. The image of the tree of life which heals the nations follows, symbolizing at once God's creation of the world and God's unending care for the followers of Jesus. Healing may also refer to an end of suffering by Asian Christians. Thus, these few verses communicated to the original readership/audience an unbroken divine providence from creation to ultimate salvation. That is to say, it is all part of the divine plan. Such imagery betrays a life setting of daily uncertainty and suffering and a need for re-assurance of one's beliefs, giving encouragement and hope through a vision of the next age where the pain of this age would end completely and forever.

e. The Lamb **improves the quality of life**. He provides protection, leadership, nourishment, solace and promises deliverance (7.9-17; 13.8; 21.9-22.5), i.e., the Lamb gives to the Christian community in the next age what Graeco-Roman society has denied it in this one. The Lamb not only improves the quality of life but also liberates his people from sin, suffering and death. The Lamb is a deliverer who brings about the cessation of deprivation, protects the community, and leads it to refreshing, life-giving springs where
God Almighty wipes away the tears of the oppressed, a poignant vision. It would convey to the Asian Christians that God takes an interest in their woes and will attend to their sorrows personally (7.13-17; cf. 21.1-8). Such imagery connotes an intense action against Asian Christians, not accommodation to traditional religio-political practices. This community understands itself to have a close, endearing fellowship with its God. It has maintained this fellowship through trying times, symbolized by the tears, and it looks for solace only in the next age (cf. 21.1-8) when God will set apart his people so that their status will be known to all. This will transpire because the Lamb will deliver his people from Satan and his minions through his blood (12.10-12; 15.1-4; 17.14). The wedding of the Lamb and the saints reinforces the closeness of the Christian community to God and to the Lamb (19.1-9; 21.9-13). The saints constitute the Bride of the Lamb: the chaste, eschatological people of God (cf. 14.1-5; 21.9-14, 22-27). They are the called, the elect and the faithful (see 17.14). This community has remained faithful under tremendous pressures. This closeness between God and people is evidenced in the high status of priest-kings bestowed upon the faithful in the book of Revelation, our final motif.

f. The followers of the Lamb will possess a high status as priest-kings in the next age which shall reverse their low status in Graeco-Roman society. I also noted this same motif in chapter four of this study. The Lamb enables his followers to become a kingdom of priests, a high rank in Jewish society, who will rule with Christ (5.9-10; cf. 1.5-6; 20.4-6). This is an elect, pure and elite group with unimpeachable character (14.1-5; 17.14). God and Christ share their own sovereignty with this group, those who have suffered the most (e.g., 7.13-14; cf. 20.4-6). This serves as a powerful maintenance strategy to retain persons within the community. As priests, they have direct access to God, the point of 21.22-27, and have no concerns or fears, the point of 21.1-8. The status of the saints in the coming new dispensation should be contrasted with their present lowly status in the present one where the saints are under attack constantly and their character questioned repeatedly due to their religious convictions. Suffering without judicial reprieve shall be replaced by exaltation to a priestly co-regency with God and Christ. No higher status could be bestowed upon a human being.

Throughout this chapter, I have argued strongly that Revelation reflects an actual oppression of Asian Christians ca. 95 CE. While the letters reflect the problems of religious laxity, the apocalyptic visions, as the research in this chapter has demonstrated, reflect the tensions between Christians and their oppressors in the greater society.
CHAPTER 6:

THE IMAGE OF THE DIVINE WARRIOR IN REV 19.11-21

While the christological images studied in the preceding two chapters of this thesis dealt primarily with the welfare of the life of the Christian community and help the community to identify with Christ, the vision of the Divine Warrior in 19.11-21 judges the worldly institutions which have oppressed the Christian community as a way of vindicating Christians.1 This is an example of nihilation, a maintenance technique which exhorts its readers by providing a vision of the elimination of their oppressors.2

This chapter of the study will put forth four basic arguments for the interpretation of the Divine Warrior visions. First and foremost, it will argue that v. 11 contains the definitive theme for interpreting vv. 11-21: “to judge and make war in righteousness,” i.e., the Divine Warrior righteously judges the world (cf. 15.3; 16.5; 19.2), administers punishment upon the guilty and, in so doing, vindicates the Christian community. While in Rev 15.3, 16.5 and 19.2, it is God who acts, in 19.11-21 it is Christ, another example of Christ functioning as God Almighty's divine agency figure.

Secondly, in light of the thematic statement in v. 11, I shall argue that the symbolic names for Christ in vv. 11-16 signify Christ's complete faithfulness to God Almighty. Furthermore, the names prepare the reader for the images which present Christ as an eschatological judge, a role usually reserved for God Almighty in Jewish literature (e.g., Isa 63.1-6). Some commentators have recognized the juridical dimensions of the images but few have recognized the connection between the names and the images.3 These names represent Christ as the manifestation of God Almighty in human history.4 Finally, I shall demonstrate that the significance of the names increases with each name.

Thirdly, this present chapter will demonstrate that the major images and symbols associated with the rider and the heavenly host conveyed to the reader the judgment and punishment of God's opponents, on the one hand, and the vindication of God's righteous people, on the other.

Finally, throughout this chapter, I shall note the ways in which the Divine Warrior has clear symbolic connections with the one-like-a-son-of-man and the Lamb christological

---

1Cf. Harrington, 228-32.
2See my discussion of nihilation in “Symbolic Biblical Language and Sociological Interpretation,” Chapter 1, this study.
3E.g., Lohmeyer, 159; Ladd, 252-53; Yarbro Collins, Apocalypse, 135; Hughes, 203-08; Giblin, 180-83.
4Cf. Corsini, 351.
images in Revelation. These connections and the consistency of functions and roles among all three major christological images attest to the unity of the christology of Revelation.5

The concept of the God of Israel as a Divine Warrior has its genesis in ANE religion.6 The HB, and Judaism in general, embraced the image of God Almighty as a Divine Warrior long before the advent of Christianity and applied it to various historical events. One finds four main motifs. First, Yahweh Sabaoth, “Lord of hosts,” became one of many titles for God, connoting an image of God as one who makes war against the enemies of Israel (e.g., 1 Sam 15.2; Isa 63.1-6; Zech 11.1-6; Mal 1.4-5; 4.1-3). Secondly, God also slays the sea-monster and brings about order from chaos (e.g., Ps 74.13-14; Isa 27.1; Job 41), Jewish versions of an ancient cosmogonic myth (cf. CTA 2.28-30). Thirdly, God judges and punishes evil wherever it may be found (e.g., Isa 3.1-15; Hag 1.5-11; 2.6-9). Finally, the Divine Warrior liberates his people not once (e.g., Exod 14.1-15) but twice (Isa 35; 40.3-5; see also Isa 51.9-11 where one finds God as Lord Sabaoth, Creator of an orderly cosmos and Liberator of the oppressed). In all four motifs, God Almighty punishes sinful behavior. Second temple Jewish writings often repeated these same themes (e.g., 1 Enoch 1.3-9; Jdt 16.15; Wis 18.15-19). The Divine Warrior God who liberates his people also became a major theme in the Maccabean and Bar Kochba revolts.

Rev 19.11-21 incorporates all but the second of these three traditions,7 re-interpreting them in such a manner that they never become idolatrous icons but remain media of transmission, enabling Revelation’s traditional apocalyptic imagery to remain fresh even when it is not new. Yarbro Collins may be correct when she states that the divine warrior "is the basic principle of composition in the Apocalypse."8 Sweet argues that Rev 19.11-16 contains the climax of Revelation. "Verse 10 has prepared us to see the coming (of the Divine Warrior) in terms of the testimony of Jesus, and this is confirmed by the white horse, the titles Faithful and True and The Word of God, and by the sword issuing from his mouth (emphases as in the text)."9 In Rev 19.11-21, Isa 63.1-6 serves as the principal divine warrior model, but it is not the only one.

5Cf. Lohmeyer, 157-58; Thompson, 41-46.
7Rev 12-13 incorporates the second tradition. At some future date, I hope to write on the use of this tradition in Revelation, 4 Ezra and 2 Baruch.
8Yarbro Collins, Crisis, 130; see also 149-50; Combat, 130-45; 157-90; 231-34.
9Sweet, 281; cf. Thompson, 45.
A. An Overview of Rev 19.11-21

Rev 19.11-21 contains the most complete christological statement in Revelation. All the major christological themes and images can be found in this rather brief section which describes the defeat of the earthly representatives of Satan. Rev 19.11-21 has many maintenance strategies intended to assure its readers/hearers of the final judgment of evil and the vindication of the saints (see the promise in 6.9-11). It contains three visions: (1) Christ's appearance (vv. 11-16); (2) the feast for the birds in 19.17-18 (the counterimage of the marriage feast in 19.7-9); and (3) the punishment of the beast and his followers (vv. 19-21). This pericope continues the process of the universal defeat of Satan begun by Michael and the heavenly host described in 12.7-1210 and anticipates the final defeat of Satan, Death and Hades in 20.1-3, 7-10. Rev 17.13-14 is also a prolepsis of 19.11-21. This is evident in the reference to war (17.14 and 19.11, 19; cf. 12.7) and the defeat of the satanic forces by the "Lord of lords and King of kings" (17.14 and 19.16). The visions in 12.7-12 and 17.13-14 have prepared the readers/hearers for 19.11-21, which in turn prepares them for 20.1-3, 7-10. Within Rev 19.11-21, Christ's symbolic names and images prepare the reader/hearer for Christ's role as a judge of the nations in God's stead (cf. Isa 63.1-6).

In v. 11, the narrator indicates to the reader the theme of this passage by describing the Divine Warrior as one who "judges and makes war in righteousness." Judgment (cf. 1.16) and war (cf. 17.14) are not two tasks but two aspects of one task: the vindication of the saints (cf. 6.9-11; 12.17). John prepares the reader for a re-interpretation of God's judgment in Isa 11.4 in v. 15. This vision also makes connections with the other major christological images, the "one like a son of man" (cf. 19.12 with 1.14 and 2.18) and the Lamb (cf. 19.16 with 17.14). These connections assure the hearer/reader that the Divine Warrior is identical to the Christ presented by means of these other two images. In order to understand this passage fully, one first must examine the symbolic names given to Christ and then analyze the images and symbols associated with him. The names given to Christ symbolize Christ's complete unity with God Almighty and prepare the reader for Christ's role as judge, the primary role of the Divine Warrior in vv. 11-21, roles traditionally reserved for God Almighty in early Judaism.

B. The Symbolic Names

The purpose of the symbolic names in Rev 19.11-16 is to present the Christ as God Almighty's eschatological judge.

10Cf. Wall, 229.
1. The first name is "Faithful and True" (πιστός καὶ ἀληθινός [v. 11]).

These, or similar words, occur elsewhere (ὁ μάρτυς, ὁ πιστός [1.5]; ὁ μάρτυς μου ὁ πιστός μου [2.13]; ὁ ἄγιος, ὁ ἀληθινός [3.7]; ὁ μάρτυς ὁ πιστός καὶ ἀληθινός [3.14]; cf. 19.9). This name also recalls the exhortations to remain faithful (e.g., 2.10 and 17.14). However, the most significant occurrences are in 21.5 and 22.6 where God's words are πιστοὶ καὶ ἀληθινοὶ.

The similarity between 19.11, on the one hand, and 21.5 and 22.6, on the other, is lost in many translations because 19.11 is most often translated "Faithful and True"; 21.5 and 22.6, "trustworthy and true" (e.g., NRSV, NIV, NJB, NAB; cf. GNB [English]; Die Bibel [German]; La Bible, La Sainte Bible [French]; La Bibblia [Italian]; but consistently, NASB [English]; Santa Biblia [Spanish]). Rev 19.9, 21.5 and 22.6 would assert God's ability to bring his words and his will into living history. Thus, Christ in his person makes God's will manifest in human history.

The first name unites God Almighty, Christ and the Christian community in two ways. First, the term "faithful" unites Christ and community. Of its eight occurrences in Revelation, five relate to dying for the faith (1.5b; 2.10, 13; 3.14 [in light of 1.5-6] and 17.14 [in light of 7.14 and 14.4]). While those five passages relate to the community and its need for staunch religious fidelity, the remaining three passages assure the community of its reward if it remains steadfast to its religious convictions (19.11; 21.5; 22.6). Secondly, the last three occurrences relate to God Almighty (21.5; 22.6) and to Christ (19.11), who has already shown his faithfulness (1.5-6): because they are faithful and true their promises to the conquerors will be honored. These passages assure the hearers/readers that if they conquer as Christ conquered, they too would rule during the millennium and not face judgment (see 20.4-6).

"Ἀληθινός has a more restricted function in Revelation. It always refers to God or Christ. It describes God's nature (6.10), exemplifies God's actions (15.3; 16.7; 19.2, 9; 21.5; 22.6) and constitutes part of Christ's name (3.7, 14; 19.11). In seven instances, it

---

11This passage has several textual variants, none of which alter its meaning significantly. I agree with Metzger that Sinaïticus' reading best explains the others (B. M. Metzger, A Textual Commentary on the Greek New Testament [Stuttgart: UBS, 1975] 760-61).
12Thompson correctly notes this as a chief feature of Revelation. "Different sections of Revelation are also connected and unified by repeated metaphors, symbols and motifs" (40).
14This is a therapeutic maintenance strategy aimed at instilling a renewed spiritual fervor within its recipients in order to withstand oppression ("Symbolic Biblical Language and Sociological Interpretation," Chapter 1, this study).
functions as a synonym to other virtues (6.10, 15.3; 16.7; 19.2, 11; 21.5; 22.6). In this way, John communicates to his readers/hearers that ἀληθινός is a virtue.

Thus, in 19.11, Christ is the divine agency figure who personifies and makes manifest the fidelity and the veracity of God Almighty. Christ comes as a Divine Warrior to judge the unjust and to vindicate the righteous (see 14.13) who have remained steadfast (cf. 1.9). This name might also reflect a social setting in which the Christian witness of faith has been denigrated. By employing this specific name, John might be attempting to assure the Christian community of the veracity of its witness to Christ and also Christ's witness to God Almighty.

2. The next name is not revealed (v. 12). An element of hiddenness is a key motif throughout Revelation (e.g., 2.17). This leads us to ask two questions. First, why is the name not revealed? Secondly, what is the name?

Commentators have offered several answers. Some have argued that the name is unrevealed so that no one may have power over God. Others have argued that the unrevealed name symbolized that Christ's nature is unfathomable. Still, others have attempted to ascertain the name itself. While some argue that the unrevealed name refers to the tetragrammaton, YHWH, the name Jews believed to be too holy to speak, others say it is "Jesus," or a symbolic name within Rev 19.11-16. Finally, Charles argues that the unrevealed name is an interpolation given the symbolic name in v. 13.

Against the first three suggestions, one must wonder why any symbolic names are given at all in vv. 11-16. The three names are indeed revealed. These names also would be rather unusual substitutes for the tetragrammaton and perhaps be unintelligible to John's readers/hearers. Furthermore, the name in v. 16 constitutes an unnecessary repetition if one argues for "King of kings and Lord of lords" or either of the other two revealed names as well. Finally, Charles has attributed over 22 interpolations throughout the book to a final editor who was more fluent in Greek than John, but not an orthodox Christian. His criterion for discerning interpolations were (1) passages which did not fit the context and

---


16 Cf. Bauckham, Theology, 72-73; Thompson, 44-45.

17 E.g., Schüssler Fiorenza, Revelation, 105; Kiddle, 385; cf. Lohmeyer, 158-59.

18 E.g., Ladd, 254; Sweet, 283; Morris, 223; Thompson, 44; cf. Lohmeyer, 158-59.

19 E.g., Farrer, Revelation, 198.


21 E.g., "King of Kings and Lord of Lords" (Lilje, 244).

22 Charles, Rev 1:132.
(2) a vocabulary and/or writing style that was inconsistent with John’s vocabulary and writing style. However, Bauckham, in agreeing with Charles on the background of Rev 8.1-5, has shown that Charles could be rather subjective in his analyses even when he might be exegetically correct.23 The presence of the reference to the unrevealed name in all surviving Greek manuscripts and versions, with witnesses across textual families and with wide geographical distribution, surely argues against Charles’ interpolation theory in regard to this verse. While these theories, save the interpolation one, are not unreasonable, each leaves us with significant unanswered questions. It is important to look for parallels within Revelation itself for a consistent pattern associated with the motif of unrevealed things.

The unrevealed name in Revelation functions in a manner similar to the messianic secret motif in Mark. In Mark, the messianic secret explains to the reader why the Chosen One was not recognized by the Chosen People, while the unrevealed names in Revelation explain why the Chosen One and his followers have not been recognized by the world. Thus, in both Mark and Revelation, the authors are at pains to explain why their election is so clear to Christians but opaque to outsiders. Similarly, while the messianic secret is not a complete secret in Mark (e.g., 8.27-29; 14.61-64), neither is the name of the elect a complete secret in Revelation (e.g., 14.1). This is another example of the author providing the hearer/reader with a message of assurance. The hearer/reader is assured that his/her perception of the universe is correct. It is the outsiders, those who do not recognize the Christ, who are incorrect. In their ignorance, they have killed the "Lord of lords and King of kings." Instead of leading to Christ's demise, his death has led to his exaltation and the salvation of his followers (e.g., 6.9-11; 7.13-14). Oppression of the saints becomes intelligible in this scenario. Thus, Asian Christians are able to decode the will of God while non-Christians cannot.24 Similarly, since this name is only known by the Divine Warrior himself, it symbolizes the Divine Warrior's distinctive role as God Almighty's divine agency figure.

What is the name? It is God's name. Several passages clearly point to this. First, Rev 14.1 states that the 144,000 on Mt. Zion had God's name and the Lamb's name on their foreheads, an additional fact not mentioned in 7.1-8 and which answers the question of the new name raised in 2.17.25 Secondly, in 2.17 and 14.3 the conquerors are associated with some new data which only they are able to appropriate. In one stroke, the reader perceives her/his distinctiveness and the reason why. Only the elect recognize who

23On Charles’ interpolation hypothesis, see Rev 1:1-lxi; for Bauckham’s critique, see Climax, 70-83; Theology, 40-43. I am persuaded by Bauckham.
25See the exegesis of 2.17 in chapter four of this study.
Christ is, who sent him and the truth of Christ's witness. Thirdly, as noted earlier, John associates Christ with God Almighty (e.g., 5.13; 7.17; 11.15; 12.10; 14.1; 21.22).

Therefore, the name in 14.1 constitutes one name for both. Fourthly, the preceding name, "Faithful and True," describes the very nature of God (21.5; 22.6) and presents Christ as the authentic, complete manifestation of God. Fifthly, the next name, "The Word of God" (v. 13), also presents the Christ as the full manifestation of God Almighty. Placed between these two epithets and given the manner in which John consistently depicts God sharing divine honors with Christ, the unrevealed name must be God's name, i.e., God shares his name with Christ in such a way that God's name becomes Christ's name. The unrevealed name would convey to the reader that like Christ, she/he has received new data (cf. 2.17) only intelligible to those few who are chosen (cf. 17.14). This is an apologia and the expected response would be an attitude of steadfast assurance and hopefulness. Finally, as King of kings and Lord of lords, Christ assumes a title held previously by God and we shall see that many of the images associated with Christ were not associated with the messiah in Jewish traditions prior to Revelation, but with God.

3. The next name, mentioned briefly above, is "The Word of God" (ὁ λόγος τοῦ θεοῦ). Again, this name symbolizes the complete human manifestation of God in Christ. The development of this mode of christological expression owes much to divergent Jewish traditions.

The tradition-history most often employs divine speech as a symbol of divine power and/or as a means of judging evil. For example, Hos 6.5 reads, "Therefore I have hewn them in pieces by the prophets; I have slain them by the words of my mouth." This verse employs two slightly different metaphors which envision speech as a manifestation of God's power. Other passages follow suit (e.g., Ps 33.6; 147.15, 18; 148.8; Jer 23.29). However, none of these passages present the Word in human form.

A move toward hypostasis occurs in the wisdom tradition (e.g., Prov 1.20-22; 8.1-36; Sir 1.6-20; Wis 18.15-19), apocalypticism (e.g., 1 Enoch 42) and Hellenistic Jewish philosophy (e.g., Philo, On Flight and Finding 50-51; cf. John 1.1-14 and 1 Cor 1.18-25). The closest parallel to Rev 19.13 is Wis 18.15-19.

26 For this reason, Christianity might have been perceived by many in the first century CE as another eastern mystery religion.
27 Beasley-Murray suggests that it may refer to a cosmic mediator in connection with the logos-type christology current in early Christianity (280), but he fails to develop this thesis.
28 The imagery in 19.15 functions similarly and will be discussed momentarily.
29 I am grateful to Prof. Adela Yarbro Collins for bringing this parallel to my attention in private discussion. See also, Lohmeyer, 159; Sweet, 281-84. In other private discussions, Dr. Carol Newsome of Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA, and Dr. David Williams of the University of Georgia, Athens, GA, USA, independently have stated that the QL sectarian literature has no traces of this or a similar tradition.
The book of Wisdom is dated in the middle of the first century BCE. In Wis 18.15-19, Wisdom leaps from heaven to earth "like a relentless warrior" (v. 15; cf. Rev 19.11). Wisdom possesses a sharp sword and spreads death everywhere (v. 16; cf. Rev 19.17-21). Nightmarish phantoms frighten the god-less and they fall dead (vv. 17-18). Dream visions in the next age explain their fate (v. 19).

I see four similarities between Wis 18.15-19 and Rev 19.11-21. First, both give the Word of God human characteristics. Secondly, both describe the figure with military motifs. Thirdly, both specifically refer to a sword. Fourthly, both relate the downfall of sinners. However, the two passages are not without their differences. While the Word in Wisdom is a hypostasis of God, the Divine Warrior in Revelation is a divine agency figure. In addition, Revelation's Divine Warrior is the messiah while Wisdom is not. Furthermore, Wisdom 18.15-19 places the metaphor in the leaping of God's word from heaven, but Revelation uses a representative figure in the Divine Warrior.

What do these differences and similarities tell us? Judaism witnessed a variety of concepts of the innate power of God's word. While some writers spoke of heavenly hypostases as extensions of God (e.g., Prov 8; Philo), others described the Word of God as a manifestation of God's power (e.g., Jer 23.29; Hos 6.5). Wis 18.15-19 combines these two traditions to some degree. Without explicitly stating that the Word of God became human, or assumed human-likeness, it describes the Word as performing human activities. Wis 18.15-19, therefore, anticipates the vision of Rev 19.11-21, having several similar elements, with the exception of the messianic features and apocalyptic dimensions. Rev 19.11-21, therefore, modifies the tradition in a Christian manner, a practice identified in many earlier discussions in this study. The image of the Divine Warrior is like divine speech made manifest in human form, faithfully re-presenting God's message to humankind: "The Word of God" is faithful and true to God.

The Divine Warrior comes not as the convicted criminal but as God's eschatological Judge. Sweet correctly describes this figure as "the personification of God's will suddenly made lethally present in the disobedient world." Moreover, the tradition-history behind this imagery does not indicate a social setting where religious waywardness, laxity, accommodation to or compliance with improper religious practices brings a judgment upon the people of God or a context where the people of God live in relative comfort. Rather, the tradition-history suggests that this symbolic name conveys to the original recipients

---

30 Sweet, 282-83, quote from 283. Sweet also argues that "The Word of God" in Rev 19.13 probably has the prologue of the fourth gospel in mind (283). This is possible but given the many differences between the two books (e.g., δωρεάν in Rev, δωρός in John for Lamb; apocalyptic eschatology in Rev, realized eschatology in John), it is probably more likely that they draw from the same tradition discussed in the body of this thesis.

31 Cf. Thompson, 186-97.
judgment upon their enemies and there is nothing to indicate that John employs it in any other way. This is a maintenance strategy which depicts Christ as God's divine agent who represents the authentic message of God and also comes in God's stead as an eschatological judge. Its purpose would be to convince its original readers that they who remain faithful to Christ's message are faithful to God Almighty and will enter the New Jerusalem.

4. "King of kings and Lord of lords," our last epithet, is the most important name. Its tradition-history has socio-political implications. Following Beale, I have argued in an earlier publication that the probable source for "King of kings and Lord of lords" is Dan 4.37 LXX.32 Both Dan 4 and Rev 19 remove the rule of evil kings and depict a universal defeat of God's enemies. In these two contexts and elsewhere (Deut 10.17; 1 Tim 6.15 and 1 Enoch 9.4), this title, or a similar one, denotes the sovereignty of God Almighty over all other powers. Rev 17.14 and 19.16 are unique in associating it with the messiah. Again, we note Revelation's Christian modification of a Jewish tradition. In this way, Revelation joins christology and dominion.33

Revelation unites christology and dominion throughout the book. Christ is the ruler of the kings of the earth and has made his followers a priestly kingdom (1.5-6; 5.10; 20.6). God, Christ and/or Christians rule together forever (11.17; 20.4; 22.5; cf. 12.10; 15.3). God Almighty also reigns alone (11.17; 15.3; 19.6). In this sacred cosmos, God Almighty rules the universe and shares dominion with Christ, who in turn shares it with an elite group of Christians (20.4-6). Once again, one notes a direct link from God to Christ to the Christian community as God Almighty shares power with those who have been the most faithful witnesses. The social impact would be to encourage communal cohesion based upon the promised future salvation (e.g., 2.11).

It is also significant that Revelation associates the title "King of kings and Lord of lords" with two different christological images, the Lamb (17.14) and the Divine Warrior (19.16). Both passages fall within a context where the supreme King and Lord subdues his foes in battle, consistent with the tradition-history.34 In both, the Christ wins the

---


33The joining of christology and dominion throughout the book of Revelation, a topic I hope to discuss in more detail in another project, is an argument for its internal unity and one against those who would argue that the numbered series actually derive from a separate Jewish work (e.g., S. A. Edwards). J. M. Ford has recently changed her position and now believes the book is more unified than she had argued previously (SBL seminar "Reading the Apocalypse: The Intersection of Literary and Social Methods," Philadelphia, PA, USA, Nov. 18-22, 1995).

34Rev 17.14 and 19.16 are examples of the messianic military motif in Revelation. See helpful discussions in Bauckham, Climax, 210-37; Theology, 67-70; Yarbro Collins, "The Political Perspective of the Revelation to John," JBL 96 (1977) 241-56.
victory for them which they cannot win for themselves. This is a maintenance strategy exhorting its readers/hearers to stand firm in their faith until the end. This name relates directly to the stated purpose of the Divine Warrior in 19.11: “to judge and make war in righteousness.” The righteousness of the saints must be confirmed and their sacrifice must be avenged (see 6.9-11) in the vision of the next age to sustain them in the reality of the present one (cf. 14.9-13; 16.6; 17.6). Furthermore, the judgment against the beast, the false prophet and their entourage is a righteous judgment (see 19.17-21; cf. 15.3-4). The association of the title with two different christological images (17.14 and 19.16) demonstrates the christological unity and consistency within Revelation.

Finally, this symbolic name may contain a political message for its original readers by conveying that Christ, not Caesar, is the true ruler of the world. Both 17.14 and 19.16 employ "King of kings and Lord of lords" within a military context. Rev 17.14 relates the defeat of Roman political dominance. It might be intentional that 17.14 follows rather closely the suffering mentioned in 16.6 and 17.6. Similarly, Roman political powers are defeated by the Divine Warrior in 19.17-21 after the name is given in 19.16. The tradition-history of the symbolic name supports this argument.

The discussion of the symbolic christological names in Rev 19.11-16 concludes here. The first name, "Faithful and True," conveys to the reader that Christ Jesus has been unswervingly faithful to God Almighty. Rev 21.5 and 22.6 confirm this. The second name, unrevealed, communicates to the Christian community Christ's distinction and election, a status unnoticed and unacknowledged by the greater society, just as their status went unnoticed and unacknowledged by the greater society. Similarly, as only Christ knew the second name, a sign of Christ's exaltation, so too the saints possessed information which only they knew (e.g., 14.3). Thus, even with this name, the Christian community has a point of identification with the Christ. The third name, "The Word of God," presents Christ as more than a witness but also as the full manifestation of the divine plan in human form. The definite article makes it clear that there is only one "Word of God." However, this name did not necessarily connote divine agency. It could merely connote hypostasis (e.g., Wis 18.15-19). Finally, the title "King of kings and Lord of lords" gives Christ the most powerful and authoritative name. It presents Christ as the sovereign Lord of the universe, a role also associated with the one-like-a-son-of-man christology and also a title usually reserved for God Almighty in earlier traditions. Thus, Christ, the cosmic King and Lord, serves as God's eschatological divine agency figure who is authorized to defeat the forces of evil and vindicate the elect.

The cumulative impact of these names, therapeutic maintenance strategies, upon John's audience/readership would be to convince Christians of the authenticity and fullness
of the witness of Jesus to the will of God. As God’s full revelation, Jesus’ testimony is completely trustworthy (v. 11) and for this reason Jesus is The Word of God made manifest. Against those who do not recognize him, Christ comes as a warrior-king who imposes his rule over earthly potentates (19.16). This is a key point, for the crisis pits Christ and his followers against the beast and his followers. That means that these symbolic names are not addressing issues within the church, such as complacency, complicity or accommodation to external religio-political pressures (bona fide issues in their own right), but they are reflections of a tense conflict between two unreconciling groups. For John, the opposing group is probably the Roman government, represented by the provincial governor and supporters of the imperial cult (Rev 13). The Christians, the weaker group, seek divine intervention to rectify the situation. This position on the social genesis of this imagery is consistent with the tradition-history of the Divine Warrior image as Lord Sabaoth, one who punishes evil and liberates the oppressed, as well as being consistent with the last two symbolic names. It is also consistent with the hypothesis of the social status of Christians in the Roman Empire ca. 60-120 offered in chapter one of this study and the conclusions reached concerning the social role of the other christological images studied earlier in chapters four and five, respectively, of this study.

Rev 19.11-16 presents a sacred universe with the Divine Warrior performing functions traditionally performed by God Almighty (cf. Isa 63.1-6; Wis 18.15-19) or Michael (cf. Dan 10.21; Rev 12.7-12) and acquiring a title previously held only by God Almighty (cf. Deut 10.17; Dan 4.37 LXX; 1 Enoch 9.4). The Divine Warrior is the Deliverer sent by God who is also Lord in heaven and on earth and, as such, functions on a level with God Almighty. The saints accompany them as co-regents of the cosmos, another example of Revelation’s promise of priest-kingship, the uniting of Christ and community. This would be a strong therapeutic strategy, giving its readers assurance of their own salvation, providing vindication for their faith as followers of Christ and promising the political end to the system which represses the Church.

For such believers, these symbolic names, the first three being representational images and the latter one presentational, would present powerful means of therapy and messages of assurance by identifying the Divine Warrior with God Almighty and the saints; assuring them that the “one like a son of man,” the Lamb and the Divine Warrior are one and the same messiah; confirming the messiah’s complete faithfulness and thorough witness to the will of God; preparing the reader for the judgment role of the Divine Warrior

---

35 This point supports our brief discussion of the importance of Christ’s witness and the churches’ witness to Christ in chapter one of this study.

36 See the discussion of myths, images and symbols in chapter one of this study.
in vv. 17-21 on behalf of the saints by bestowing symbolic epithets upon him to act in God Almighty's stead.

C. The Images
While the symbolic names present Christ as God's human messenger *par excellence* and eschatological judge, the images in 19.11-21 are basically concerned with the judgment of the nations. These images suggest that Christians suffered extensively under regional repression. They also connect the Divine Warrior image to other christological images and themes within the book of Revelation. These images are maintenance strategies employed to retain persons within the sacred cosmos.

1. The first image is in v. 12: "his eyes (are [like]) a flame of fire (φλόξ πυρὸς)." The same words are used in 1.14 and 2.18 to describe the "one like a son of man" (cf. Dan 10.6). In this manner, the reader finds assurance that the figure is the same Christ found in Rev 1-3 and 14.14-16, demonstrating once more the christological unity of the book. The fiery eyes connote the purity and powers of perception for judgment that Christ possesses. For Christians, Christ's judgment should be more important than any human judgment.

2. The many diadems signify the Christ's royal status. John has used διαδήματα as a royal symbol previously (12.3; 13.1; cf. Diodorus Siculus 4, 4, 4; Philo, *Fuga* 111; 1 Macc 11.13; *T. Judah* 12.4). In Rev 12 and 13, it inappropriately refers to the Roman emperors. In Rev 19.12, it refers to the true ruler of the universe, anticipating the title in 19.16. As king, Christ has the right to judge the world. Second temple Jewish writers used diadem as a symbol for royalty. For these Christians, Christ is the true Lord worthy of reverence and any participation in the imperial cult is unthinkable. This imagery probably reflects deep politio-religious tensions between Christians and those who supported the imperial cult.

3. In v. 13, the rider's robe "has been dipped (or soaked, or dyed [with the REB]) in blood." Is this the rider's blood, the saints' or his opponents'? Commentators have not reached anything near a consensus. However, most commentators accept that Isa 63.1-6 is the background for this image.

In Isa 63.1-6, God Almighty comes from the east in crimson apparel, robed in splendor and marching forth in majesty. He has trodden the winepress and made his

37On the textual variants, see Metzger, *Textual Commentary*, p. 761. In either case, my main point is unchanged.

38Cf. Ladd, 254; Sweet, 282; Morris, 223.
39See also Ezek 40.5-16 where God returns from the east to the new, purified temple.
garment red. Trampling the winepress symbolized punishing the nations in Isaiah; the red stains, their blood. This is an act of judgment upon them which, in turn, saves Israel. However, Revelation often re-interprets traditions and it is always prudent to look internally for clues when interpreting this book.

The interpretation of Rev 19.13a is further complicated by its textual variants. Is the robe βεβαμμένον, ἐρραντισμένον, βεβαντισμένον, ἐραμμένον, βεβαμμένον, περιφεραμμένον or περιφεραντισμένον? Βεβαμμένον is almost certainly the original reading. Its various meanings give it an ambiguity which might have caused some scribes to substitute a more definitive term. It also has broad geographical manuscript support.40

However, the issue does not end with reconstructing the text. One must now translate βεβαμμένον. Translation relates directly to interpretation. Many argue that the blood belongs to the warrior’s enemies, as in Isa 63. For those who hold this position, Christ comes as God’s eschatological agent of justice to execute judgment against the Parthians or against satanic earthly institutions; when John wishes to convey Christ’s death, he refers to the slain Lamb.41

Caird represents another school of thought which argues that the saints’ blood stains the robe. For example, he reads 19.13 in light of 14.18-20 where he interprets the vintage imagery as a reference to martyrdom and the gathering of the elect. “The Rider bears on his garment the indelible traces of the death of his followers, just as he bears on his body the indelible marks of his own passion.” He continues, "His blood has made their robes white, and theirs has made his red."42

Others take a third position that the blood belongs to Christ. For example, Wall argues that John reverses the imagery of Isa 63.1-6. He follows the patristic commentators who interpreted this image in light of 5.5-6 which represents the crucifixion.43

The first interpretation, that it is the blood of Christ’s enemies, seems to me to be the most plausible one. The vision itself tells us in v. 11 that Christ comes to “judge and make war in righteousness.” In keeping with that thematic statement, it makes most sense that “the robe dipped in blood” symbolizes the blood of the opponents of Christ to be shed in vv. 15, 17-21. Some would counter that according to this interpretation their blood would appear on Christ’s garments before the fact and, therefore, my interpretation must be incorrect. I would respond that John is employing a symbolic image, not literal language,

40See BAGD, 132-33, 650, 733, 734; Metzger, Textual Commentary, 761-62; see also Charles, Rev 2:133-34 and Mounce, 345, esp. n. 26; cf. Swete, 252, on the possible Septuagintal influences. 41E.g., Charles, Rev 2:133; Swete, 252; Prigent, 294-95; C. H. Giblin, The Book of Revelation (GNS 34; Collegeville, MN: Liturgical, 1991) 181; Beasley-Murray, 280, esp. n. 26; Lohmeyer, 159; Kiddle, 384-85; Hughes, 204. For a critique of this position, see Caird (242-44).
42Caird, 243-44; see also Krodel, 323.
43Wall, 231; see also Farrer, Revelation, 197; Sweet, 282; Morris, 224; Boring, 196-97.
and that one should not expect precision and order in a book which repeats its message several times and reinterprets religious symbols. Indeed, when Christ walks the winepress of God's wrath in v. 15, this symbolizes the defeat of God's enemies which will not occur until vv. 17-21. Finally, the invitation to the birds (vv. 17-18) precedes the actual meal (v. 21b). I note with others the need to recognize the fluid nature of apocalyptic language. Rev 8.7-8, 11.6, 14.20, 16.6 and 17.6 provide examples of blood associated with the punishment of God's opponents because of their oppression of Christians. This eschatological vision of judgment upon their foes reverses the Christian experience in earthly courts, probably reflecting a tense conflict between Christians and non-Christians without any signs of reconciliation. Moreover, this imagery is associated with the symbolic name "The Word of God," a phrase which our comments above demonstrated had a judgment tradition-history. Nothing in the passage suggests that John employs it in any other manner. It connotes Christian suffering and a desire to end that suffering.

4. Christ and the heavenly army accompanying him all sit on white horses and the heavenly army wears pure, white, fine linen clothing (vv. 11, 14). This is a beautiful image; it has several parallels in Revelation. It symbolizes purity. As I noted in discussing Rev 19.7-9 in the preceding chapter of this study, bright, radiant linen clothing symbolized purity and was worn most often by heavenly beings or the high priest on Yom Kippur in the HB and second temple Jewish literature (e.g., Lev 16.4; Ezek 9.2-3, 11; 10.1-8; Dan 10.5-6, 12.3-7; 1 Enoch 62.15-16; 104.2; 2 Bar. 51.5, 12; Philo, Moses 2.17; Josephus, Jewish War 5.230-237). Thus, 19.14 presents righteous soldiers fully prepared for battle (cf. 14.1-5). These images, associated with the name "The Word of God" with its judgmental, militaristic tradition-history, reflect a social circumstance where the elect Christian community seeks liberation from a political system which has suppressed its "word" and denigrated its witness. The Christian community sees itself as an elect, holy community accompanying its Lord on a holy war against the enemies of the faith, the beast and his followers. This is an example of how Revelation's apocalyptic visions address the relationship between the Asian Christian community and its oppressors in the greater society by transferring the resolution to the the cosmic plane.

5. The next image in 19.15a is not what one might expect to follow. Instead of an account of the battle between the Divine Warrior and his followers, on one side, and the forces of evil, on the other, the Divine Warrior defeats the nations "with the sharp sword coming from his mouth" (19.15; cf. 1.16; 2.12, 16; see also Isa 49.2; Hos 6.5; Eph 6.17; 44I am grateful to Richard Garside, a fellow NT postgraduate at King's, for bringing this to my attention. 45E.g., Rissi, Time and History, 55-62; Ladd, 254-55; Sweet in private conversation. 46Cf., e.g., Seiss, 240; Thompson, 78-79. 47Seiss has an interesting argument that explains how these evil forces came together (252-53).
2 Thess 2.8; Heb 4.12; 1 Enoch 62.2). This is an example of Revelation's messianic military motif. This sword imagery links the christological Divine Warrior image with the "one like a son of man image" in 1.16, 2.12 and 2.16. The image changes but the result is the same: the nations have been judged, found wanting and punished.

John employs this image consistent with tradition. In Isa 49.2, the prophet uses the image of his mouth as a sharp sword to convey that his prophetic ministry divides fact from falsehood, good from evil. Similarly, Hos 6.5 describes Israel's punishment as their being cut into pieces by the prophets who function as God's spokespersons (cf. Eph 6.17; 2 Thess 2.8; Heb 4.12). This motif attempts to assure the original readers of the condemnation of their opponents, while conversely guaranteeing their salvation as faithful followers of the Judge. Moreover, associated with "The Word of God," with its judgmental, militaristic elements, the image and the name together strongly suggest a Sitz-im-Leben where Christians suffered because of their witness and sought relief from their oppression. The imagery is rather intense for a minor disagreement.

6. The iron rod (v. 15b) continues the judgment theme: "and he will lead (πομαντη) them with an iron rod." This image has parallels with the "one like a son of man" in 2.27 and Christ's birth recorded in 12.5, establishing a link with other christological images in the book. Again, Revelation is consistent with Jewish tradition. Ps 2.9 reads, "You shall break (or lead) them with an iron rod and you shall shatter them like earthenware" (translation mine). Ps 2.9 LXX reads, "You shall shepherd (or 'lead' [πομαντη]) them with an iron rod; you shall shatter them to pieces like earthen vessels." Isa 11.4b reads, "And he will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth and with the breath of his lips he will slay the wicked." Ps. Sol. 17.24, written near the middle of the first century BCE, interpreted Ps 2.9 messianically and reads, "To shatter all their material possessions with an iron rod, to destroy the lawless nations with the word of his mouth." Ps 2.9 LXX and Ps. Sol. 17 depict the messiah ruling and judging the evil nations of the earth. At the very least, Isa 11.4 understands God to judge the world for its evil deeds, also.

These passages share several common features. First, all present the messiah as a righteous judge imposing a punishing verdict upon the nations. Further, all employ the rod as the symbol of judgment. Moreover, two passages employ πομαντω to describe the messiah's leadership (Ps 2.9 LXX; Rev 19.15b), while two others employ the messiah's mouth as a symbol of punishment (Isa 11.4b; Ps. Sol. 17.24; cf. Rev 19.15a). Finally, Ps. Sol. 17.24 and Rev 19.15 have the most similarities. Both state that the messiah (1)

48 On this topic, see Bauckham, Climax, 210-37; Theology, 67-70, 76-80, 88-92.
49 Cf. Lohmeyer, 159.
50 See Charles, Rev 1:75-76.
will punish the nations and (2) will employ an iron rod. The overall similarities among these four works indicate a common second temple messianic tradition based upon Ps 2.9. Within this tradition, the messiah judges the nations. The reader must be acquainted with this tradition-history and be able to apply its meaning to her/his own context. This image is a therapeutic maintenance technique. It presents the eschatological judgment of the nations as a means of vindicating the saints in order to bolster the religious fervor of the Christian community. Conversely, Christian wavering, assimilation or some other form of religious breakdown do not appear to be primary issues here. A comparison with Rev 2.27 confirms this argument.

Both 2.27 and 19.15 give authority to rule the evil nations. In 2.27, Christ shares this authority with the conquerors. In 19.15, God Almighty shares it with Christ, the Divine Warrior. God, Christ and the conquerors stand on one side of the cosmic battlefield; Satan and his minions on the other.

7. The third image in 19.15c, treading the winepress (πατεῖ τὴν ληφών τοῦ οἶνον τοῦ θυμόν τῆς ὀργῆς τοῦ θεοῦ) also connotes judgment. Again, John employs an image consistent with its traditional use. In Isa 63.3-6, God treads the winepress in anger as a symbolic act to punish the nations (cf. Isa 28.3 and Mic 7.10). Isa 63.3-6 LXX also use θυμός (vv. 3, 5) and ὀργή (v. 6) to convey God's judgment against the nations. Moreover, Rev 6.14, 14.10 and 14.19 use similar expressions to describe God's anger with the sinfulness nations and God's punishment of them. The same is true of the parallel passage in 19.15. All three refer to God's wrath as a symbol for punishing evil.

Rev 19.15 employs three separate images for the purpose of stating that Christ will judge the nations, each reinforcing the other two and also reiterating the superscription in 19.11: "to judge and make war in righteousness." There is no evidence that these images deal with internal matters but, rather, with the plight of the church in Roman society. Finally, 19.15 might be another version of 14.17-20.

8. The next image, Rev 19.17-18, contains the second of the three visions in this section and has its origins in Ezek 39.4, 17-20 (cf. Ezek 29.5; Isa 56.9; Jer 12.9, 46.10, 51.40; Hag 2.22). Once again, Revelation employs an image in keeping with tradition. In prophecies against Gog, Ezek 39.4 and 39.17 describe how those vanquished by God in battle would become food for wild animals. In Revelation, the messiah replaces God as the Divine Warrior. Both Ezekiel and Revelation begin with a summons to eat (Ezek 39.17; Rev 19.17), followed by itemizations of those vanquished. Both lists include horses and horsemen (Ezek 39.20; Rev 19.18). There are some differences as well. While Ezek 39 confines its description to those of the higher socio-economic-political stratum, Rev 19

---

51For a different interpretation, see Mounce (347, n. 30).
52See my comments on 14.14-16 in chapter four of this study.
includes free and slave, small and great in its indictment. In brief, this vision communicated to its original audience the thoroughness of this punishment. No one will go unexamined. Favoritism will not be extended to anyone. Now, the stage is set for the final image, the defeat of the unrighteous (cf. 2 Bar. 39.7-40.4; 72.2-6; 4 Ezra 12.31-33; 13.37-38).

9. The last two images, the feast for the birds and the lake of fire, will be discussed together because both connote the ultimate punishment of evil. They also comprise the final of the three visions in 19.11-21. First, the beast and his army assemble to make war against Christ and his army (v. 19). John does not narrate the battle. He simply states that the beast and the false prophet were seized and thrown alive into the lake of fire (v. 20), the ultimate punishment (see 20.11-14; 21.8; cf. 14.10; cf. Dan 7.11; Mart. Isa. 4.14). "The lake of fire combines the elements of punishment by fire and confinement of a rebellious foe." The sword from the messiah’s mouth kills the beast’s army (v. 21a). The birds eat until they become full (v. 21b). The vindication of the saints is complete. Those who punished the saints have met their reward. Rev 19.19-21 fulfils the expressed theme stated in v. 11 for the messiah to judge and make war in righteousness, i.e., the punishment inflicted upon the beast and his followers is just and right. Additionally, many across the hermeneutical, theological and denominational spectrum note the contrast of the marriage supper for the saved (19.7-9) and the feast for the birds.

These images do not indicate judgment upon members of the Christian community, or address an internal crisis, but address the role of the church in first-century CE Roman society. The Divine Warrior and his followers are pitted against the beast and his followers. The followers of the beast include the false prophet, kings, generals, mighty men, free men and slaves, but no wayward Christians. The list in 2.20-24 provides a helpful contrast. It lists (1) Jezebel, (2) her followers (her children), and (3) her sympathizers (those who commit adultery with her) and then distinguishes them from "the rest of you in Thyatira who do not hold to (Jezebel's) teachings and have not learned Satan's deep secrets." Therefore, 2.20-24 clearly demonstrates that John could distinguish among groups in regard to degrees of culpability. Rev 19.11-21 does not make such distinctions, but judges the world. This passage supports my earlier argument that the letters are primarily concerned with the internal life of the churches where issues of religious laxity were relevant; the apocalyptic visions, however, describe the role of the

---

53 Some commentators fail to note these differences (e.g., Ladd, 257), but others do (e.g., Sweet, 285; Morris, 276).
54 Yarbro Collins, Apocalypse, 137.
55 E.g., Sweet, 285-86; Giblin, 182; Yarbro Collins, Apocalypse, 136; Ladd, 257; Morris, 226; Kiddle, 387; Lohmeyer, 160-61.
church in the greater Roman society where the suffering and suppression of Christians was a central concern.

D. Concluding Comments: Observations on Christ and Community

1. The theme and its communal dimensions

Our analysis of Rev 19.11-21 has shown that v. 11 contains the theme for these three visions: to judge and make war in righteousness. Both the symbolic names given to the Divine Warrior and the images and symbols associated with him confirm this thesis. The symbolic names connote Christ's right to judge the evil nations and to execute punishment by war in God's stead, while the images, generally, connote the execution of judgment. In addition, the names, with ever-increasing significance, present Christ as the complete, true representative of God in human history and the executor of divine judgment in God's stead. Finally, the study has shown the consistency of functions among all three major christological images in Revelation. Let us turn now to a more detailed exegetical summary of the different emphases set out for the original recipients.

2. The message of the symbolic names for the community

The names of Christ in Rev 19.11-21 present him as the true, complete manifestation of God Almighty in human history and attest to Christ's sovereignty over human institutions. The first name, "Faithful and True," may reflect a context where the veracity of the Christian message and the fidelity of Christians to that message has been challenged and come under fire, a setting where the basic Christian beliefs and practices have not been acknowledged but attacked viciously by non-Christians. Jews would criticize the Christians for bestowing divine honors upon Jesus; adherents of Graeco-Roman religious traditions would criticize Christians for their unwillingness to participate in traditional Graeco-Roman cultic practices (cf. 2.13; 6.9-11; 12.11; 16.6; 17.6; 19.10). The first name attempts to authenticate Christ's role as God's messiah, substantiate Christ's witness to God and validate the Christian community's confession of faith. In the face of local oppression, Christians can remain firm in their beliefs because their lord is "Faithful and True." Again we note the possibility that the Christian confession and the importance of witnessing might have been a contributing factor leading to religious tensions. While "faithful and true" occurs three times in Revelation (see 21.5; 22.6), only in 19.11 is it a proper name, supporting the argument that Rev 19.11-21 constitutes the christological highpoint of the book.56

---

56Sweet, 281; Yarbro Collins, Crisis, 130; Combat, 130-45.
The second name, which is not revealed, plays an important intra-communal role. As a mystery, it explains the lack of acceptance by Roman authorities in particular and Roman society in general. Although this motif might come from the mystery religions, it is noteworthy that Christ does receive names in Revelation (e.g., 5.6; 11.15; 17.14). Thus, although the motif might have originated within the mysteries, it functions quite differently in Revelation: the unrevealed element in Revelation functions as an internal motif to convey to the Christian community at once its election and its temporal circumstances. Election provides Christians with special information which only they possess, as in many mystery religions. However, unlike the mysteries, the hidden element is not withheld consistently in Revelation (see 3.12; 14.1). The unrevealed name is an example of how the Christian community has access to information which the world does not. Similarly, Christ has a relationship with God Almighty which others cannot have. Such a motif would have done much to enhance the self-esteem and commitment of its original readers by relating them in a limited way to Christ in that both he and them possessed information not available to everyone. The unrevealed name symbolizes Christ's unique role in the sacred cosmos as God's co-regent. This is a strategy employed to maintain order in the community by conveying to the readers the distinctive role which Christ plays in the symbolic universe and it attempts to convince the readers that their loyalty to Christ is the proper religious response.

The third name, "The Word of God," would reinforce for the original audience the first two names, yet move beyond them by asserting that Christ was in complete harmony and unity with God Almighty. The context of 19.13, a messianic military campaign, indicates an intense and fierce situation where Christian confession was a central issue. Over against these social pressures, Christians must continue to confess and profess faith in Christ, according to Revelation. It is Christ who makes manifest the will of God and makes it clear to humanity. Moreover, while "the word of God" occurs five times in Revelation, only in 19.13 (as with the first name in v. 11) is it a proper name, supporting the argument that 19.11-21 constitutes the most developed christological passage in Revelation. This name and the imagery associated with it all have tradition-histories which connote judgment, suggesting that the original audience had experienced intensely negative relations, at the least. The intensity of the imagery suggests that the Christians suffered extensively and severely at the hands of non-Christians.

"King of kings and Lord of lords," the final name, occurs twice in Revelation (17.14; 19.16). In both passages, it functions as a title, one previously reserved for God in Jewish tradition. Both passages celebrate the messiah's sovereignty and victory over worldly institutions. The final name probably also reflects a social context where the confession of Christ as Savior of the world has been severely ridiculed and belittled.
ridicule has not discouraged some Christians but made them more adamantine in their position. "King of kings and Lord of lords" is probably a Christian re-assertion of their claims against the religio-political claims of adherents to the imperial cult. In both 17.14 and 19.16, this name is a central element in the destruction of the political system which "makes war" against the elect. Rev 13, 17, and 18 tells us that the Roman Empire and its regional leaders are those worldly institutions in Revelation.

While the first three names bolstered the resolve of the Christian community, the last name assures the community that its Lord rules the universe and its oppressors will receive a just punishment. Such enmity usually does not derive from differences among abstract theorists. It comes from worldviews which are perceived by their respective adherents to be mutually exclusive. In such contexts, often the oppressed see military intervention as their only hope. The Christian desire for a military solution probably connotes the extent of the suffering by the Christian community, the depth of the need envisioned to rectify the situation, the degree of enmity which had developed between the groups and the Christian resignation that only divine intervention could alleviate their suffering. Regional tensions between Christians and Jews and/or Christians and supporters of Graeco-Roman religious traditions, as readings in the NT, Tacitus and Pliny attest, could result in such enmity and suffering by Christians.57

The appeal for a divine military intervention in 19.11-16 shows no evidence of a lack of Christian religious fervor or cognitive misapprehension, but Christian fidelity which has met with regional religio-political opposition. The envisioned resolution pits the Divine Warrior and his followers against the beast and his followers, indicating a conflict between Christians and non-Christians. John views this regional situation on a global scale, probably because Roman governors had the power to execute capital punishment, as Pliny's letter to Trajan clearly demonstrates (Letters 10).58

An examination of the images and symbols associated with the Divine Warrior confirms the conclusions concerning the names: every image either symbolizes the Divine Warrior’s prerogative to act on behalf of the Christian community as a judge, or conveys to the reader the manner of his judgment upon his opponents. Finally, these symbolic names function as maintenance techniques to exhort Christians to remain in the Christian symbolic universe.

58Sweet holds a similar position (22-27).
3. The message of the images for the community
The images in Rev 19.11-21 function in two ways. They convey the Divine Warrior as an eschatological judge and present the mode in which he executes judgment.

The fiery eyes (v. 12), the diadem (v. 12) and the significance of the color white (vv. 11 and 14) all point to the messiah's competence and legal right to judge humankind. The fiery eyes symbolize Christ's role as God's agent with superhuman perception; the diadem, regal authority; the color white, moral purity. In every way, John sees in the rider a being beyond reproach who by nature is worthy both to judge the nations and to execute judgment upon them. Thus, one should not be surprised to find several images of judgment within Rev 19.11-21. These negative judgments might also reflect the legal abuse suffered by Christians in the Roman legal system.

John envisions a Divine Warrior who will come and put things aright. One purpose of these visions might be to set matters in their proper order, from the Christian perspective. The blood on the rider's robe (v. 13), the sword (vv. 15, 21), the iron rod (v. 15), the winepress (v. 15), the defeat and punishment of the beast, the false prophet and their minions (vv. 19-20) and the feast of the birds (vv. 17-18, 21) all depict horrific judgments without any reservations or considerations for mercy. These visions strongly suggest a social context where Christians have suffered and continue to suffer mercilessly without moral justification or cause. While complacency, apathy and accommodation were issues for Revelation, as the letters demonstrate, the apocalyptic visions reflect the religio-political pressures upon Asian Christians to change their views.59 Other persons in Roman society felt unjustly oppressed and took military action themselves in order to redress social ills (e.g., Spartacus, the Jewish War of 66-70 CE). However, Revelation differs in projecting the conflict onto a cosmic level where the Roman Empire symbolizes all that is evil and heavenly powers must subdue the great enemy (e.g., 12.7-12; 14.14-20; 18.2-24; 20.11-15). In Revelation's worldview, God Almighty will soon judge the unrighteous and execute punishment through Christ acting as his eschatological judge.

Revelation might be criticized for espousing a "pie-in-the-sky" eschatology with little concern for improving living conditions in this world. Such a simplistic analysis misses the point. Furthermore, it misses the dynamism of adhering to "the word of God and the witness of Jesus" for John and his readers/hearers. First of all, a "pie-in-the-sky" eschatology would allow injustice to continue and meekly wait indefinitely without comment until the intervention of God. Such is not the case in Revelation. Rev 18, for example, is a severe commentary on the social injustices of John's day and time, and reminds one of the preaching of prophets such as Amos, Micah, Isaiah, Hosea and

59Cf. Berger and Luckmann, 121-34; Price, 197-98.
Jeremiah. Furthermore, John does not expect God to allow the suffering to continue indefinitely (1.1; 22.10, 12, 20). Thus, John emphasizes how Christians should behave in the brief interim: “Let the one doing wrong still do wrong and let the one who is impure remain impure and let the one doing righteousness remain righteous and let the one being holy remain holy. Be watchful, I am coming soon and my reward (is) with me to give to each person according to his deeds” (Rev 22.11-12). This is not a missionary statement but an exhortation to a beleaguered community to stand firmly in its religious convictions until the coming judgment (20.11-15). Finally, against a charge of docility, the perseverance which Revelation expects and demands of its readers/hearers requires a great deal of courage and inner strength. John calls his readers/hearers to a religious civil disobedience which offers no hope of an earthly reward. Living in such a way would have been difficult for the best of Christians. In our own century, Gandhi and King have demonstrated that civil disobedience can be a powerful tool in re-structuring an unjust society. They also recognized that such a stance took enormous courage. Indeed, both men lost their lives because of their devotion to their respective social agendas. The Revelation to John stands as a biblical witness for the place of civil disobedience against an unjust and oppressive state and it also reminds us of the cost of human life which civil disobedience can engender.

Against this background of the repression of the Christian community, the firm re-assertion of the authenticity of the proclamation of Jesus and the truth of the Christian witness of faith concerning him become understandable and the cosmology of Revelation becomes clear. Christ Jesus is for John's hearers/readers one who is the full manifestation of God Almighty. The preceding two chapters of this study have come to this same conclusion. This is not new. What is new in Rev 19.11.21 is the manner in which this finds expression in the Divine Warrior who comes as the eschatological judge. As with the “one like a son of man” and the Lamb christological images, Christ takes on roles previously reserved for God Almighty. For example, he leads a heavenly host and treads the winepress in wrath (cf. Isa 63.1-6). He is the sovereign Lord and King of the universe (19.16; cf. Dan 4.37 LXX; Deut 10.17; 1 Enoch 9.4; 1 Tim 6.15). The Christ is God's Anointed One who reigns over the cosmos with God Almighty. God and Christ are joined by the saints as rulers of the cosmos, the priest-kings. Although the cavalry does nothing to defeat the forces of evil, they have the honor of accompanying Christ the Conqueror on this important campaign. Undoubtedly, we should identify the cavalry with the group described in 6.9, 7.14, 14.1 and 20.4: Those who have given the most in this age, i.e., their lives, will receive the most honors and privileges in the next, accompanying God and Christ wherever they may go (cf. Rev 14.4; 22.3-4).
CHAPTER 7: CONCLUSIONS

In examining the three principal christological images of the book of Revelation (the "one like a son of man, the Lamb and the Divine Warrior), this study has attempted to discern how Christ functioned as the leader of these communities, why they chose certain specific images, and how the images functioned in the religious life of those communities ca. 95 CE.

This study has reached five general conclusions concerning these images. First and foremost, these images communicated to John's original audience that Christ Jesus was the Lord of the cosmos with whom God Almighty shared divine honors (cf. 1.8 and 1.17-18; 4.11 and 5.9-10, 12-14; 7.16-17 and 21.3-4; 19.11 and 21.5). Secondly, the slain Lamb is the most pervasive christological image in Revelation, a fact suggesting that the book comes from a social context in which Christians suffered some type of oppression. This imagery provided a means for Asian Christians to understand their situation, and, at the same time, it provided a model to emulate in order to conquer evil. Thirdly, Christ performs three pastoral functions: he judges, gathers an elect community, and makes war with God's enemies. These are community-oriented functions with the purpose of protecting, correcting and vindicating these communities. Fourthly, a victory-through-suffering motif is associated with the first two images (1.5-6; 5.9-10) and possibly the third (19.13). This motif, associated with at least two of the three major christological images, strongly suggests that the Christian community has suffered for its religious beliefs and that John turns their affliction into their means of salvation. It is difficult to discern a rationale for using this motif if Christians experienced little or no duress. Moreover, Revelation was not the only early Christian writing to make this rationalization (e.g., Phil 1.12-14; Jas 1.2-3; 1 Pet 1.6-7). Finally, the "one like a son of man" and the Lamb images are more pastoral in nature than the Divine Warrior, and both promise the faithful an unbroken fellowship as priest-kings with God and Christ (1.5-6; 2.26-28; 5.9-10; 7.14-17). The reference in 19.14 to the heavenly army may be another version of this theme. On the other hand, the Divine Warrior functions primarily as an eschatological judge in God's stead to punish evil and vindicate the righteous, imagery which may indicate that some Christians have experienced some type of repression and are vengefully seeking divine retribution upon their oppressors. All three images are concerned with the quality of life within the Christian community: the first two express this concern through Christ's pastoral roles; the third, by demonstrating the propriety of the community's witness to Christ.
An historical-critical study of both Christian and Graeco-Roman writings concluded that there was no empire-wide Roman persecution of Christians and that John's depiction of such a crisis was a prophetic perception based upon the experience of some Asian Christians. Both Christian and Graeco-Roman writers of the same era when Revelation was written describe the repression of Christians. Some Christians suffered simply because of the name "Christian" (e.g., Matt 10.17-23; 24.9; John 15.21; 1 Pet 4.14; Tacitus, Annals 15.44; Pliny, Letter 10.96-97; cf. Suetonius, Nero 16.2). Furthermore, some Jewish groups also oppressed Christians. Jews saw the Christian confession of Jesus as one worthy of divine honors as theologically inappropriate and had few scruples in seeing to it that Christians suffered (e.g., John 9.18-22; 16.2; Acts 7.57-8.3; Gal 1.13-14). Revelation depicts both Graeco-Roman (e.g., Rev 13) and Jewish repression (2.9; 3.9).

More specifically, Asian religio-political sensibilities would have been upset by the Christians' refusal to participate in Graeco-Roman religious customs, especially the imperial cult. Price skillfully demonstrates that the imperial cult was deeply imbedded into Asian society and that it provided a way for Asians to relate meaningfully to Roman authority. He states that Asian society would have pressured Christians to conform to their traditions, lest the gods might become angry with those who repudiated them and some calamity befall society-in-general. Several recent scholars have argued that 1 Peter, written earlier to Christians in Asia (ca. 80), responded to just such a context where Jewish and pagan pressures were placed upon Christians to conform to their respective traditions. Pliny's letter, written ca. 110 from the same general region, shows the extent to which non-Christians would go to attain religio-political conformity. Revelation, written ca. 95, responds to similar types of social pressures.

Revelation provides evidence for a limited regional suppression of some Christians in the letters in Rev 2-3 and the apocalyptic visions in Rev 4-20. While the primary function of the letters is to instruct each church in what it must do internally in order to enter the New Jerusalem, the letters also describe tribulation, Jewish harassment, the possibility of imprisonment, the death of Antipas and possible future trials (2.9-10, 13; 3.9-10). The reference to Satan's throne may well be an allusion to Pergamum's reputation as a center of the imperial cult (2.13). These passages are all the more important because they are the only references in the letters to problems originating outside the community. Conversely, the references to the various forms of religious laxity are probably best understood as responses to the external social pressures placed upon the Christian community to conform. It is noteworthy that the apocalyptic visions say little about religious laxity among Christians. Rather, they describe a Christian community suffering
extensively for its witness of faith (6.9-11; 7.13-17; 12.17; 16.4-6; 17.6; 20.4; cf. 19.17-21; 21.4-8). John places this situation on a cosmic scale, perhaps because he could not separate the imperial cult from the imperial government. Revelation was not the first Christian writing to place a local situation on a cosmic scale (e.g., Matt 24.9-14; Acts 28.22; Eph 6.12; 1 Pet 5.9). This rationale also enabled some Christians to endure their plight, while expecting an imminent cessation of their trials (cf. 2 Cor 4.17; 1 Thess 5.1-4; Rev 22.6-12). Furthermore, the prophetic nature of the book would have also influenced John to envision a future that reflected his current circumstances. In this way, John emulates the Hebrew prophets well (see Amos 5.18-27; Jer 2.4-13; Mic 2.1-5; Hab 2.2-5; Isa 5.20-30).

Thus, while an empire-wide persecution of Christians is not historically verifiable, a regional oppression is historically intelligible, given what Christian and non-Christian writings convey concerning the social status of Christians in the first century CE. It is within such a context that the christological images of the book of Revelation were developed in order to give hope to the lives of Asian Christians.

The current study supplemented historical-critical research with insights from the sociology of knowledge in order to understand better the social function of Revelation's apocalyptic imagery. The "one like a son of man" and the Divine Warrior are presentational images which are similar to their referent. The Lamb is a representational image with no natural connection with its referent and only attains meaning through traditional use. The sociological analyses showed that mythology, theology, determinism, therapy and nihilation performed significant roles as maintenance strategies. Most of these maintenance techniques were employed in association with the three major christological images of this study.

The "one like a son of man" is the Lord of the cosmos, God Almighty's eschatological divine agent who attains his victory through suffering, creating a new people of God composed of priest-kings. Having sacrificed himself on behalf of the Christian community, he now acts as Lord of the community in God's stead. Indeed, this is one major point of contact between the "one like a son of man" image and the slain Lamb image. For Asian Christians, victory through suffering is at the center of the means of overcoming evil, attaining salvation and becoming priest-kings (1.5-6; 5.9-10). By associating Christ's death with salvific victory and the priestly reign of the saints in the New Jerusalem by means of two christological images, John makes a direct connection between Christ and community. Furthermore, he at once explains their plight and their means of overcoming it.
As the Lord of the cosmos, the "one like a son of man" performs several pastoral functions: he judges (e.g., 2.5), gathers the elect community (e.g., 14.14-16) and makes war against God's enemies (e.g., 14.17-20). He also possesses an element of mystery (e.g., 2.17). These four elements are also found in messiah-figures in 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra. In addition, this human-like messiah performs functions not found in Jewish literature, but found in other early Christian writings: he has cosmic authority, has power over death, is omniscient and determines who will enter the New Jerusalem. These functions are community-oriented in that they relate directly to the life of the community in the next age. The promise of priestly co-regency with God Almighty and Christ in the New Jerusalem and the promises to the victors of an unbroken fellowship with God and Christ (e.g., 1.5-6; 2.26-28; 3.21; cf. Exod 19.6) are the two basic means of sustaining the bond between Christ and community associated with this image. In this way, Christ exhorts the churches in order that they might enter the New Jerusalem.

The basic social function of the slain Lamb-image, the most pervasive christological image in Revelation, is to lead the eschatological Christian community into the New Jerusalem (14.1-5). The Lamb is also the Lord of the cosmos (17.14) who gathers, leads, sustains and protects an elite community of priest-kings (5.9-10; 7.15-17; 17.14; cf. 1.5-6). The Lamb, like the "one like a son of man," judges (e.g., 13.8), gathers an elect community (14.1-5), makes war against God's enemies (17.14), shares divine honors with God Almighty and is victorious through suffering (e.g., 5.9-10; 21.22-23; 22.1-5). He also has some uniquely Christian functions: he determines who will enter the New Jerusalem (13.18; 17.8) and his death provides salvific benefits for his followers (5.9-10; 7.13-14; 12.11; cf. 1.5-6; John 1.29-30; 1 Pet 1.19-20). As with the preceding image, these functions relate to the life of the community in the next age.

The selection of the slain Lamb image as the most pervasive christological symbol in the book suggests a social context in which Christians suffered some type of oppression and employed this image as a means of rationalizing their plight. As Christ suffered, they would suffer. As he was vindicated, so would they be. Thus, through the image of the Lamb, John developed the victory-through-suffering motif, as with the "one like a son of man" image, a strategy begun in the promises in Rev 2-3, in order to explain the religio-political repression experienced by some Christians and, at the same time, employing it to exhort those same persons to remain faithful so that they may receive their reward in the New Jerusalem (cf. Phil 1.12-14; Heb 12.3; 1 Pet 4.12-13).

Moreover, some Christians sought revenge against their oppressors (6.9-11; 14.10) and the Lamb is also associated with military imagery as a symbol for punishing evil and vindicating Christians (e.g., 12.7-12; 17.14). Additionally, dying for the faith often leads
to victory (5.9-10; 6.9-11; 7.13-14; 12.11; cf. 20.4-6). It is difficult to image why these motifs and themes would recur so frequently in Revelation, especially in association with the image of the slain Lamb, if the Christian community were not harassed, ridiculed, held in low esteem and repressed in some fashion. These are not the motifs and themes that one would expect to be prominent in a setting where Christians lived free of any social pressures. Indeed, the forms of religious laxity in the letters, correctly identified by many exegetes, become more understandable as attempts by some Christians to nullify Jewish and pagan coercion. In like manner, the deterministic elements, the promised status of priest-kings as well as the ways in which the Lamb improves the quality of life (e.g., 7.9-17; 21.9-22.5) strongly suggest that John's original readers were social outcasts, a minority whose religious beliefs and practices were consistently under attack by the dominant culture and whose very subsistence was often in question.

The Divine Warrior (19.11-21) does not function primarily as a pastoral figure but as an eschatological divine agency figure who judges the evil worldly institutions. In so doing, he also vindicates the witness of the Christian community and assures the community of the propriety of its witness of faith. Although performing different functions, the Divine Warrior, as with the other images, is primarily concerned with the welfare of the community: his actions convey to the community its election through the defeat of its enemies.

The names associated with the Divine Warrior ("Faithful and True," "The Word of God," and "King of kings and Lord of lords") present him as the true, complete manifestation of God Almighty, a divine agent who acts as God’s regent. The first three names aim at bolstering the community's religious strength and faith; the fourth assures the community that its Lord rules the cosmos. In this way, John conveys to his audience that this christological figure is the same person represented by the two preceding images. Moreover, the Divine Warrior is principally a military image, suggesting a context where worldviews perceived by their adherents as mutually exclusive have clashed and the weaker of the two sides seeks a heavenly intervention because it is virtually powerless against its foe. This may explain why Christians never take part in any battle in Revelation. They fight Satan and his minions with their witness of faith (6.9; 12.7-12; 19.14, 19-21; 20.4).

The images and symbols employed to describe the work of the Divine Warrior communicate that this figure has come to judge and make war in righteousness (19.11). His white horse symbolizes purity; his crown, regal status (vv. 11-12). The sword from his mouth, the rod of iron and the trampling of the winepress in divine wrath represent divine judgment upon sinful institutions (v. 15). The defeat of the beast and the false prophet and the feast for the birds are rather unpleasant scenes which convey a sense of
deep enmity between opposing religious communities. The weaker Christian community seeks revenge upon its oppressors. Such attitudes normally represent a mutual animosity; the less powerful community sees itself as unjustly persecuted and appeals to the Lord of the cosmos for deliverance because its enemy controls the earthly institutions. Such a perspective would also explain why John cast a regional crisis on the cosmic stage.

Finally, the Divine Warrior performs pastoral functions found in connection with other christological images in Revelation: he acts as a judge (v. 15), gathers the elect (v. 14) and makes war against God's enemies (vv. 19-21). The motifs associated with all three christological images is an important line of evidence which points toward the unity of the book of Revelation.

This study has demonstrated that John employed the "one like a son of man," the slain Lamb and the Divine Warrior christological images to maintain the unity between Christ and community. Christ gathers an elect community of priest-kings en route to the New Jerusalem. These are exodus motifs employed to assure the community of the correctness of its witness "to the word of God and the testimony of Jesus" (1.2, 9; 6.9; 20.4) and to exhort it to maintain that witness regardless of the cost (12.11, 17; 17.6; 19.2, 5-9).¹ This thesis has also demonstrated that John employed the victory-through-suffering motif as a means of encouraging the community in its present plight to recall the crucifixion of Jesus; it also was a means of exhorting the community to remain faithful to God so that it may enter the New Jerusalem, recalling the resurrection. Finally, throughout this study we have seen how military motifs have been incorporated as symbols of judgment of Christians (2.16), but more extensively against those who repressed Christians (12.7-12; 14.1-5; 17.14; 18.24; 19.11-21; 20.7-10). These elements strongly suggest that the Revelation to John came at a time of regional oppression of Christians in Asia and that John wrote to encourage and challenge Christians to stand firm in their beliefs and wait for divine deliverance. As such, Revelation encourages passive Christian civil disobedience in the face of an unsympathetic state.

¹For example, see my comments on exodus motifs on pages 66-67, 124, 144-46, 148, 150-52 above.
An Appended Note: Methods of Study

Throughout Christian history, biblical commentators have employed various methods in studying Revelation. They are not necessarily been mutually exclusive.

1. A Literal Approach to Revelation. Millennarians have based their literalistic interpretations upon Rev 20.1-6. Many believe in a literal 1,000-year reign of Christ before Judgment Day and that the prophecies of Revelation will be fulfilled during the millennial period, an interim between the parousia and the Last Judgment. However, some argue that the millennium is not an interlude but the beginning of the new creation. Proponents have included Gnostics, Montanists, Justin Martyr (mid-second century CE), Irenaeus (ca. 200 CE), Hippolytus of Rome (3rd century CE), to name but a few. Others who have employed this approach have included Joachim of Fiore (ca. 1132-2102), and more recently J. A. Seiss and Hal Lindsey.¹

2. The Allegorical Approach to Revelation. The Alexandrian School (late second/early third century) emphasized the spiritual, allegorical meaning of Scripture. Three factors led to its development: (1) the influence of Graeco-Roman thought, (2) the delay of the parousia and (3) a reaction to millenarianism. Origen, for example, said Scripture has three levels: the literal, the moral and the spiritual/allegorical. He then looked for the allegorical meaning of Revelation hidden deeply in the text which he believed had been inspired by the Holy Spirit. Other practitioners of this method have included Tyconius (d. ca. 400), Augustine and Primasius, a sixth century North African who looked for universal themes in Revelation.²

3. The Recapitulation Approach to Revelation. This method has been used by Irenaeus, Victorinus (fourth century), Tyconius, Allo, Strand and Yarbro Collins. This method works on the principle (1) that key words/phrases/expressions recapitulate (Irenaeus: recapitulatio) the entirety of a subject or theme which has origins in earliest biblical history and (2) that Revelation does not describe a linear sequence of events but repeats the same event in different ways. These biblical exegetes tend to postulate the basic structure of the book and then subsume all else into their given pattern.³

¹For example, Joachim of Fiore, Enchiridion super Apocalypsim. (ed. E. K. Burger; Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1986); J. A. Seiss, The Apocalypse (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1957); H. Lindsey, The Late Great Planet Earth (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1970).


4. The Historicist Approach to Revelation. The world-historical and/or church-historical (historicist) methods became popular during the Middle Ages. Proponents saw Revelation as an historical guide to world/church occurrences in their own time. Historicists believe that Revelation's symbols represent different historical movements and events in western history. Believing that they were living in the last days, they have tended to focus upon the millennium (see first approach above). Joachim of Fiora, Lindsey and Corsini have interpreted Revelation in this fashion. Lindsey, for example, also mentioned in connection with millenarianism, decoded Revelation's symbols concerning the end-time and predicted the end of the world with the creation of the 12-member European Common Market and the 1968 war between the Muslim states and Israel.

5. The Eschatological Approach to Revelation. This method, also known as the futurist method, developed in the 16th century in opposition to the world-/church-historical methods. Those who employed this method tended not to focus upon one aspect of the book but upon the entire book. Early exponents included many Jesuits. For example, Juan de Ribera of Spain (16th century) wrote that Revelation only predicted events in the imminent future after the writing of the book and the end-times. It said nothing about the intervening eras. More recent futurists have included Lohmeyer, Minear and Rissi.4 Lohmeyer says that Rev 4-21 contain the eschatological material and that temporal designations such as past, present and future are inapplicable since Revelation collapses all temporal demarcations. Minear argues that Revelation fused the historical and the eschatological by means of a "transhistorical model" which coherently and comprehensively links the book's many visions together. Rissi states that Revelation provides a prophetic interpretation of salvation-history between the first coming of Jesus and the second. Using the recapitulation method as well, Rissi states that John described the second coming in various ways.

6. The Contemporary-history approach to Revelation. This method was developed in the 16th and 17th centuries as reactions to the historicist and eschatological approaches. Originally, proponents of this approach sought to identify the original historical context for the book and also to provide meaningful exegeses for their own times. Hentenius, for example, argued that the book reflected the Neronian era and also that Rev 13 described the Islamic persecution of Christians in Hentenius' own day. Alcazar argued that Rev 4-19 came within the lifetime of John the seer of Revelation and the centuries immediately after John's lifetime. For him, Rev 4-11 re-presents the conflict between Judaism and early Christianity; Rev 12-19, the conflict between Christians and non-Christians in Graeco-

---

Roman society. Chapters 20-22 describe church history after Constantine. More recent practitioners would include Hopkins and Ramsay.  

7. *The Literary Approach to Revelation.* Literary analysis as a primary means of interpreting Revelation can be traced back as far as Bishop Dionysius of Alexandria, Egypt in the latter half of the third century. Dionysius successfully argued from an analysis of the literary styles that Revelation and the fourth gospel could not have been written by the same person. However, not until this century has anyone done an extensive literary study of Revelation. It should come as no surprise that R. H. Charles became the first modern critic to provide a detailed literary-critical analysis of the language and writing style of Revelation. He produced an extensive study of the book's linguistic character and tendencies, demonstrating that what seemed to be irregularities in usage were actually traits of John's mode of literary expression. He reconstructed the text; dated supposed sources, identified supposed interpolations, glosses and corruptions in the text placed there by a less than competent editor after John's death. His reconstruction of the book and his thesis of an incompetent editor have not found favor in the academic community, but his work did call attention to the stylistic peculiarities in the book. Boismard has also done a literary-critical analysis of the book. He argued (1) that a single author wrote Rev 4-22 at different times; (2) that another person arranged that material in its present order and (3) that Rev 1-3, originally a separate text, was added later. Others who employ this method to some degree include Thompson and Schüssler Fiorenza.  

8. *The History-of-Religions Approach.* This method has gained popularity in the last two centuries. Bousset, for one, argued that Revelation's symbols and imagery are traditional materials and not the creations of John. Although proponents of this methodology acknowledge John's indebtedness to the HB, second temple Judaism and early Christianity, they stress more the ANE background of much of the book. For example, in the exegesis of Rev 12, Gunkel saw Marduk's defeat of Tiamat; Bousset, the merger of Egyptian and Iranian ideas; Boll, Babylonian influence. More prudent exegetes discern a mixture of ANE, Jewish and Christian influences.  

9. *The Social-scientific Approach to Revelation.* The sociological study of Revelation has increased considerably since 1960. Studies fall into two general areas, but often authors use both approaches in one project. Scholars (1) provide proposed

---


descriptions of the community and/or the social context of the community and/or (2)
attempt to provide social-scientific explanations for the existence of the community. For
example, Ureta studies the social context in order to describe the relationship between the
Christians and the Roman state in Revelation. According to him, the death of Christ and
the suffering of John and his congregations created a bond between Christ and the Church.
Schürmann attempts to explain why the community existed by providing a socio-
psychological explanation for the writing of the book. He argues that it promised its
original readers human dignity, vocational satisfaction, religious piety and social
responsibility.⁹

This current study provides a description of the social context and gives
explanations for its use of christological images that confirm Ureta's position.

biblical social-scientists from the Context Group have provided a volume on a variety of topics: "The
Bruce Malina, a member of the Context Group, has also authored *On the Genre and Message of Revelation*
(Peabody, MA: Hendrickson, 1995).
BIBLIOGRAPHY


_________. "The Form and Function of the Proclamations to the Seven Churches (Revelation 2-3)," *NTS* 36 (1990) 182-204.


Lindars, B. "Re-enter the Apocalyptic Son of Man," *NTS* 22 (1975) 52-72.


Noth, M. "Die Heiligen des Hochsten," *NorTT* 56 (1955) 146-61.


Schmidt, N. "Was bar nash a Messianic Title?" *JBL* 15 (1896) 36-53.


Skehan, P. W. "King of Kings, Lord of Lords (Apoc 19,16)," *CBQ* 10 (1948) 398.

Slater, T. B. "Leading a Bible Study: Explorations in the Historical-Critical Method." Doctor of Ministry (DMin.) thesis, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA, 1981.


Spitta, F. *Die Offenbarung des Johannes*. Halle, 1889.


In a previous article in *NTS*, G. K. Beale argues that LXX Dan 4.37 is the probable source of the phrase 'king of kings and lord of lords' found in Rev 17.14. On theological and literary grounds, he dismisses 1 Enoch 9.4 ('Lord of lords, God of Gods, King of kings') as a possible source for Rev 17.14. This short study will argue that Beale is correct and will offer Rev 19.11–21 as another parallel section which supports Beale's argument.

Beale provides five arguments to support his position: (1) the wording of both LXX Dan 4.37 and Rev 17.14 'is almost identical'; (2) the wording in both LXX Dan 4 and Rev 17 provide ways in which the rule of the evil kings is removed; (3) 'almost the same title' occurs in LXX Dan 2.37, 47 and 3.2, forming 'a collective impression on John'; (4) that Rev 17.14 is followed by verse 15 which contains 'a fourfold expression of universality' found repeatedly in LXX Dan 4.37; (5) the context of Rev 17 makes repeated reference to passages in Dan 4 and 7. Beale also notes that Rev 17.17 reiterates the judgment announced against the king of Babylon in Dan 4.33. Also, the reference to a mystery in Rev 17.5 is an allusion to Dan 4.

Beale's arguments are generally persuasive; however, a few questions remain unattended. First, why does Beale translate the phrase in Rev 17.14 'King of kings and Lord of lords' when a more precise translation would have been 'Lord of lords and King of kings'. Such a translation would have maintained the order found in LXX Dan 4.37 and 1 Enoch 9.4. Second, the passage in Revelation where one does find 'King of kings and Lord of lords' is Rev 19.16. Rev 19.11–21 provides similar parallels to LXX Dan 4 to those one finds in Rev 17. For example, (1) the wording of Rev 19.16 is very similar to the wording in LXX Dan 4.37; (2) as in Dan 4 and Rev 17, the rule of evil kings is removed in Rev 19.11–21; (3) the use of 'King of kings and Lord of lords' in Rev 19.16 reminds us of similar phrases in LXX Dan 2.37, 2.47 and 3.2, just as Beale noted in commenting on Rev 17; (4) the defeat of the enemies of God is universal (Rev 19.17–21; cf. LXX Dan 4.37 and Rev 17.15); (5) there exists an element of mystery (Rev 19.12) which one finds in LXX Dan 4 and Rev 17. These same parallels and the presence of a similar title with the exact same words in a different order strengthen Beale's argument for the influence of LXX Dan 4 on Rev 17.

L. L. Thompson reminds us that one should not expect John to provide exact quotations of Scripture or to repeat exactly the same image or idiom in every instance. Rather, the reader should expect slight differences when

---

2. Beale, 618.
John repeats an image or idiom. One can only understand fully the Apocalypse when one brings together all the presentations of an image or idiom. This is precisely what one finds in both Rev 17.14 and 19.16. Neither passage is an exact quote of either LXX Dan 4.37 or 1 Enoch 9.4. Both passages use language, imagery and concepts from LXX Dan 4.37 to convey John's vision of the end, but John uses these images in new, creative ways with each new occurrence. This gives the Apocalypse a sense of continuity and at the same time a sense of spontaneity.

Beale's arguments are persuasive and an examination of parallels in Rev 19.11–21 supplements and supports his position that LXX Dan 4 is the probable source for Rev 17.14 and, this writer argues, Rev 19.16, also.

NOTES ON MATTHEW’S STRUCTURE

In his book *Matthew: Structure, Christology, Kingdom*, Kingsbury has argued that Matt 4:17 and 16:21 contain superscriptions which divide the gospel into three sections. The first section, 1:1-4:16, identifies the personhood of the Messiah; the second section, 4:17-16:20, identifies the proclamation of the Messiah; the third section, 16:21-28:20, identifies the suffering, death, and resurrection of the Messiah. The words “From that time on Jesus began” appear in 4:17 and 16:21. The first superscription is echoed in three later summary passages (4:23-25; 9:35; 11:1), while 16:21 is echoed in two passion-predictions (17:22-23 and 20:17-19), Kingsbury further writes, “The very fact that each of the two sections 4:17-16:20 and 16:21-28:20 contains three principal summaries attests to the internal unity of both.”2 As a mere corrective to Kingsbury, the three passion-predictions are 17:22-23, 20:17-19, and 26:2, with 16:21 being more a redactional statement than a prediction. Thus, we see that both superscriptions are reiterated three times and in both cases the third summary/prediction is brief (compare 11:1 and 26:2).

The purpose of this note is to point out that Matthew may have a chiastic structure near these two superscriptions. The following is the order in the first section: (1) Elijah, the forerunner of the Messiah, is identifiable (3:4, compare 2 Kgs 1:8); (2) there is the voice from heaven (3:17); (3) there is a literary allusion to Moses and Elijah (4:2); (4) there is a rejection of temptation (4:10a) and the superscription (4:17) follows. This order is reversed after 16:21, the second superscription: (4) there is a rejection of temptation (16:23); (3) Moses and Elijah appear (17:3); (2) there is the voice from heaven (17:5); (1) Elijah is identified (17:10-13). In two instances, excluding the two superscriptions, the words are almost identical in two pairs: 4:10a/16:23a and 3:17b/17:5b. In both instances, the second quote is a bit longer.

In summation, we find Kingsbury’s basic thesis on the structure of Matthew persuasive, but we must add a minor corrective that both superscriptions in Matthew are reiterated thrice, 4:17 in 4:23-25, 9:35, and 11:1 and 16:21 in 17:22-23, 20:17-19, and 26:2. More importantly, there appears to be a chiastic structure associated with these two superscriptions. The purpose of this chiastic structure appears to support the messiahship of Jesus (1) through identifying the spiritual Elijah, the expected forerunner of the Messiah, in the person of John the Baptist (3:4 and 17:10-13); (2) through validation from the voice of God (3:17 and 17:5); and (3) by showing Jesus as the fulfillment of the law and the prophets, represented by Moses and Elijah, respectively (4:2 and 17:3).

This pattern is peculiar to the Matthean evangelist. There are neither Marcan nor Lucan parallels to Matt 4:10a. Unlike Matt 17:10-13 where the spiritual forerunner of the Messiah is identified as John the Baptist, Mark does not identify John the Baptist as the forerunner of the Messiah. Luke has no parallels to the following verses in Matthew: 3:4/17:10-13 and 4:10a/16:23a. The chiastic structure noted above is, therefore, clearly the work of the Matthean evangelist.

Tommy B. Slater

209 West Fifth Street, North Little Rock, AK 72114

---

2 Ibid., 23-24, see esp. n. 98.)
might be rendered: “She delights in her (daily) occupations,” nor does her candle go out at night.” The misunderstanding of ki töb’s adverbial nature has forced commentators to literalize pa’ämä to “taste” and to misconstrue sohrdh (MT sahrbd) as “merchandise,” leaving the ideal woman of this passage in charge of a soup-kitchen!

We come then to the expression rä’ä ki töb. The word rä’ä sometimes has the meaning of enjoy. Thus Eccl 9:9 rä’ä hayyım ‘im-‘iddä ‘âser ‘âhabtä “Enjoy life with a woman whom you love.” In this same sense the verb is often coupled with töb.11

mi-hä’ä heḥdqy ḥayyım ŏáb yâmôt îr’ît töb
Who is the man who enjoys life, loves (his) days (and) takes pleasure (in them)?

(Ps 34:13)

col hä’âdam šey’d’kal wēlôtä wərä’d töb bēkol ‘âmôtä
Every man that eats and drinks and takes pleasure in his toil.

(Ecc 3:13)

The phrase rä’ä ki töb should be connected with such usages. Thus, in the same Psalm 34, the much-debated phrase in verse 9:

pa’ämä ūr’û ki töb yhwh acrë haggeber yehseh bō
ought to be rendered: “Delight and take pleasure in the Lord, happy the man whose refuge is in him.” The phrase ki töb applies equally to both verbs (for the former see Prov 31:18 above).

The refrain of the first chapter of Genesis thus has nothing to do with seeing, still less with seeing “that it was good.” The phrase wasar’ “èlōhìm ki-töb means simply, “And God was very pleased.” It is noteworthy that each time this refrain occurs it comes at the end of a series of actions: construed as an adjective or stative verb, töb has no clear referent, and translators are forced into the ambiguous “it was good.” But for such an idea one would more likely expect ki töb ‘āzā (cf Gen. 40:16 ki töb pātar). In our case, therefore, it seems better to construe ki töb adverbially and understand the idea to be, as in Eccl 3:13 above, that of taking pleasure in one’s work. However, even where there is a clear possible referent, as in Gen 1:4, wasar’ “èlōhìm et hā’îr ki-töb, it might be better to translate, “And God was very pleased with the light.” A similar use of the expression with a object might be Gen 49:15—

wasar’ mēnūtā ki töb wē’et hā’îres ki nā’tēmā
which would mean, “and he was very pleased with (the) place.”12

James L. Kugel
Yale University, New Haven, CT 06520

10 Her “rounds,” one might say, as per this root’s meaning of “go around” in Gen 34:10, 21; 42:34, etc. Cf. Akkadian saharu(m). (W. von Soden, Akkadisches Handwörterbuch [Weisbaden: O. Harrassowitz, 1966] translates “sich wenden, herum gehen, suchen; such aufhalten”).

11 Note also rā’ā bēqāb [or bēqā]: Jer 29:32, Pss 27:13, 128:5, Eccl 2:1.

12 This translation implies the second ki is to be taken quite differently from the first. For just as the lack of a feminine ending on töb indicates it must be construed adverbially, so the apparent feminine form nā’tēmā argues that the second clause’s ki means “And [he was pleased] with the land for it was pleasant,” or even zeugmatically, “and he saw the land, how pleasant it was.” Such non-parallelism in two successive uses of ki is visible elsewhere, e.g. Lam 3:22, and might conceivably be argued for Ps 147:1 (discussed above).
ONE LIKE A SON OF MAN
IN FIRST-CENTURY CE JUDAISM

THOMAS B. SLATER
(93a Albert Bridge Road, Battersea, London SW11, England)

John J. Collins' recent study of the interpretation of Dan 7.13 in the extant Jewish literature in the first century CE has provided a needed survey and background for those interested in the interpretation of Dan 7.13 in Christian circles during the same period. Collins identifies four common features between the Similitudes of Enoch and 4 Ezra 13. First, both books assume that the human-like figure refers to an individual and is not a collective symbol. Secondly, both identify this figure as the messiah. Thirdly, in both the messiah is preexistent and both associate with the messiah prerogatives traditionally reserved for God in Jewish literature. Finally, the messiah takes a more active role in the defeat of the ungodly in the Similitudes of Enoch and 4 Ezra than in Dan 7.13. He argues that these common features between two works which do not exhibit any direct literary or theological dependence indicate certain common assumptions in the first century CE concerning Dan 7.13, but he also states that it is difficult to ascertain how widespread these assumptions might have been.

Collins' general arguments are persuasive. This study will support his position and push the argument in a slightly different direction. Elsewhere I have argued that the Similitudes of Enoch, 4 Ezra 13 and Rev 1.13 and 14.14 all interpret Dan 7.13 in the same manner by employing comparisons to describe the messiah. Lietzmann had correctly noted earlier that both Daniel and Revelation employ comparisons while the gospels do not use comparisons. In this study, I will develop those arguments. My main
argument is that the Hebrew Bible (HB) and the extant Jewish pseudepigraphal writings consistently distinguished between generic expressions (e.g., 'son of man', or 'sons of men') and descriptive comparisons (e.g., 'like that of a man' [Ezek 8.2] or 'one like a son of man' [Dan 7.13]). Any investigation of the New Testament (NT) 'son of man' traditions must take these distinctions into account. This study will not examine the NT traditions themselves but will concentrate on the literature which provided the context for the NT writers.3

A. THE JEWISH BACKGROUND

1. 'Son of man/sons of men' in the Hebrew Bible

The generic expressions 'son of man/sons of men' always function as generic expressions. They never carry any theological implications beyond the fact that they refer to human beings, not heavenly beings or saviour figures or messiahs of any type.

Ps 8.4 demonstrates my point. One must remember that a central feature of Hebrew poetry is parallelism. Parallelism occurs in poetry when line A makes an expression and line B either repeats it in some way (synonymous parallelism), adds to it (synthetic parallelism), or contradicts it (antithetic parallelism). In Ps 8.4, the second line repeats the meaning of the first. It reads, 'What is man that you are mindful of him, the son of man that you care for him?' It is clear in this passage that 'man' and 'son of man' are synonymous parallels. Both halves of the verse ask why God has concern for mortal beings. Canonical and extra-canonical Jewish literature has many such parallels and in every instance 'son of man/sons of men' are merely means of referring to human, earthly beings.4 The attempts to categorize these generic expressions with the descriptive comparisons has contributed to the multiplicity of scholarly positions and a lack of consensus on the issue. When one perceives the distinction within the Jewish tradition itself, then one may focus one's attention on the role and functions of descriptive comparisons, in general, and 'one like a son of man' in particular.

3 I hope to develop a study at a later date which concentrates on the NT itself.
4 See also Num 23.19; Isa 56.2; Job 16.21, 35.8; Ps 146.3; Jer 49.18; 33; 50.40; 51.43; Jub. 4.16; 1 Enoch 4.37; Tob 7.7; Jdt 8.12, 16; Wis 9.6; T. Levi 2.5; 3.10; 4.1; Sir 17.30; 1 Enoch 60.10.
Daniel 7.13a reads, 'As I watched in the night visions, I saw one like a son of man coming with the clouds of heaven.' This passage of Scripture has created an enormous amount of secondary literature. Although scholarly comment upon it has been extensive, there is no consensus as to its origin or its original meaning and referent. Our task will not be an exhaustive history of the critical scholarship. Others have done so ably. Rather, we shall ask and attempt to answer two questions. (1) What did this expression, 'one like a son of man', mean originally in Daniel? (2) To whom did it refer? These two questions are interrelated, if not inseparable.

Generally, scholarly opinion has taken its point of departure from one of six general perspectives. Often methods, ideas and conclusions have overlapped. However, most scholars have made the same error of failing to distinguish adequately the distinction in the Hebrew Bible and Jewish pseudepigraphy between the generic expressions 'son of man/sons of men' and the description of heavenly beings by means of comparison (i.e., by means of 'descriptive comparisons') to human beings (e.g., 'one like a son of man').

1. The messianic interpretation, our first approach, is the oldest interpretation of Dan 7.13 extant. 'Conservative scholars are agreed that the Son of Man is a picture of the Lord Jesus Christ ...' According to this school of interpretation, the setting for the Book of Daniel is the Babylonian exile of the sixth century BCE; the 'one like a son of man' referred prophetically to the first coming of Jesus in the first century CE; and the transportation upon clouds connotes his divinity. This school would argue that 'Son of Man' was a messianic title for Daniel. Walvoord, for example, writes that 'the frequent introduction of this term in the New Testament referring to Jesus Christ is the divine commentary on the phrase'. He claims that the Son of Man in Daniel corresponds clearly to other Scriptures which predict that Christ will rule over all nations (Ps. 72.11; Rev. 19.15–16'). Walvoord finds confirmation in the fact that Christ 'took the title Himself in the

---


New Testament.\textsuperscript{7} Walvoord did not realize that Dan 7.13 has the descriptive comparison 'one like a son of man' and not the titular 'the son of man'. He presupposes that all prophecies in the HB are predictions concerning Jesus in the first century CE and does not allow the HB prophets to speak for themselves. Also, many HB scholars question the Babylonian captivity as the true historical setting of the Book of Daniel.\textsuperscript{8}

2. Other scholars have tended to pinpoint ancient near eastern parallels as the source of the 'one like a son of man' tradition.\textsuperscript{9} For example, Mowinckel, in his discussions of Ugaritic, Egyptian, Gnostic and Iranian texts, concluded that the Son of Man concept did not develop within Judaism but developed as a Jewish variant of the ancient near eastern concept of the cosmic Primal Man. In the Jewish version, soteriological and eschatological elements replaced the cosmological ones.\textsuperscript{10} Similarly, Cullmann argued that a concept of an Original Man existed in oriental religions and that Judaism attempted to relate this concept to Adam the first human. One result of this attempted merger was the Danielic Son of Man.\textsuperscript{11} However, our knowledge of the origin and geographical extent of the \textit{Urmensch} traditions is limited and thus this tradition cannot be assumed with certainty to be a model for Daniel.

3. Colpe is among those who argue for a Canaanite background to the son of man image in Daniel. He argues that the Ras Shamra texts describe Baal as one who rides upon the clouds. He also notes earlier borrowings from the Canaanites, for example, in Isa 19.1 and 27.1; Ps 74.13–14; Job 9.13 and 26.12. In this way, he hopes to demonstrate how these traditions survived in the Jewish com-

\textsuperscript{7} Walvoord, 168.


\textsuperscript{10} Mowinckel, 346–450.

community up to the second century BCE. The parallels identified by Colpe are generally sound, but they may reflect a more general ancient near eastern tradition lost to us. Colpe argues consistently; however, if Canaanite religiosity is the source of Dan 7.13, it has been demythologized considerably. Also, Colpe’s explanation provides little information as to how the figure functions in Daniel 7.

4. Not agreeing with either the ancient near eastern parallels or the messianic interpretations are others who look to the biblical tradition itself. Morna Hooker, for example, argues that the Son of Man in Daniel and 1 Enoch represented the faithful remnant within the people of God in both suffering and glorification. Hooker asserts that Dan 7.13 does not employ the title. The fact that the phrase “Son of man” is used here as a comparison suggests that, whatever else he may or may not be, he is not a mere “Son of man”.

Against Schmidt’s argument that animals represent humans and humans supernatural beings, Hooker argues, ‘Such reasoning presents a too-neat solution to our problem. The useful convention that animals represent men and men represent supernatural beings no doubt holds good for later apocalyptic, but it is doubtful whether it was already a recognized formula when Dan. 7 was composed.’ She finds two themes in Daniel 7. First, there is a conflict between the people of Israel and their foes, and, second, the conquest of chaos by their god. ‘Yahweh’s struggle with the monster and the people’s battle with their enemies are one, and it is God’s victory which ensures the well-being of the people.’ The Son of man represents the faithful remnant of Israel who received dominion. Israel is ‘the true Son of Man to whom dominion belongs by right’.


14 Hooker, p. 11; see also n. 1.

15 Hooker, 14.

16 Hooker, 20–1; quote from 21.

17 Hooker, 23–9; quote from 29.
Hooker notes a shift in the *Similitudes of Enoch* (1 Enoch 37–71) and 2 Esdr 13. In both, the Danielic Son of man is not a symbol but an individual. In the *Similitudes*, he is a communal representative, i.e., the Righteous One who represents the righteous ones; the Elect One who represents the elect ones. ‘(T)he faithful Remnant are Son of man by virtue of their election by God and their obedience to his will.’ In 2 Esdr 13, the Danielic Son of man has become an individual Man, possibly under the influence of an Anthropos tradition.

Hooker understands correctly that (1) Daniel 7 contains a comparison and not the title; (2) the symbolic nature of both the Danielic and the Enochic figures and (3) the shift of meaning from Daniel, on the one hand, to the *Similitudes* and 2 Esdras (or 4 Ezra) 13, on the other. Hooker fails, however, to appreciate the change which the comparison creates when joined with the generic phrase. It is no longer a generic phrase but becomes a description of a heavenly being. Thus, she also fails to identify the use of comparisons in 1 Enoch 46 and 2 Esdras (4 Ezra) 13 as descriptions of heavenly beings totally consistent with Dan 7.13. Indeed, Schmidt’s solution may be ‘too-neat’ simply because it is correct. The ‘one like a son of man’ in Dan 7.13 is more than a symbolic representative. He is also an individual heavenly being who has received the dominion in heaven that will come soon to the faithful remnant of Israel on earth, according to Daniel 7–12.

5. Similarly to Hooker, Di Lella argued that the son of man was a symbol of the faithful. The Aramaic bar enash and the Hebrew ben adam are figures of speech which merely mean ‘a human being’ or ‘a person’. The ‘one in human likeness’ is not a real person but ‘a symbol of “the holy ones of the Most High”, a title given, ... to the faithful Jews ... who courageously withstood the persecution of Antiochus IV Epiphanes. Hence, there seems to be no mystery at all as to the meaning and background of the “one in human likeness”’. First of all, against Di Lella, there is a ‘mystery’ simply because this figure is not named explicitly in Daniel. Second, Dan 7.13 does not simply read bar enash but k’bar enash. Bar enash and ben adam are figures of speech denoting human beings, but the comparison changes the meaning. Indeed, what sense would it make to describe a human being with the expression ‘like a human being’? It would convey that the being in question only looked

---

18 Hooker, 46.
19 Hooker, 49–56.
20 Di Lella, 3.
human, or had a human appearance, but was not actually human. This is exactly how the four beasts are described in Dan 7.1–8. The descriptions of the four beasts in Dan 7.1–8 do not attempt to suggest that the seer actually visualizes a lion, or a bear, or a leopard. The animals which the seer envisions are ‘like’ a lion, a bear, and a leopard, i.e., the seer employs descriptive comparisons to convey how the beasts appeared. The reader knows that the descriptions in Dan 7.13 are nothing but analogous representations. Thus, the ‘one like a son of man’ is not a human being but a description of another type of being, a heavenly being (as travelling via clouds connotes in the HB [e.g., Exod 13.21 and 16.10; Num 11.25; Ps 104.3; Isa 19.1]), in human form.

6. The final position was first put forth in two journal articles nearly a century ago by Nathaniel Schmidt. In his first article, Schmidt argued that bar nash was not a messianic title. In the later article, developing his earlier one somewhat, Schmidt argued that ‘one like a son of man’ did not refer to the messiah but to the archangel Michael. Schmidt argued that in Dan 8.15, Gabriel is described as ‘one having the appearance of a man’, Dan 10.16 later described another angel as ‘one in the likeness of the sons of men’ and Dan 10.18 a third time described an angel as ‘one having the appearance of a man’. Furthermore, coming with clouds suggests a heavenly being (see my comments above concerning Di Lella’s position). Finally, Dan 10.21 identified Michael as the heavenly prince of Israel. Thus, Schmidt concluded that ‘one like a son of man’ in Dan 7.13 functioned similarly and described an angelic being. Since Michael is the angelic prince for Israel, he would be the logical referent of ‘one like a son of man’.

Others have followed Schmidt’s lead. For example, Emerton agrees with Schmidt’s basic thesis and adds that Dan 7 owes much to a Canaanite autumnal festival for its imagery. Others have identified ‘the holy ones of the Most High’ as the angelic army which followed Michael in battle at the celestial level. Both Michael and the holy ones would be the heavenly counterparts to the faithful Jews under Antiochus’ persecution. Day argues, for

21 N. Schmidt, ‘Was bar nash a Messianic Title?’ JBL 15 (1896) 36–53 and ‘The “Son of Man” in the Book of Daniel’, JBL 19 (1900) 22–8. It is this Schmidt to whom Hooker referred whose solution was ‘too-neat’.
22 See Emerton cited above.
example, that, except in Ps 34, 'holy ones' always refers to angels in the HB, Qumran and the intertestamental literature. Collins notes similar roles for Michael in the Qumran literature (QL) (e.g., 1 QM 17.7-8) and the NT (e.g., Rev 12.7-12) and notes similar heavenly figures in 11QMelch vv. 8-15; T. Moses 10; Matt 16.27; Mark 8.38; 1 Thess 4.16 and 2 Thess 1.7. For him, the Danielic figure is a variant version of a second temple Jewish belief in a heavenly saviour.

I agree with the position taken by Schmidt and followed and developed by others. First, it does justice to the Book of Daniel by not reading the NT back into Daniel but reads Daniel on its own terms. Secondly, those who have followed Schmidt’s lead have shown parallels in other religious traditions without overlooking Daniel’s unique use of those traditions. Thus, they have struck a helpful balance between the possible sources and Daniel’s place in the use of the tradition. Thirdly, Collins especially has shown parallel developments in second temple Judaism and early Christianity which elucidate Daniel’s use and understanding of the expression.

Why then have so many gone wrong on this topic? With few exceptions, regardless of the point of departure, most scholars make the same three errors. First, the synoptic son of man tradition is either in the foreground and/or the background of their thinking and they come to Dan 7.13 from that perspective. This error in perspective leads to the other two. Secondly, they do not perceive the differences between the generic terms and the descriptive comparisons because they either want to prove that Dan 7.13 predicts the lordship of Christ or they want to prove that it is not a prediction and that ‘one like a son of man’ is just another generic expression. Thirdly, they do not realize the degree to which Daniel is dependent upon Ezekiel for descriptive comparisons and other elements and what this means for a better understanding of how descriptive comparisons function in the HB, the pseudepigraphical literature and the NT. Krodel provides an example of what I mean. To his credit, Krodel recognizes that both Daniel and Revelation use comparisons and the gospels use a title. However, he does not ask what difference this could make but simply assumes that there is no difference.

24 J. Day, 168, esp. n. 81.
26 Krodel, 95 and 274; so too Hooker, 11-12; Di Lella, 3; Kraeling, 142-4.
comparisons, the differences between the Gospels, on one hand, and Daniel 7–12, on the other, could be significant.

Again, the question of the son of man in the gospels has heavily influenced how other pertinent texts have been interpreted. As a result, the entire tradition history of the descriptive comparisons has gone unnoticed. Some links have been made. Several persons have recognized the dependence of Dan 7 upon Ezek 1.27

For example, Bowman notes (1) the throne on wheels aflame (cf. Ezek 1.4, 15–16, 21, 26 and Dan 7.6); (2) God enthroned in human-likeness (cf. Ezek 1.26–7 and Dan 7.9–10); (3) a great cloud (Ezek 1.4 and Dan 7.13); (4) and four great beasts (Ezek 1.5–14 and Dan 7.3–8). This listing, however, is but partial. I have identified four other elements which Daniel borrows from Ezekiel which enable us to understand better the Book of Daniel as a whole and the role and functions of the descriptive comparisons in particular.

First, the setting for both is the Babylonian captivity in the sixth century BCE, in actuality for Ezekiel, in imagery for Daniel. This cannot be overstated. The author of Daniel uses Ezekiel's context as a symbolic metaphor, a mirror for his own time. As in Ezekiel's time, faithfulness to God cannot be taken for granted in the face of an oppressive foreign ruler but must be shown constantly. 4 Ezra, the Book of Revelation and the Apocalypse of Abraham, all three written about 100 CE, also purport to have originated in Babylon and use Ezekiel's time as a symbolic metaphor. This would indicate that in first-century Jewish and Christian apocalyptic circles the Babylonian experience continued to carry theological meaning and that the need for fervent faith was a relevant message.

Secondly, both books contain symbolic messages of hope in order to encourage the faithful in their struggle against oppression (e.g., Ezekiel 37 and Daniel 7).

Thirdly, in the Books of Ezekiel and Daniel alone in the HB, 'son of man' functions as a means of address to a human being (e.g., Ezek 2.1; 5.1; 15.2; 22.23; 30.21; 37.3; 40.4 and Dan 8.17 [cf. Dan 10.19]).28 The only other extant occurrence of 'son of man' as a means of address in early Judaism is in 1 Enoch 60.10: And he said to me, "Son of man, you here wish to know what is secret."29


29 Translations of 1 Enoch are M. A. Knibb's in H. F. D. Sparks, ed., The Apocryphal Old
Fourthly, only Ezekiel and Daniel in the HB describe heavenly beings by means of comparison, i.e., with descriptive comparisons. Schmidt correctly noted this in Dan 7.13; 8.15; 10.16, 18 (see also 12.6–7). Parallels in Ezekiel include 1.26–8 which describes the appearance of the Lord; 8.2–4 which may describe either God or an angel; 9.2–11 which describes an angel as a ‘man clothed in linen’ (see Dan 10.5 and 12.6–7; also compare Ezek 9.4–6 with Rev 7.3); 40.3–4 describes an angel who acts as Ezekiel’s heavenly guide (cf. Dan 10.10–21). These descriptive comparisons are not technical terms, as the variety of expressions demonstrate. It is equally clear that they describe heavenly beings by comparison to human beings.

These parallels in and of themselves may not persuade everyone; however, one should note that ‘son of man/sons of men’ never functions as a description of a heavenly being but only as a reference or means of address to a human being in the HB. Some might argue that the title ‘that/this Son of man’ in 1 Enoch 37–71 is an exception to this rule. It is not. In 1 Enoch 37–71, ‘that/this Son of man’ is not the primary referent. The primary referent is one ‘whose face had the appearance of a man’ (46.1). In other words, in 1 Enoch 37–71 ‘that/this Son of man’ always refers back to the figure introduced by means of a descriptive comparison in 46.1 and not vice versa.30 Also, the Ethiopic translation of 1 Enoch employs three different expressions for ‘that/this son of man’, suggesting that it was not a technical term or a title in the earlier document of which the Ethiopic version is a translation. This whole matter is difficult to clarify because Ethiopic has no definite article. However, it is certain that ‘this/that Son of Man’ is not a mere mortal, but a heavenly being who possesses extraordinary powers and duties.31

Furthermore, even though there is no consensus among scholars concerning the origin, meaning and function of Dan 7.13, there is a consensus that Ezekiel has influenced Daniel’s presentation of heavenly beings32 and that Dan 8.15, 10.16 and 10.18 refer to heavenly beings.33


31 Cf. Wilson, 40–2.
We began this section by asking what the expression 'one like a son of man' meant and to whom it referred originally. Our research has shown that this expression was one of several descriptive comparisons which the Books of Ezekiel and Daniel employed to designate heavenly beings, either God (e.g., Ezek 1.26–8) or angels (e.g., Dan 10.16–18). Although absolute literary dependence has not been established, nowhere else does one find the same aforementioned eight features. Our research does not deny other parallels, but those parallels, for example in ANE traditions, have not adequately examined the function of descriptive comparisons in the HB.

Our discussion of the use of generic expressions and descriptive comparisons in the HB ends here. Let us turn now to an examination of the exegesis of Dan 7.13 in first-century CE Jewish writings.

B. DESCRIPTIVE COMPARISONS IN FIRST-CENTURY CE JUDAISM

1. 1 Enoch

1 Enoch 37–71 (also known as the Similitudes of Enoch), 4 Ezra 13 and the Apocalypse of Abraham 10 provide important examples of the interpretation of Dan 7.13 in first-century CE Judaism independent of Christianity.34

It is generally acknowledged that 1 Enoch is a composite of several Enoch books written at different times and places. These books are (1) The Watchers (1–36), (2) The Similitudes (37–71), (3) The Astronomical Writings (72–82), (4) The Dream Visions (83–90) and (5) The Epistle (91–107). The Similitudes were not found in the Qumran collection and this fact has led many scholars to date them after the death of that community in 70 CE. Milik, for example, has argued for a pre-Christian Enochic Pentateuch at


34 See, e.g., Collins, NTS, 452–9; Reddish, Apocalyptic Literature, 163–6. For a different point of view that the Similitudes of Enoch and 4 Ezra have had contact with Christianity, see J. Y. Campbell, 'The Origin and Meaning of the Term Son of Man', JTS 48 (1947) 145–55; J. C. Hindley, 'Towards a Date for the Similitudes of Enoch: An Historical Approach', NTS 14 (1967–8) 551–65; D. C. Sim, 'Matthew 22.13a and 1 Enoch 10.4a: A Case of Literary Dependence?', JSNT 47 (1992) 3–19.

4 Ezra and the Apocalypse of Abraham do have Christian interpolations but not in the verses which we shall examine.
Qumran with a longer version of the astrological writings and a 'Book of Giants' instead of the Similitudes. Milik did not work closely with the Ethiopic translations. He discovered late additions in 61.1 in Aramaic which refer to angels flying with wings. He concluded that the Similitudes was a Christian work which eventually replaced the Giants in the Enoch tradition. He dated the Similitudes in the late third century CE. Milik has been soundly criticized by other leading scholars studying 1 Enoch. Some have argued that if Milik had worked more closely with the Ethiopic translations he would have found that the addition in 61.1 was not in the Ethiopic and would have dated the Similitudes in the first century CE. Reddish argues that the earliest possible date would be 40 BCE if 56.5–7 refers to an attack on Palestine by the Parthians at that time. He also notes that 67.5–13 refers to hot springs where the affluent sought cures from illnesses. This could refer to the springs at Callirhoe to which Herod travelled prior to his death in 4 BCE. He also notes parallels between the NT and the Similitudes (Matt 19.28 and 1 Enoch 45.3; John 5.22 and 1 Enoch 61.8). It should be noted that the parallels with the NT may simply reflect dependence upon a common Jewish religious milieu. I would argue for a date in the first six decades of the Common Era because the Similitudes do not contain any reference to the Jewish War of 66–70 but allude to events at the close of the previous century. It would be difficult for a writer not to mention the destruction of Jerusalem after the fact, as 4 Ezra, 2 Baruch, the Apocalypse of Abraham attest.

The Similitudes of Enoch have five parts: (1) an introduction (37.1–4); (2) the first similitude (chaps. 38–44); (3) the second similitude (chaps. 45–57); (4) the third similitude (chaps. 58–69); (5) two epilogues (chaps 70–1). 1 Enoch 46.1 describes one with the 'Head of Days' whose face had 'the appearance of a man and his face (was) full of grace, like one of the holy angels', i.e., he is a heavenly being. This text clearly picks up where Dan 7.13 ends. The 'Ancient of Days' is now the 'Head of Days', the 'one like a son of man' is now one 'with the appearance of a man' who is identified

---

37 Reddish, Apocalyptic Literature, 164–5.
38 See discussion in Collins, AT, 155–86.
as ‘that Son of Man’. As noted earlier, 1 Enoch 46.1 introduced the human-like figure with a descriptive comparison, in keeping with Dan 7.13 and Ezek 1.26. In other words, the descriptive comparison becomes the point of reference for ‘that Son of Man’ and not the reverse (see also 1 Enoch 46.2, 3, 4; 48.2; 60.10; 62.7, 9, 14; 63.11; 69.26, 27 (twice); 70.1; 71.14, 17). ‘That Son of Man’ sits on a throne (45.3; 55.4; 61.8; 62.5; 69.27, 29), acts as a judge (e.g., 45.3 and 46.2) and gathers a community of the faithful to himself (48.4 and 62.12–13); is righteous (e.g., 46.3 and 62.2), functions as a revealer (46.3), rules the cosmos (62.6–7 and 71.15–17) and is an object of adoration (48.5 and 62.9) and is the Messiah (e.g., chaps. 51–2). 39

In contrast, 1 Enoch 37–71 has 10 generic sayings which do not describe or refer to heavenly beings but to human beings. 1 Enoch 39.1 provides an excellent example, for it contrasts heavenly beings with human beings. ‘And it will come to pass in these days that the chosen and elect children (i.e., angels) will come down from the high heaven and their offspring will become one with the sons of men’ (cf. 39.5; 42.2; 64.2 [twice]; 69.6 [twice]; 69.12; 69.14 [v. 69.15 in Charlesworth ed.]).

1 Enoch 60.10 stands out, for it provides a parallel to Ezekiel’s and Daniel’s use of ‘son of man’ as a means of address: ‘And he said to me, “Son of man, you here wish to know what is secret”.’ 40 One finds in 1 Enoch 37–71 the same features that one finds in the HB with respect to the generic son of man/sons of men phrases referring to humans and the descriptive comparisons referring to heavenly beings.

2. 4 Ezra 41

4 Ezra is a composite Jewish–Christian work. Chapters 3–14 contain the original Jewish work with minor Christian interpolations. Chapters 1–2 and 15–16 are later Christian additions. Chapters 3–14 contain seven visions: (1) 3.1–5.20; (2) 5.21–6.34; (3) 6.35–9.25; (4) 9.26–10.59; (5) 11.1–12.51; (6) 13.1–58; (7) 14.1–48. Most scholars date 4 Ezra about 100 CE. 4 Ezra 3.1 refers to the destruction of Jerusalem by the Babylonians 30 years prior to the

40 Collins agrees and argues that 1 Enoch 71.14 may also be a form of direct address (NTS, 456). I am open to that possibility.
41 Translations of 4 Ezra come from the Revised Standard Version (RSV).
writing of the book, probably a symbolic reference to the Romans’
destruction of Jerusalem in 70 CE. Indeed, the symbol of the
Roman Empire was the eagle, the very symbol used for the op-
pressor in chaps. 11-12. Those same chapters contain lamentations
over the destruction of Jerusalem.42

4 Ezra interprets Dan 7.13 in a manner similar to 1 Enoch 46 by
employing a descriptive comparison to present a heavenly being:
‘And I looked, and behold, this wind made something like a figure
of a man come up out of the heart of the sea. And I looked, and
behold, that man flew with the clouds of heaven; . . . (4 Ezra 13.2–
3).’ As with Ezekiel, Daniel and 1 Enoch, a heavenly being is
described in human-likeness by means of a comparison.43 This is a
clear reference to Dan 7.13. ‘One like a son of man, coming with
the clouds of heaven’ has become ‘something like the figure of a
man’. 4 Ezra continues, ‘And I looked, and behold, the man flew
with the clouds of heaven.’

With regard to qualities and/or functions, there are strong par-
allels with 1 Enoch 37–71, suggesting a common tradition of inter-
pretation in first century CE Judaism. In 4 Ezra 13, this human-
like figure is unknown (v. 52; cf. 7.28; 12.31–9; 1 Enoch 48.3; 62.7);
pronounces judgement (vv. 37–8; cf. 12.32–3; 1 Enoch 46.4–6; 62.
3–16; 69.27–9) and gathers an elect community (vv. 12–13, 39–50;
1 Enoch 48.4 and 62.12–13) and is the messiah (4 Ezra 12–13 and
1 Enoch 52–3). Finally, as with Dan 7.13, the human-like figure of
4 Ezra 13 rides upon the clouds.

3. The Apocalypse of Abraham

A third tradition also deserves attention, the Apocalypse of
Abraham (ApAb). Although it does not refer to the messiah, it does
employ a descriptive comparison in order to describe a heavenly
being. Most scholars date it around 100 CE because like 4 Ezra and
2 Baruch it attempts to understand the meaning behind the de-
struction of Jerusalem in 70 CE.44 I would concur with the 100 CE
dating. It laments the destruction of Jerusalem and must be post-
70 CE.

42 Cf. Reddish, Apocalyptic Literature, 58 and Collins, AI, 156.
43 For contrasting views, see G. H. Box, ed. and trans., The Ezra-Apocalypse (London:
Fitman & Sons, 1912) 286; M. E. Stone, Fourth Ezra (Hermeneia; Minneapolis: Fortress,
AvAb 10.1–4 describes how God sent an angel to Abraham to restore his strength. In chap. 9, God has given Abraham a vision. Abraham becomes faint in 10.1–2 (cf. Rev 1.17a). God sends an angel to strengthen him (vv. 3). The seer describes the angel in this manner (v. 4): ‘The angel he sent to me in the likeness of a man came, and he took me by my right hand and stood me on my feet.’ Here we have a clear example of a heavenly being described in human-likeness. Although this being is not the messiah, it agrees with examples presented in Ezekiel, Daniel, 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra which describe God and angels in this same manner. This verse, without Christian influence and employing a descriptive comparison to describe an angel, still shares with Ezekiel, Daniel, the Similitudes of Enoch and 4 Ezra the use of comparisons to describe heavenly beings. Rowland argues that AvAb 10.4 based its description of the angel upon Ezekiel and Daniel.45

C. CONCLUDING COMMENTS

Several elements stand out. First, we have discovered the consistent use of descriptive comparisons to designate heavenly beings in Ezekiel, Daniel, 1 Enoch, 4 Ezra and the Apocalypse of Abraham.46 Secondly, Ezekiel, Daniel and 1 Enoch use ‘son of man’ as a means of address to a human being. Thirdly, both 1 Enoch 37–71 and 4 Ezra 13, along with employing descriptive comparisons, understand those comparisons to refer to the messiah in Dan 7.13.47 Fourthly, these human-like messianic figures in 1 Enoch 37–71 and 4 Ezra 13 possess similar qualities and functions, suggesting a common tradition in first century CE Judaism with regard to the exegeses of Dan 7.13. There is no evidence of any literary relationship between 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra. This makes their similarities even more striking and raises the probability that they depend upon a common tradition of Jewish messianic expectations and/or heavenly saviour speculation, if not a common tradition of heavenly deliverers in human-likeness.48 Finally, the

46 Kraeling notes the use of comparisons in Daniel, 1 Enoch and 4 Ezra but not in Ezekiel nor the Apocalypse of Abraham (142–4).
Apocalypse of Abraham shows no relationship to the Similitudes of Enoch or 4 Ezra, but like both of them uses a descriptive comparison to describe a heavenly being, a technique probably based upon the use of descriptive comparisons in Ezekiel and Daniel. This final point proves that these late first/early second century Jewish apocalypticists consciously and consistently employed descriptive comparisons in one way, i.e., they exhibit a traditional means of describing heavenly beings. Any study of the son of man tradition in the NT should take into account the distinctively different ways in which the generic phrases and the descriptive comparisons functioned within first-century CE Judaism and what these differences might have meant for the development of early Christianity.
MORE ON REVELATION 1.13 AND 14.14

The author teaches in the Department of Religion of The University of Georgia, USA.

In an earlier article, I argued that “one like a son of man” was a preferable translation of homoion huion anthrôpou in Rev 1.13 and 14.14, rather than the NRSV’S “one like the son of man.” The present article offers additional evidence which confirms and strengthens my original argument.

In the first study, I noted that Lietzmann correctly understood that Dan 7.13, Rev 1.13 and 14.14 differ from the synoptics in two ways. First, both books employ comparisons; and, secondly, neither uses the definite article. Following Lietzmann, I concluded that homoion huion anthrôpou was not a messianic title in Daniel or Revelation, but a description by means of comparison. I supported my thesis by identifying similar “descriptive comparisons” in 1 Enoch 46.1 (one “whose face had the appearance of a human being”) and 4 Ezra/2 Esdras 13.1 (“something like a figure of a man”). The Similitudes of Enoch, 4 Ezra and Revelation are all dated by scholarly consensus in the second half of the first Christian century. Additionally, all three independently give messianic interpretations of Dan 7.13. Finally, both Dan 8.17 and 1 Enoch 60.10 use the generic expression “son of man” as a means of direct address to the seer of the visions (cf Ezek 1.26-28; 2.1; 17.2).

Against my thesis, one might argue that the Similitudes of Enoch consistently employ “that Son of man” as a messianic title, and also refer in a titular sense to the seer Enoch as “the Son of Man” (71.14). However, all the Enochic “that Son of Man” passages refer back to the descriptive comparison in 46.1. 1 Enoch 46.3 makes this abundantly clear. An interpreting angel tells the seer, “This is the Son of Man who has righteousness, and with whom righteousness dwells.” “This” refers back to the one “whose face had the appearance of a man” in v 1. Thus the expression “that Son of Man” does not function as a title in the Similitudes but as a means of reference. As a minor correction to my earlier work, I should point out

1 This study is dedicated to Ms Ruth E. Young, Main Library, University of Georgia, Athens, Georgia.
3 M.A. Knibb’s translation in The Apocryphal Old Testament, ed. H.D. Spaats (Oxford: Clarendon 1984). 1 Enoch is a composite of many different Enochic traditions. Chs 37-71 are also known as the Similitudes of Enoch; this paper will refer to those chapters in this manner.
that *I Enoch* 70-71 is not part of the original message of the *Similitudes* but a comment on that message.

Additional research confirms my original thesis. First, Ezekiel may be the source of Daniel’s descriptive comparisons. Ezekiel uses them in 1.26-28; 8.2-4; 9.2-11 and 40.3-4. Secondly, Ezekiel, Daniel and the *Similitudes* use “son of man,” in contrast to descriptive comparisons, as a means of direct address to the seer. Finally, Ezekiel, Daniel, the *Similitudes*, *4 Ezra* and Revelation all portray “Babylon” as the great oppressor of the people of God, the last four using Ezekiel’s historical context as a theological metaphor for their own contexts. These similarities indicate a common tradition in second temple Judaism of presenting heavenly beings in human-likeness. The *Similitudes of Enoch*, *4 Ezra* and Revelation are independently reading Dan 7.13, as evidenced by their use of descriptive comparisons in three different ways, yet each with a messianic interpretation.

As noted above, *I Enoch* 70-71 is an appendix to the original *Similitudes*. This is important to note, because 71.14 has been written in such a manner that the image of the human-like messiah approaching the Head of Days provides an inclusio for the Son of Man section, clearly echoing 46.31. It reads, “You are the Son of Man who was born to righteousness and righteousness remains over you, and the righteousness of the Head of Days will not leave you.” Alternatively, E. Isaacs translates 71.14, “You, son of man, who are born in righteousness and upon whom righteousness has dwelt, the righteousness of the Antecedent of Time will not forsake you”2. If Isaacs’ translation is preferable, the appendix to the *Similitudes* also uses “son of man” as a form of direct address to the seer, as do Ezekiel (e.g. 1.26-28), Daniel (8.17) and the *Similitudes* themselves (60.10). The *Similitudes* did not originally identify Enoch as the Son of Man, but this identification probably reflects a Jewish response to the Christian kerygma (cf *I Enoch* 62.7).

An examination of two other works roughly contemporaneous with the *Similitudes*, *4 Ezra* and Revelation, further confirms my original thesis concerning descriptive comparisons. The first is the *Apocalypse of Abraham* (*ApAb*). Most scholars date it circa 100 CE. As with *4 Ezra* and *2 Baruch*, it laments the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 CE. I concur with this date. The pertinent passage is in *ApAb* 10. In this chapter, Abraham has a vision and becomes faint (vv 1-2; cf Rev 1.17a). God sends an angel to strengthen Abraham (v 3) and the writer describes the angel in 4: “The angel he sent to me in the likeness of a man came, and he took me by my right hand and stood me on my feet.” While not describing the messiah, this passage is consistent with those examined earlier that employed descriptive comparisons to depict heavenly beings. Although many parts of the *Apocalypse of Abraham* have been reworked by a Christian editor, 10.4 does not show any signs of such redaction. I concur fully with Rowland’s statement that *ApAb* 10.4 is based on Ezekiel and Daniel3.

Our second example is the *Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah*. This contains three separate works: the *Martyrdom of Isaiah* (1.1-3.13; 4.19-5.16); the

---

1 This added appendix with its inclusio suggests that these two chapters were added before the entire *Enoch* corpus came together.
Testament of Hezekiah (3.14-4.18), and the Vision of Isaiah (chs. 6-11). While the Martyrdom is a Jewish midrash dated by most scholars no later than 100 CE, the Testament is a Christian apocalypse dated in the late 1st or early 2nd century CE. I concur with both dates. The Vision is a 2nd century CE Christian work with some relation to Gnosticism. It will not be examined in the present study. Mart 3.13, a passage from the Jewish midrash, states that Christ takes “the form into which he would be transformed, (namely) the form of a man”1. 4.2, a passage in the Christian apocalypse, follows suit. It describes Beliar/Satan in this manner: “He (Beliar) will descend from his firmament in the form of a man.”

These passages have a direct bearing on a proper understanding of the descriptive comparisons in Rev 1.13 and 14.14. First, representing Jewish and Christian perspectives, both these passages explain that heavenly beings merely assume human form when they descend to earth. Secondly, and more importantly, the reader learns that the acquisition of human-likeness is not limited to good heavenly beings such as the messiah or archangels, but extends also to evil ones such as Satan. While the second passage has a later interpolation which identifies Beliar with Nero, it is clear that the original tradition simply said that Beliar took human form and did not specify any particular human being. Both Mart 3.13 and 4.2 reflect earlier Jewish traditions describing heavenly beings anthropomorphically. Finally, confirming my thesis concerning the role and function of descriptive comparisons, these passages state explicitly that heavenly beings take human form when they descend to earth, something which the descriptive comparisons in Ezekiel, Daniel, the Similitudes of Enoch, 4 Ezra and Revelation only suggest; that is, the passages from the Martyrdom help us to interpret the role and function of descriptive comparisons in the other works.

How does all this relate to my original thesis concerning homoion huion anthrōpou in Rev 1.13 and 14.14? First, it confirms that this Greek phrase is essentially a comparison and not a Christological title, and that the better translation would be “like a son of man” (REB, RSV, NIV, cf GNB) in contrast to “like the son of man” (NRSV). Secondly, this study has shown a distinctively different employment of descriptive comparisons, on the one hand, and means of direct address to a seer, on the other. Thirdly, it should be noted that all these texts except the Martyrdom of Isaiah are apocalyptic to some degree, suggesting but not confirming an apocalyptic character for the figure identified as “a son of man”. Fourthly, all but Ezekiel and Daniel can be dated between 50 and 150 CE. Thus, these works, individually and collectively, reflect speculation about heavenly beings current in second temple Judaism and early Christianity. Finally, both the non-titular and non-generic use of descriptive comparisons for heavenly beings in literature prior to Revelation (Ezekiel, Daniel, the Similitudes of Enoch), contemporaneous with Revelation (4 Ezra, the Apocalypse of Abraham), and after Revelation (the Martyrdom and Ascension of Isaiah) substantiate their role and function in Revelation itself as a means of describing heavenly beings by comparison with human beings.

1 Quotation from Knibb’s translation in Charlesworth, ed., OTP, vol 2.
PEACOCKS OR BABOONS? (1 Kgs 10.22; 2 Chr 9.21)

The maritime trading ventures of King Solomon are briefly recorded in both Kings and Chronicles. With the help of Hiram King of Tyre, Solomon established a merchant fleet operating from Ezion Geber at the northern end of the Gulf of Aqaba. From there he dispatched his celebrated "ships of Tarshish"1 to Ophir to bring back gold, almug wood2 and precious stones. Although the location of Ophir remains unproven3, a good case can be made for its location in western Arabia close to the Red Sea4. I Kgs 10.22 and its parallel 2 Chr 9.21 record that Solomon's fleet returned once every three years bringing gold, silver, ivory, apes, and a creature we shall for the present call by its Hebrew name tukki.

Translations vary between (1) "peacock" (AV, RSV, NASB, JPS, TOB, cf. BDB), following a tradition going back to the Targum and the Syriac, Vulgate and Arabic versions, and (2) "monkey" (GNB, NKJV, NAB, REB) or "baboon" (NIV, NJB)5.

Advocates of "peacock" point to supposed parallels with the languages of Southern India where the peacock is native, e. g. Tamil tokai, "tail" and Dravidian tokel, "peacock"; but as long ago as 1920 the Sanskrit scholar W.E. Clark dismissed any Indian etymology as wholly unproven6.

In the following year W.F. Albright7 argued for etymological parallels in Egypt — a land far closer to the base of Solomon's maritime operations than India. Tukki is preceded in the 1 Kings/2 Chronicles list by qof, corresponding to the Egyptian g(í)f, "ape". This word occurs together with kjj, "baboon", among the rarities which the Middle Kingdom Egyptian "Tale of the Shipwrecked Sailor" reports as being brought back from a voyage. It is suggested that kjj is equivalent to the Hebrew tukki, tu being a preformative8.

Trade, either Israelite or Egyptian, with India through the Red Sea,

---

1 These ships did not necessarily go to Tarshish (possibly the Gudalquivir valley in southern Spain, or Sardinia), but were a recognised class of ocean-going vessel designed by the Phoenicians for the transport of copper ingots from their mines and refineries in Cyprus and Sardinia. J. Bright, History of Israel, 3rd ed. 19/81, 211.
2 The variant algum occurring in conjunction with "cedar" and "pine" in 2 Chr 2.8 has a clear Lebanese context. It is perhaps cognate with the Akkadian elemákk(u), elemágg(u), and Ugaritic álmu where it occurs in a list along with "cypress". Some kind of juniper common to both Ophir and Lebanon has been proposed. See H. von Wissmann, K. Ziegler (ed.), Paulys Realencyclopädie der Classischen Altertumswissenschaft, Supplenumband 12 (1970), cols. 971-973. The traditional "sandalwood" is a guess from as late as A.D. 1749; W.E. Clark, ASJL 36 (1920), 107. The identification of this tree, however, remains uncertain, the traditional "sandal-wood" being a guess from as late as A.D. 1748 (W.E. Clark, ASJL 36 (1920) 107.
3 For a summary of possible locations see D.J. Wiseman in Illustrated Bible Dictionary 1119b-1120a.
4 Ophir is listed alongside known southern Arabian locations, Hazarmaveth, Sheba and Havilah in Gen 10.26-29. H. von Wissmann, op. cit., cols. 969-970.
6 Clark, op. cit. 103ff.
7 ASL 37 (1921) 144.
8 Cf. Arabic timsah from Coptic emsah, crocodile.
though not impossible, is not attested either in the period of Solomon or before. The Egyptians, however, are known to have been trading with Punt and other locations on the Red Sea coast of Africa since the Sixth Dynasty (c. 2345-2181 B.C.). Queen Hatshepsut (1479-1458 B.C.) sent a trading expedition to Punt. Her temple reliefs at Deir el-Bahri depict this expedition, and apes and baboons figure among the various creatures shown living in Punt. If Solomon's men had access to the already well-established Egyptian trading area along the Red Sea coast of Africa, they too could easily have obtained apes and baboons from there.

"Baboon", or some other kind of monkey, seems to fit better the immediate context (qof = "ape"). The etymological parallel is not only far closer geographically to Solomon's realm; it is itself additional evidence of an already centuries' old trade with the Red Sea coast of Africa.

P.J.N. LAWRENCE

HOMOIQN HUIQN ANTIIROQUOU IN REV 1.13 AND 14.14

The New Revised Standard Version (NRSV) of the Bible has made revisions which incorporate changes in English, advances in understanding biblical languages and the use of more inclusive language. One change in NRSV from its predecessor is its translation of homoiqn huiqn anthrqpou in Rev 1.13 and 14.14. RSV translated that Greek phrase "like a son of man," but NRSV translates it "like the son of man". The NRSV translators probably saw Rev 1.13 and 14.14 as an anarthrous use, as in in Jn 5.27 and Heb 2.6 (a quotation of Ps 8.4). One wonders, however, whether John the apocalypticist possessed such accomplished Greek literary skills.

The term "son of man" has enjoyed an extensive debate among biblical scholars. The bulk of that debate must be held in abeyance for the purposes of this study since most of it has been concerned with the "son of man" sayings in the Gospels, not Revelation.

Lietzmann recognized nearly a century ago a difference between the Gospels and Revelation. He wrote that Revelation is closer to Dan 7.13 in that both read "one like a son of man," while the Gospels read "the son of man." Lietzmann concluded that Revelation knew nothing of the Gospel tradition. Krodel writes, "Son of man is not a title in Revelation, but, as in Daniel, a comparison."

Two factors tend to support Lietzmann's position. First, none of the son of man references in the rest of the New Testament, including

9 The location of Punt is defined as eastern Sudan to the Red Sea, and parts of northern and western Ethiopia (K.A. Kitchen, LA 5,120).
1 The Revised English Bible (REB) has "one like a human being" in Dan 7.13 and "a figure like a man" in Rev 1.13 and 14.14. This note demonstrates that both REB translations are preferable to the NRSV translations in Rev 1.13 and 14.14.
its anarthrous usage, employs the comparative *hunoion*; they read simply
"son of man." Second, both 1 Enoch 37.71, the Similitudes of Enoch,
and 2 Esdras 13 have messianic human-like figures based upon "one like
a son of man" in Dan 7.13, but it is clear in all these instances that a
comparison, or distinction, is being made between a heavenly being with
a human appearance and an earthly, human being when introducing the
respective messianic figures. 1 Enoch 46.1 describes a messianic figure
"whose face had the appearance of a human being." 2 Esdras 13.3 reads
"something like a figure of a man" in introducing the Messiah, the son of
the Most High (vv. 32, 38, 52).

Both 1 Enoch 37.71 and 2 Esdras are late first century CE Jewish
apocalypses which interpret "one like a son of man" in Dan 7.13 as
a messianic figure. Revelation is a Jewish-Christian apocalypse which
interprets Dan 7.13 in the same manner: a messianic figure who is "like a
son of man" (1.13-14 and 14.14).

Scholarly consensus is that all three works, 1 Enoch 37.71, Revelation
and 2 Esdras were written late in the first century CE and independently
reflected upon the significance of the human-like figure in Dan 7.13. The
differences among the three writings suggest that such independent use of
Dan 7.13 may be the case.

Furthermore, Daniel and 1 Enoch both use the phrase "son of man"
merely as a means to refer to one's humanity. For example, Dan 8.17
reads, "Understand, O son of man, that the vision is for the time of the
end." 1 Enoch 60.10 reads, "And he said to me, 'Son of man, you wish
to know what is hidden here'." Or "You, son of man, who are born in
righteousness..." (1 Enoch 71.14). Thus, one notes that in Daniel and 1
Enoch the writers maintained a distinction between their use of the phrase
"son of man," on the one hand, and "one like a son of man" (Dan 7) and
one "whose face had the appearance of a human being" (1 Enoch 46), on
the other. In both Daniel and 1 Enoch, the former phrase functioned as
a means of referring to one's humanity while the latter phrases functioned
as comparisons and not as titles. This use of "son of man" as a form of
direct address to a person occurs earliest in Ezekiel (e.g. 2.1; 3.1; 17.2;
27.2; 39.1). Ezek 1 may be the source of the phrase "one like a son of
man" in Dan 7.13 (see especially Ezek 26-28).

Finally, the phrase in Rev 1.13 and 14.14 has no definite article, unlike
the other passages in the New Testament which do have the article (*ho
huioi tou anthrōpou: "the son of man"). By translating Rev 1.13 and 14.14
as "one like the son of man," NRSV shows the heavy influence of gospel
studies but does not take into account the use and function of the phrase
in apocalyptic literature. An examination of two other late first century
CE apocalypses, the Similitudes of Enoch and 2 Esdras, both reading Dan
7.13, show them describing a human-like messianic figure who liberates the
elect of God.

For these reasons, *hunoion huion anthrōpou* in Rev 1.13 and 14.14
should be translated "like a son of man."

Thomas B. Salter
HEBREW OR ARAMEIC? AGAIN

In TBT 39/1 (1988) 130-131, we summarized discussion of how to translate *Hebraisti* in the Gospels and Acts, since in at least some cases, the forms used are either Aramaic ("Rabboni") or a corruption of Aramaic ("Golgotha").

Two recent articles, both closely argued and well documented, examine in detail the wider question of the language of Jesus.


Jesus was most probably trilingual. He certainly knew Hebrew and Aramaic (Luke 4.16-20; Mark 5.41). Probably he used Hebrew most of the time for parables, for legal and religious discussions (e.g. Mark 2.1-12), and for daily matters in Judea. Probably he used mainly Aramaic and Greek in daily matters in Galilee. Even in Galilee it appears that His teaching to Jewish audiences would have been in Hebrew, although present evidence is incomplete. His travel to Tyre and Sidon would presuppose ease with Greek.

Jerome A. Lund's "The Language of Jesus" (Mishkan 17-18 (2/1992-1/1993) 130-155 concludes (149) somewhat more tentatively:

It appears that Jesus spoke both a dialect of Middle Hebrew and a dialect of Middle Aramaic. He undoubtedly was versed in biblical Hebrew as well. What His home language was is impossible to tell. However, His (sic) choice of language depended to a great extent upon His audience. To Judean and Samaritan farmers and villagers and to the Pharisees and sages of Jerusalem, He probably spoke Hebrew. Then, too, He probably spoke a dialect of Middle Aramaic to Eastern diaspora Jews and to Aramaic speaking Jews of the Galilee, like Jairus. He probably used Greek to speak to the Romans and to Western diaspora Jews, but probably not in teaching. The issue of Hebrew versus Aramaic in the Galilee in the first century is far from settled ....

These conclusions may be compared with the somewhat more traditional position of John P. Meier (A Marginal Jew, vol. 1, 1991, 255-268), for whom "the most probable opinion" is "that Jesus regularly and perhaps exclusively taught in Aramaic, his Greek being of a practical, business type, and perhaps rudimentary to boot" (268). "As for Hebrew, Jesus would have learned it in the Nazareth synagogue or a nearby school, and he probably used it at times when debating Scripture with Pharisees or scribes. Yet, as a teacher who directed himself to the mass of ordinary Jewish peasants, whose everyday language was Aramaic, Jesus almost necessarily spoke to and taught his coreligionists in Aramaic, some traces of which remain embedded in the text of our Greek Gospels. To be more precise, Jeremias identifies Jesus’ Aramaic as a Galilean version of western Aramaic ..." (267).

Although debate among specialists continues, there seems no reason to modify our earlier suggestion that translators should "translate Hebraisti
HEBREW OR ARAMAIC? AGAIN

In THTT 39/1 (1988) 130-131, we summarized discussion of how to translate "Hebraïté" in the Gospels and Acts, since in at least some cases, the terms used are either Aramaic ("Rabboni") or a corruption of Aramaic ("Golgotha").

Two recent articles, both closely argued and well documented, examine in detail the wider question of the language of Jesus.


Jesus was most probably trilingual. He certainly knew Hebrew and Aramaic (Luke 4.16-20; Mark 5.41). Probably he used Hebrew most of the time for parables, for legal and religious discussions (e.g. Mark 2.1-12), and for daily matters in Judea. Probably he used mainly Aramaic and Greek in daily matters in Galilee. Even in Galilee it appears that His teaching to Jewish audiences would have been in Hebrew, although present evidence is incomplete. His travel to Tyre and Sidon would presuppose ease with Greek.

Jerome A. Lund's "The Language of Jesus" (Mishkan 17-18 (2/1992-1/1993) 130-155 concludes (149) somewhat more tentatively:

It appears that Jesus spoke both a dialect of Middle Hebrew and a dialect of Middle Aramaic. He undoubtedly was versed in biblical Hebrew as well. What His home language was is impossible to tell. However, his (sic) choice of language depended to a great extent upon His audience. To Judean and Samaritan farmers and villagers and to the Pharisees and sages of Jerusalem, He probably spoke Hebrew. Then, too, He probably spoke a dialect of Middle Aramaic to Eastern diaspora Jews and to Aramaic speaking Jews of the Galilee, like Jairus. He probably used Greek to speak to the Romans and to Western diaspora Jews, but probably not in teaching. The issue of Hebrew versus Aramaic in the Galilee in the first century is far from settled. .

These conclusions may be compared with the somewhat more traditional position of John P. Meier (A Marginal Jew, vol. 1, 1991, 255-268), for whom "the most probable opinion" is "that Jesus regularly and perhaps exclusively taught in Aramaic, his Greek being of a practical, business type, and perhaps rudimentary to boot" (268). "As for Hebrew, Jesus would have learned it in the Nazareth synagogue or a nearby school, and he probably used it at times when debating Scripture with Pharisees or scribes. Yet, as a teacher who directed himself to the mass of ordinary Jewish peasants, whose everyday language was Aramaic, Jesus almost necessarily spoke to and taught his coreligionists in Aramaic, some traces of which remain embedded in the text of our Greek Gospels. To be more precise, Jeremias identifies Jesus' Aramaic as a Galilean version of western Aramaic ..." (267).

Although debate among specialists continues, there seems no reason to modify our earlier suggestion that translators should "translate Hebraïté
Mr Thomas B. Slater
93a Albert Bridge Road
London SW11 4TP

Dear Mr Slater,

Thank you for your recent letter.

I am sorry for the mis-spelling of your name. It shall be corrected in the January 1994 issue, together with a few other errors (not in your note) which have been brought to my attention.

You may like to note (not of course in any spirit of quid pro quo) that I left the Craigton Road address in 1985, and my office address is as above; also that my surname does not have an "s".

Best wishes as always.

Yours sincerely,

Paul Ellingworth
Editor, Technical Papers for the Bible Translator